ETSI

EUROPEAN TELECOMMUNICATION STANDARD

DRAFT

pr **ETS 300 940**

November 1996

Source: ETSI TC-SMG

Reference: DE/SMG-030408QR3

ICS: 33.020

Key words: Digital cellular telecommunications system, Global System for Mobile communications (GSM)

GLOBAL SYSTEM FOR
MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS

Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile radio interface layer 3 specification (GSM 04.08 version 5.4.0)

ETSI

European Telecommunications Standards Institute

ETSI Secretariat

Postal address: F-06921 Sophia Antipolis CEDEX - FRANCE
Office address: 650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis - Valbonne - FRANCE
X.400: c=fr, a=atlas, p=etsi, s=secretariat - **Internet:** secretariat@etsi.fr

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 - Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Contents

Foreword

This draft European Telecommunication Standard (ETS) has been produced by the Special Mobile Group (SMG) Technical Committee (TC) of the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) and is now submitted for the Unified Approval Procedure phase of the ETSI approval procedure.

This ETS specifies the procedures used at the radio interface (Reference Point Um, see GSM 04.02) for Call Control (CC), Mobility Management (MM) and Radio Resource (RR) management within the European digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2/Phase 2+).

This ETS is a GSM Technical Specification version 5 and is part of the 1996 release of the GSM Technical Specifications, which incorporate GSM Phase 2+ enhancements/features to the version 4 GSM Technical Specifications. The European Telecommunications Standard from which this ETS has evolved is Phase 2 GSM ETS 300 557 Edition 8 (GSM 04.08 version 4.17.0).

The contents of this ETS is subject to continuing work within TC-SMG and may change following formal TC-SMG approval. Should TC-SMG modify the contents of this ETS, it will be resubmitted for UAP by ETSI with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version 5.x.y

where:

- y the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the specification;
- x the second digit is incremented for all other types of changes, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

Reference is made within this TS to GSM-TSs (note).

NOTE: TC-SMG has produced documents which give the technical specifications for the implementation of the digital cellular telecommunications system. Historically, these documents have been identified as GSM Technical Specifications (GSM-TSs). These TSs may have subsequently become I-ETSs (Phase 1), or ETSs/ETSI Technical Reports (ETRs) (Phase 2). TC-SMG has also produced ETSI GSM TSs which give the technical specifications for the implementation of Phase 2+ enhancements of the digital cellular telecommunications system. These version 5.x.x GSM Technical Specifications may be referred to as GTSs.

The specification from which this ETS has been derived was originally based on CEPT documentation, hence the presentation of this ETS may not be entirely in accordance with the ETSI drafting rules.

Proposed transposition dates	
Date of latest announcement of this ETS (doa):	3 months after ETSI publication
Date of latest publication of new National Standard or endorsement of this ETS (dop/e):	6 months after doa
Date of withdrawal of any conflicting National Standard (dow):	6 months after doa

Blank page

0 Scope

This European Telecommunication Standard (ETS) specifies the procedures used at the radio interface (Reference Point Um, see GSM 04.02) for Call Control (CC), Mobility Management (MM) and Radio Resource (RR) management.

When the notations for "further study" or "FS" or "FFS" are present in this ETS they mean that the indicated text is not a normative portion of this standard.

These procedures are defined in terms of messages exchanged over the control channels of the radio interface. The control channels are described in GSM 04.03.

The structured functions and procedures of this protocol and the relationship with other layers and entities are described in general terms in GSM 04.07.

0.1 Scope of the Technical Specification

The procedures currently described in this ETS are for the call control of circuit-switched connections, mobility management and radio resource management.

GSM 04.10 contains functional procedures for support of supplementary services.

GSM 04.11 contains functional procedures for support of point-to-point short message services.

GSM 04.12 contains functional description of short message - cell broadcast.

NOTE 1: "layer 3" includes the functions and protocols described in this Technical Specification.

The terms "data link layer" and "layer 2" are used interchangeably to refer to the layer immediately below layer 3.

0.2 Application to the interface structures

The layer 3 procedures apply to the interface structures defined in GSM 04.03. They use the functions and services provided by layer 2 defined in GSM 04.05 and 04.06. GSM 04.07 gives the general description of layer 3 including procedures, messages format and error handling.

0.3 Structure of layer 3 procedures

A building block method is used to describe the layer 3 procedures.

The basic building blocks are "elementary procedures" provided by the protocol control entities of the three sublayers, i.e. radio resource management, mobility management and connection management sublayer.

Complete layer 3 transactions consist of specific sequences of elementary procedures. The term "structured procedure" is used for these sequences.

0.4 Test procedures

Test procedures of the GSM radio interface signalling are described in GSM 11.10 and GSM 11.2x series.

0.5 Use of logical channels

The logical control channels are defined in GSM 05.02. In the following those control channels are considered which carry signalling information or specific types of user packet information:

i) Broadcast Control CHannel (BCCH): downlink only, used to broadcast Cell specific information;

ii) Synchronization CHannel (SCH): downlink only, used to broadcast synchronization and BSS identification information;

iii) Paging CHannel (PCH): downlink only, used to send page requests to Mobile Stations;

iv) Random Access CHannel (RACH): uplink only, used to request a Dedicated Control CHannel;

v) Access Grant CHannel (AGCH): downlink only, used to allocate a Dedicated Control CHANNEL;

vi) Stand Alone Dedicated Control CHannel (SDCCH): bi-directional;

vii) Fast Associated Control CHannel (FACCH): bi-directional, associated with a Traffic CHannel;

viii) Slow Associated Control CHannel (SACCH): bi-directional, associated with a SDCCH or a Traffic CHannel;

ix) Cell Broadcast CHannel (CBCH): downlink only used for general (not point to point) short message information.

x) Notification CHannel (NCH): downlink only, used to notify Mobile Station (MS) of VBS (Voice Broadcast Service) calls or VGCS (Voice Group Call Service) calls.

Two service access points are defined on signalling layer 2 which are discriminated by their Service Access Point Identifiers (SAPI) (see GSM 04.06):

i) SAPI 0: supports the transfer of signalling information including user-user information;

ii) SAPI 3: supports the transfer of user short messages.

Layer 3 selects the service access point, the logical control channel and the mode of operation of layer 2 (acknowledged, unacknowledged or random access, see GSM 04.05 and 04.06) as required for each individual message.

0.6 Overview of control procedures

0.6.1 List of procedures

The following procedures are specified in this Technical Specification:

a) Section 3 specifies elementary procedures for Radio Resource management:
  - system information broadcasting (section 3.2.2)
  - RR connection establishment (section 3.3)
    - entering the dedicated mode : immediate assignment procedure (section 3.3.1.1)
    - paging procedure (section 3.3.2)
    - notification procedure (section 3.3.3)
  - Procedures in dedicated mode and in group transmit mode (section 3.4)
    - measurement report procedure (section 3.4.1.2)
    - intracell change of channels (section 3.4.3)
    - intercell change of channels (section 3.4.4)
    - frequency redefinition procedure (section 3.4.5)
    - channel mode change procedure (section 3.4.6)
    - ciphering mode setting procedure (section 3.4.7)
    - additional channel assignment procedure (section 3.4.8)
    - partial channel release procedure (section 3.4.9)
  - radio resources connection release (section 3.4.13)
  - specific RR procedures for voice broadcast channels and voice group call channels (section 3.4.15)

b) Section 4 specifies elementary procedures for Mobility Management
- mobility management common procedures (section 4.3)
  - TMSI reallocation procedure (section 4.3.1)
  - authentication procedure (section 4.3.2)
  - identification procedure (section 4.3.3)
  - IMSI detach procedure (section 4.3.4)
  - abort procedure (section 4.3.5)
  - MM information procedure (section 4.3.6)
- mobility management specific procedures (section 4.4)
  - location updating procedure (section 4.4.1)
  - periodic updating (section 4.4.2)
  - IMSI attach procedure (section 4.4.3)
  - generic location updating procedure (section 4.4)
- connection management sublayer service provision
  - mobility management connection establishment (section 4.5.1)
  - mobility management connection information transfer phase (section 4.5.2)
  - mobility management connection release (section 4.5.3)

c) Section 5 specifies elementary procedures for circuit switched Call Control comprising the following elementary procedures:
- mobile originating call establishment (section 5.2.1)
- mobile terminating call establishment (section 5.2.2)
- signalling procedures during the active state (section 5.3)
  - user notification procedure (section 5.3.1)
  - call rearrangements (section 5.3.2)
  - DTMF protocol control procedure (section 5.3.3)
  - in-call modification (section 5.3.4)
- call clearing initiated by the MS (section 5.4.3)
- call clearing initiated by the network (section 5.4.4)
- miscellaneous procedures
  - in-band tones and announcements (section 5.5.1)
  - status enquiry procedure (section 5.5.3)
  - call re-establishment procedure (section 5.5.4)

The elementary procedures can be combined to form structured procedures. Examples of such structured procedures are given in section 7. This part of the Technical Specification is only provided for guidance to assist implementations.

Section 8 specifies actions to be taken on various error conditions.

0.7 Applicability of implementations

NOTE: This section is introduced in order to provide information on the implementations for MSs supporting VGCS or VBS calls where differences to "basic" GSM phase 2 MSs appear. The section should be replaced or revised at a later stage when general editorial procedures to handle the applicability of phase 2+ implementations are introduced in this technical specification.

The applicability of procedures of this technical specification for the MS is dependent on the services and functions which are to be supported by a MS.

For MSs supporting the Voice Group Call Service or the Voice Broadcast Service, it is explicitly mentioned throughout this technical specification if a certain procedure is applicable only for such a service and, if necessary, how MSs not supporting such a service shall behave.

For VGCS and VBS, the following possible MS implementations exist:

- support of listening to voice broadcast calls (VBS listening)

- support of originating a voice broadcast call (VBS originating)

- support of listening to voice group calls (VGCS listening)

- support of talking in voice group calls (VGCS talking. This always includes the implementation for VGCS listening)

- support of originating a voice group call (VGCS originating. This always includes the implementation for VGCS talking)

Apart from the explicitly mentioned combinations, all possible combinations are optional and supported by this technical specification.

The related terms are used in this technical specification, if information on these implementation options is required.

1 Normative references

This ETS incorporates by dated and undated reference, provisions from other publications. These normative references are cited at the appropriate places in the text and the publications are listed hereafter. For dated references, subsequent amendments to or revisions of any of these publications apply to this ETS only when incorporated in it by amendment or revision. For undated references, the latest edition of the publication referred to applies.

[1] GSM 01.02: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General description of a GSM Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN)".

[2] GSM 01.04 (ETR 350): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Abbreviations and acronyms".

[3] GSM 02.02 (ETS 300 904): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Bearer Services (BS) supported by a GSM Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN)".

[4] GSM 02.03 (ETS 300 905): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Teleservices supported by a GSM Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN)".

[5] GSM 02.09 (ETS 300 920): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Security aspects".

[6] GSM 02.11 (ETS 300 921): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Service accessibility".

[7] GSM 02.17 (ETS 300 922): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Subscriber identity modules Functional characteristics".

[8] GSM 02.40: "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Procedures for call progress indications".

[9] GSM 03.01: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Network functions".

[10] GSM 03.03 (ETS 300 927): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Numbering, addressing and identification".

[11] GSM 03.13: "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Discontinuous Reception (DRX) in the GSM system".

[12] GSM 03.14: "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Support of Dual Tone Multi-Frequency signalling (DTMF) via the GSM system".

[13] GSM 03.20 (ETS 300 929): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Security related network functions".

[14] GSM 03.22 (ETS 300 930): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode".

[15] GSM 04.02: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); GSM Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) access reference configuration".

[16] GSM 04.03: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Station - Base Station System (MS - BSS) interface Channel structures and access capabilities".

[17] GSM 04.04 (ETS 300 936): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; layer 1 General requirements".

[18] GSM 04.05 (ETS 300 937): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Data Link (DL) layer General aspects".

[19] GSM 04.06 (ETS 300 938): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Mobile Station - Base Station System (MS - BSS) interface Data Link (DL) layer specification".

[20] GSM 04.07 (ETS 300 939): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile radio interface signalling layer 3 General aspects".

[21] GSM 04.10 (ETS 300 941): "Digital cellular telecommunications system ; Mobile radio interface layer 3 Supplementary services specification General aspects".

[22] GSM 04.11 (ETS 300 942): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2); Point-to-Point (PP) Short Message Service (SMS) support on mobile radio interface".

[23] GSM 04.12 (ETS 300 560): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Short Message Service Cell Broadcast (SMSCB) support on the mobile radio interface".

[24] GSM 04.80 (ETS 300 950): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile radio interface layer 3 supplementary services specification Formats and coding".

[25] GSM 04.81 (ETS 300 951): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Line identification supplementary services - Stage 3".

[26] GSM 04.82 (ETS 300 952): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Call Forwarding (CF) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[27] GSM 04.83 (ETS 300 953): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Call Waiting (CW) and Call Hold (HOLD) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[28] GSM 04.84 (ETS 300 954): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; MultiParty (MPTY) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[29] GSM 04.85: "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Closed User Group (CUG) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[30] GSM 04.86 (ETS 300 955): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Advice of Charge (AoC) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[31] GSM 04.88 (ETS 300 956): "Digital cellular telecommunications system; Call Barring (CB) supplementary services - Stage 3".

[32] GSM 05.02 (ETS 300 908): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Multiplexing and multiple access on the radio path".

[33] GSM 05.05 (ETS 300 910): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Radio transmission and reception".

[34] GSM 05.08 (ETS 300 911): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Radio subsystem link control".

[35] GSM 05.10 (ETS 300 579): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Radio subsystem synchronization".

[36] GSM 07.01 (ETS 300 913): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General on Terminal Adaptation Functions (TAF) for Mobile Stations (MS)".

[37] GSM 09.02 (ETS 300 974): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Application Part (MAP) specification".

[38] GSM 09.07 (ETS 300 976): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General requirements on interworking between the Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) and the Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) or Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)".

[39] GSM 11.10 (ETS 300 607): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Station (MS) conformity specification".

[40] GSM 11.20 (ETS 300 609): "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2); The GSM Base Station System (BSS) equipment specification".

[41] ISO/IEC 646 (1991): "Information technology - ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange".

[42] ISO/IEC 6429: "Information technology - Control functions for coded character sets".

[43] ISO 8348 (1987): "Information processing systems - Data communications - Network service definition".

[44] CCITT Recommendation E.163: "Numbering plan for the international telephone service".

[45] CCITT Recommendation E.164: "Numbering plan for the ISDN era".

[46] CCITT Recommendation E.212: "Identification plan for land mobile stations".

[47] ITU-T Recommendation F.69 (1993): "Plan for telex destination codes".

[48] CCITT Recommendation I.330: "ISDN numbering and addressing principles".

[49] CCITT Recommendation I.440 (1989): "ISDN user-network interface data link layer - General aspects".

[50] CCITT Recommendation I.450 (1989): "ISDN user-network interface layer 3 General aspects".

[51] ITU-T Recommendation I.500 (1993): "General structure of the ISDN interworking recommendations".

[52] CCITT Recommendation T.50: "International Alphabet No. 5".

[53] CCITT Recommendation Q.931: ISDN user-network interface layer 3 specification for basic control".

[54] CCITT Recommendation V.21: "300 bits per second duplex modem standardized for use in the general switched telephone network".

[55] CCITT Recommendation V.22: "1200 bits per second duplex modem standardized for use in the general switched telephone network and on point-to-point 2-wire leased telephone-type circuits".

[56] CCITT Recommendation V.22bis: "2400 bits per second duplex modem using the frequency division technique standardized for use on the general switched telephone network and on point-to-point 2-wire leased telephone-type circuits".

[57] CCITT Recommendation V.23: "600/1200-baud modem standardized for use in the general switched telephone network".

[58] CCITT Recommendation V.26ter: "2400 bits per second duplex modem using the echo cancellation technique standardized for use on the general switched telephone network and on point-to-point 2-wire leased telephone-type circuits".

[59] CCITT Recommendation V.32: "A family of 2-wire, duplex modems operating at data signalling rates of up to 9600 bit/s for use on the general switched telephone network and on leased telephone-type circuits".

[60] CCITT Recommendation V.110: "Support of data terminal equipments (DTEs) with V-Series interfaces by an integrated services digital network".

[61] CCITT Recommendation X.21: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for synchronous operation on public data networks".

[62] CCITT Recommendation X.25: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit".

[63] CCITT Recommendation X.28: "DTE/DCE interface for a start-stop mode data terminal equipment accessing the packet assembly/disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network situated in the same country".

[64] CCITT Recommendation X.30: "Support of X.21, X.21 bis and X.20 bis based data terminal equipments (DTEs) by an integrated services digital network (ISDN)".

[65] CCITT Recommendation X.31: "Support of packet mode terminal equipment by an ISDN".

[66] CCITT Recommendation X.32: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and accessing a packet switched public data network through a public switched telephone network or an integrated services digital network or a circuit switched public data network".

[67] CCITT Recommendation X.75 (1988): "Packet-switched signalling system between public networks providing data transmission services".

[68] CCITT Recommendation X.121: "International numbering plan for public data networks".

[69] ETS 300 102-1: "Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN); User-network interface layer 3 Specifications for basic call control".

[70] ETS 300 102-2: "Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN); User-network interface layer 3 Specifications for basic call control".

2 Definitions and abbreviations

Abbreviations used in this specification are listed in GSM 01.04

2.1 Random values

In a number of places in this Technical Specification, it is mentioned that some value must take a "random" value, in a given range, or more generally with some statistical distribution. Such cases interest only the MS.

It is required that there is a low probability that two MSs in the same conditions (including the case two MSs of the same type from the same manufacturer) will choose the same value. Moreover, it is required that, if it happens that two MSs in similar conditions choose the same value, the probability of their choices being identical at the next occasion is the same as if their first choices had been different.

The meaning of such a specification is that any statistical test for these values, done on a series of similar events, will obtain a result statistically compatible with the specified distribution. This shall hold even in the cases where the tests are conducted with a subset of possible events, with some common parameters. Moreover, basic tests of independence of the values within the series shall pass.

Data against which correlation with the values shall not be found are the protocol state, or the IMSI, or identities or other unrelated information broadcast by the network, or the current TDMA frame number.

2.2 Vocabulary

The following terms are used in this Technical Specification:

- idle mode: In this mode, the MS is not allocated any dedicated channel; it listens to the CCCH and the BCCH;

- group receive mode (only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening): In this mode, the MS is not allocated a dedicated channel with the network; it listens to the downlink of a voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel allocated to the cell. Occasionally, the MS has to listen to the BCCH of the serving cell as defined in GSM 03.22 and 05.08;

- dedicated mode: In this mode, the MS is allocated at least two dedicated channels, only one of them being a SACCH;

- group transmit mode (only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking): In this mode, one MS of a voice group call is allocated two dedicated channels, one of them being a SACCH. These channels can be allocated to different MSs during the voice group call;

- main DCCH: In Dedicated mode and group transmit mode, only two channels are used as DCCH, one being a SACCH, the other being a SDCCH or a FACCH; the SDCCH or FACCH is called here "the main DCCH";

- A channel is activated if it can be used for transmission, in particular for signalling, at least with UI frames. On the SACCH, whenever activated, it must be ensured that a contiguous stream of layer 2 frames is sent;

- A TCH is connected if circuit mode user data can be transferred. A TCH cannot be connected if it is not activated. A TCH which is activated but not connected is used only for signalling, i.e. as a DCCH;

- The data link of SAPI 0 on the main DCCH is called the main signalling link. Any message specified to be sent on the main signalling link is sent in acknowledged mode except when otherwise specified.

- The term "to establish" a link is a short form for "to establish the multiframe mode" on that data link. It is possible to send UI frames on a data link even if it is not established as soon as the corresponding channel is activated. Except when otherwise indicated, a data link layer establishment is done without an information field.

3 Radio Resource management procedures

3.1 Overview/General

3.1.1 General

Radio Resource management procedures include the functions related to the management of the common transmission resources, e.g. the physical channels and the data link connections on control channels.

The general purpose of Radio Resource procedures is to establish, maintain and release RR connections that allow a point-to-point dialogue between the network and a MS. This includes the cell selection/reselection and the handover procedures. Moreover, Radio Resource management procedures include the reception of the uni-directional BCCH and CCCH when no RR connection is established. This permits automatic cell selection/reselection.

If VGCS listening or VBS listening are supported, the radio resource management also includes the functions for the reception of the voice group call channel or the voice broadcast channel, respectively, and the automatic cell reselection of the MS in Group receive mode.

If VGCS talking is supported, the radio resource management also includes the functions for the seizure and release of the voice group call channel.

NOTE: This chapter includes some procedures used for the TCH/H + TCH/H configuration which need not be supported by simple MSs. These procedures and the information content relating to the TCH/H + TCH/H configuration in RR messages may need further elaboration.

3.1.2 Services provided to upper layers

A RR connection is a physical connection used by the two peer entities to support the upper layers' exchange of information flows.

3.1.2.1 Idle mode

In idle mode no RR connection exists.

The RR procedures include (on the MS side) those for automatic cell selection/reselection. The RR entity indicates to upper layers the unavailability of a BCCH/CCCH and the cell change when decided by the RR entity. Upper layers are advised of the BCCH broadcast information when a new cell has been selected, or when a relevant part of this information changes.

In Idle mode, upper layers can require the establishment of an RR connection.

3.1.2.2 Dedicated mode

In dedicated mode, the RR connection is a physical point-to-point bi-directional connection, and includes a SAPI 0 data link connection operating in multiframe mode on the main DCCH. If dedicated mode is established, RR procedures provide the following services:

- establishment/release of multiframe mode on data link layer connections other than SAPI 0, on the main DCCH or on the SACCH;
- transfer of messages on any data link layer connection;
- indication of temporary unavailability of transmission (suspension, resuming);
- indication of loss of RR connection;
- automatic cell reselection and handover to maintain the RR connection;

- setting/change of the transmission mode on the physical channels, including change of type of channel, change of the coding/decoding/transcoding mode and setting of ciphering;

- allocation/release of an additional channel (for the TCH/H + TCH/H configuration).

- release of an RR connection.

3.1.2.3 Group receive mode

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

In this mode, the RR procedures on the MS side provide the services:

- reception of the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel;

- automatic cell reselection for the MS in Group receive mode.

3.1.2.4 Group transmit mode

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

In group transmit mode, the RR connection is a physical point-to-point bi-directional connection, and includes a SAPI 0 data link connection operating in multiframe mode on the main DCCH. If the group transmit mode is established, RR procedures provide the following services:

- uplink access procedures to establishment/release the RR connection;

- transfer of messages on the SAPI 0 data link layer connection;

- indication of loss of RR connection;

- automatic cell reselection and handover to maintain the RR connection;

- setting of the transmission mode on the physical channels, change of type of channel and setting of ciphering.

3.1.3 Services required from data link and physical layers

The RR sublayer uses the services provided by the data link layer as defined in GSM 04.05.

Moreover, the RR sublayer directly uses services provided by the physical layer such as BCCH searching, as defined in GSM 04.04.

3.1.4 Change of dedicated channels

3.1.4.1 Change of dedicated channels using SAPI = 0

In case a change of dedicated channels is required using a dedicated assignment and handover procedure, respectively, the RR sublayer will request the data link layer to suspend multiple frame operation before the MS leaves the old channel. When the channel change has been completed, layer 3 will request the data link layer to resume multiple frame operation again. The layer 2 suspend/resume procedures are described in GSM 04.05 and 04.06.

These procedures are specified in such a way that a loss of a layer 3 message cannot occur on the radio interface. However, MM and CM messages sent from the MS to the network may be duplicated by the data link layer if a message has been transmitted but not yet completely acknowledged before the MS leaves the old channel (see GSM 04.06).

As the RR sublayer is controlling the channel change, a duplication of RR messages does not occur. However, there are some procedures for which a duplication is possible, e.g. DTMF procedures. For all

MM and CM procedures using SAPI=0, the request messages sent by the MS contain a sequence number in order to allow the network to detect duplicated messages, which are then ignored by the network. The procedures for sequenced transmission on layer 3 are described in section 3.1.4.2.

3.1.4.2 Change of dedicated channels using other SAPIs than 0

For SAPIs other than 0, the data link procedures described in GSM 04.06 do not provide any guarantee against message loss or duplication.

Therefore, if an application uses a SAPI other than 0 and if this application is sensitive to message loss or duplication, then it has to define its own protection mechanism. No general protection mechanism is provided by the layer 3 defined in this Technical Specification.

3.1.4.3 Sequenced message transfer operation

MM and CM messages using SAPI=0 sent from the MS to the network can be duplicated by the data link layer in the following case:

> a channel change of dedicated channels is required (assignment or handover procedure) and the last layer 2 frame has not been acknowledged by the peer data link layer before the MS leaves the old channel.

In this case, the MS does not know whether the network has received the message correctly. Therefore, the MS has to send the message again after the new dedicated channel is established (see GSM 04.06).

The network must be able to detect the duplicated received message. Therefore, each MM and CM message using SAPI=0 must be marked with a send sequence number.

3.1.4.3.1 Variables and sequence numbers

3.1.4.3.1.1 Send state variable V(SD)

The RR sublayer of the MS shall have one associated send state variable V(SD) ("Send Duplicated") for sending MM and CM messages using SAPI=0. The send state variable denotes the sequence number of the next in sequence numbered message to be transmitted. The value of the send state variable shall be incremented by one with each numbered message transmission. Arithmetic operations on V(SD) are performed modulo 2.

3.1.4.3.1.2 Send sequence number N(SD)

Only MM and CM messages using SAPI=0 contain the send sequence number N(SD). At the time when such a message is designated for transmission, the value of N(SD) for the message to be transferred is set equal to the value of the send state variable V(SD). See GSM 04.07.

3.1.4.3.2 Procedures for the initiation, transfer execution and termination of the sequenced message transfer operation

3.1.4.3.2.1 Initiation

The sequenced message transfer operation is initiated by establishing a RR connection. The send state variable V(SD) is set to 0.

3.1.4.3.2.2 Transfer Execution

The network must compare the send sequence numbers of pairs of subsequent messages. In case the send sequence numbers of two subsequent messages are not identical, no duplication has occurred. In case the send sequence numbers are identical, the network must ignore the last one received.

3.1.4.3.2.3 Termination

The sequenced message transfer operation is terminated by the RR connection release procedure.

3.1.5 Procedure for Service Request and Contention Resolution

Upon seizure of the assigned dedicated channel, the MS establishes the main signalling link on this channel by sending a layer 2 SABM frame containing a layer 3 service request message. The data link layer will store this message to perform the contention resolution. The service request message will be returned by the network in the UA frame.

The data link layer in the MS compares the content of the information field (i.e. the layer 3 service request message) received in the UA frame with the stored message and leaves the channel in case they do not match. This procedure resolves contentions in the case where several MSs have accessed at the same random access slot and with the same random reference and one has succeeded due to capture. The full description of the procedure is given in GSM 04.06.

The purpose of the service request message is to indicate to the network which service the MS is requesting. This then allows the network to decide how to proceed (e.g. to authenticate or not).

The service request message must contain the identity of the MS and may include further information which can be sent without encryption.

The layer 3 service request message is typically one of the following:

- CM SERVICE REQUEST
- LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST
- IMSI DETACH
- PAGING RESPONSE
- CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST
- NOTIFICATION RESPONSE
- IMMEDIATE SETUP

```
Mobile Station                              Network
        SABM ("layer 3 service request message")
        ---------------------------------------->

        UA ("layer 3 service request message")
        <---------------------------------------
```

Figure 3.1/GSM 04.08 Service request and contention resolution

3.2 Idle mode procedures

3.2.1 Mobile Station side

In idle mode, the MS listens to the BCCH and to the paging sub-channel for the paging group the MS belongs to (cf. GSM 03.13); it measures the radio propagation for connection with other cells.

Measurements are treated to assess the need of a cell change as specified in GSM 05.08. When the decision to change cells is made, the MS switches to the BCCH of the new cell. The broadcast information is then checked to verify the allowance to camp on this cell (cf. section 3.2.2). Dependent on the MS type and configuration, the MS may be required to try to read further BCCH information. If allowed, the cell change is confirmed, and the broadcast information is then treated for Mobility Management actions (cf. section 4). Similarly, physical contexts are updated (list of neighbouring cells frequencies, thresholds for some actions, etc. cf. GSM 05.08 and section 3.2.2).

3.2.2 Network side

3.2.2.1 System information broadcasting

SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2 to 4 messages, and optionally TYPE 1, 2bis, 2ter 7 and 8 and further types are regularly broadcast by the network on the BCCH. Based on this information the MS is able to decide whether and how it may gain access to the system via the current cell. The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis message shall be sent if and only if the EXT-IND bit in the Neighbour Cells Description IE in both the TYPE 2 and TYPE 2bis messages indicates that each IE only carries part of the BA. SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2ter message shall be sent if and only if this is indicated in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message.

A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may consider the EXT-IND bit in the Neighbour Cells Description IE in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2 message bit as a spare bit. If it does so it shall assume that the information element carries the complete BA and it shall ignore any SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis and 2ter messages.

If the additional cell reselection parameters are broadcasted then System Information Type 3 message shall always contain these parameters. In addition to System Information Type 3 at least either System Information Type 4 or System Information Type 7 and 8 messages shall contain these parameters too.

NOTE: The allowed scheduling of SYSTEM INFORMATION messages on the BCCH are specified in GSM 05.02.

NOTE: The network should take into account limitations of certain MSs to understand SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis, TYPE 2ter, the EXT-IND bit in the Neighbour Cells Description, the indication of 2ter in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 and formats used in the Neighbour Cells Description IE and Cell Channel Description IE used in SYSTEM INFORMATION messages, see this section, section 10.5.2.1b, and section 10.5.2.22.

The information broadcast may be grouped in the following classes:

- information giving unique identification of the current network, location area and cell;
- information used for candidate cell measurements for handover and cell selection procedures;
- information describing the current control channel structure;
- information controlling the random access channel utilization;
- information defining different options supported within the cell; and
- information about the length of the part of the message belonging to the phase 1 protocol.

The network may send to the MS BCCH scheduling information as specified below:

1) The BCCH scheduling information is indicated in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 message. Whether BCCH scheduling information is indicated in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 and if yes, where to find the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 message, is specified in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3.

2) If the MS has received BCCH scheduling information, it shall assume that this BCCH scheduling information is valid in the location area until new scheduling information is received. It may store the information in the ME and assume its validity after switch on.

3) When the MS detects, that the BCCH information is not scheduled as expected, it shall read the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message. If presence of BCCH scheduling information in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 is indicated, it shall try to read the information and continue as in 2. If presence of BCCH scheduling information in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 is not indicated, it shall assume that there is no valid BCCH scheduling information.

3.2.2.2 Paging

The network is required to send valid layer 3 messages continuously on all paging subchannels.

3.3 RR connection establishment

3.3.1 RR connection establishment initiated by the MS

The purpose of the immediate assignment procedure is to establish an RR connection between the MS and the network.

3.3.1.1 Entering the dedicated mode : immediate assignment procedure

The immediate assignment procedure can only be initiated by the RR entity of the MS. Initiation is triggered by request from the MM sublayer to enter the dedicated mode or by the RR entity in response to a PAGING REQUEST message. Upon such a request,

- if access to the network is allowed (as defined in 3.3.1.1.1), the RR entity of the MS initiates the immediate assignment procedure as defined in section 3.3.1.1.2;
- otherwise, it rejects the request.

The request from the MM sublayer to establish an RR connection specifies an establishment cause. Similarly, the request from the RR entity to establish a RR connection in response to a PAGING REQUEST 1, 2 or 3 message specifies one of the establishment causes "answer to paging".

3.3.1.1.1 Permission to access the network

All MSs with an inserted SIM are members of one out of 10 access classes numbered 0 to 9. The access class number is stored in the SIM. In addition, MSs may be members of one or more out of 5 special access classes (access classes 11 to 15) (see GSM 02.11), this is also held on the SIM card.

The system information messages on the BCCH broadcast the list of authorized access classes and authorized special access classes in the system information messages, and whether emergency calls are allowed in the cell to all MSs or only to the members of authorized special access classes.

If the establishment cause for the request of the MM sublayer is not "emergency call", access to the network is allowed if and only if the MS is a member of at least one authorized.

- access class or
- special access class.

If the establishment cause for the request of the MM sublayer is "emergency call", access to the network is allowed if and only if:

- emergency calls are allowed to all MSs in the cell or
- the MS is a member of at least one authorized special access class.

3.3.1.1.2 Initiation of the immediate assignment procedure

The RR entity of the MS initiates the immediate assignment procedure by scheduling the sending on the RACH and leaving idle mode (in particular, the MS shall ignore PAGING REQUEST messages).

It then sends maximally M + 1 CHANNEL REQUEST messages on the RACH in a way such that:

- the number of slots belonging to the MS's RACH between initiation of the immediate assignment procedure and the first CHANNEL REQUEST message (excluding the slot containing the message itself) is a random value drawn randomly for each new initial assignment initiation with uniform probability distribution in the set {0, 1, ..., max (T,8) - 1};

- the number of slots belonging to the MS's RACH between two successive CHANNEL REQUEST messages (excluding the slots containing the messages themselves) is a random value drawn randomly for each new transmission with uniform probability distribution in the set {S, S + 1, ..., S + T - 1};

Here, T is the value of the parameter "Tx-integer" broadcast on the BCCH;

M is the value of the parameter "max retrans" broadcast on the BCCH;

S is a parameter depending on the CCCH configuration and on the value of Tx-integer as defined in table 3.1/GSM 04.08.

The CHANNEL REQUEST messages are sent on the RACH (cf. section 1.5) and contain as parameters:

- an establishment cause which corresponds to the establishment cause given by the MM sublayer and the broadcast NECI value, or which corresponds to one of the establishment causes "answer to paging" given by the RR entity in response to a PAGING REQUEST message including the Channel Needed information;

- a random reference which is drawn randomly from a uniform probability distribution for every new transmission.

After sending the first CHANNEL REQUEST message, the MS shall start listening to the BCCH; it shall also listen to the full downlink CCCH timeslot corresponding to its CCCH group.

Having sent M + 1 CHANNEL REQUEST messages, the RR entity of the MS starts timer T3126. At expiry of timer T3126, the immediate assignment procedure is aborted; if the immediate assignment procedure was triggered by a request from the MM sublayer, a random access failure is indicated to the MM sublayer.

Table 3.1/GSM 04.08: Values of parameter S

TX-integer	non combined CCCH	combined CCH/SDCCH
3,8,14,50	55	41
4,9,16	76	52
5,10,20	109	58
6,11,25	163	86
7,12,32	217	115

3.3.1.1.3 Answer from the network

3.3.1.1.3.1 On receipt of a CHANNEL REQUEST message

The network may allocate a dedicated channel to the MS by sending an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message or IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message in unacknowledged mode on the same CCCH timeslot on which it has received the CHANNEL REQUEST. There is no further restriction on what part of the downlink CCCH an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message or IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message can be sent. The type of channel allocated (SDCCH or TCH; the channel mode shall be set to signalling only) is a network operator decision. Timer T3101 is then started on the network side.

NOTE: There are two types of immediate assignment messages:

- IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message, containing assignment information for one MS only;
- IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message, containing assignment information for two MSs at the same time.

The IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT or IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message contains:

- the description of the assigned channel;
- the information field of the CHANNEL REQUEST message and the frame number of the frame in which the CHANNEL REQUEST message was received;
- the initial timing advance (cf. GSM 04.04);
- optionally, a starting time indication.

If frequency hopping is applied, the MS uses the last CA received on the BCCH to decode the Mobile Allocation.

On receipt of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT or IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message corresponding to one of its 3 last CHANNEL REQUEST messages, the MS stops T3126 (if running), stops sending CHANNEL REQUEST messages, switches to the assigned channels, sets the channel mode to signalling only and activates the assigned channels. It then establishes the main signalling link with an SABM containing an information field (see section 3.1.5).

An IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT or IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message may indicate a frequency change in progress, with a starting time and possibly alternative channel descriptions.

In the case of the reception of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message, or of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message which contains only the description of a channel to be used after the starting time, the MS shall wait up to the starting time before accessing the channel. If the starting time has already elapsed, the mobile shall access the channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message (see GSM 05.10 for the timing constraints).

If the message contains both the description of a channel to be used after the indicated time and of a channel to be used before, the MS accesses a channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message. If the moment the MS is ready to access is before the indicated time, the MS accesses the channels described for before the starting time. The MS then changes to the channel described for after the starting time at the indicated time. New parameters can be frequency list and MAIO. Other parameters describing the channel to be used before the starting time are taken from the description of the channel defined for use after the starting time. If the moment the MS is ready to access is after the starting time, the MS accesses the channel described for after the starting time.

If frequency hopping is applied, the MS uses the last CA received on the BCCH.

3.3.1.1.3.2 Assignment rejection

If no channel is available for assignment, the network may send to the MS an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message in unacknowledged mode on the same CCCH timeslot on which the channel request message was received. There is no further restriction on what part of the downlink CCCH timeslot an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message can be sent. This message contains the request reference and a wait indication.

On receipt of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message corresponding to one of its 3 last CHANNEL REQUEST messages, the MS, stops sending CHANNEL REQUEST messages, starts timer T3122 with the indicated value, ("wait indication" information element), starts T3126 if it has not already been started, and listens to the downlink CCCH until T3126 expires. During this time, additional IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT messages are ignored, but any immediate assignment corresponding to any other of its 3 last CHANNEL REQUEST messages make the MS follow the procedure in section 3.3.1.2. If no such immediate assignment is received, the MS returns to CCCH idle mode (listening to its paging channel).

As an option the MS may return to CCCH idle mode as soon as it has received responses from the network on all, or in case more than 3 were sent the last 3, of its CHANNEL REQUEST messages.

The MS is not allowed to make a new attempt to establish a non emergency RR connection in the same cell until T3122 expires. Provided that an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message has not been received for an emergency RR connection attempt, the MS may attempt to enter the dedicated mode for an emergency call in the same cell before T3122 has expired.

The Wait Indication IE (i.e. T3122) relates to the cell from which it was received.

After T3122 expiry, no CHANNEL REQUEST message shall be sent as a response to a page until a PAGING REQUEST message for the MS is received.

3.3.1.1.4 Assignment completion

The immediate assignment procedure is terminated on the network side when the main signalling link is established. Timer T3101 is stopped and the MM sublayer on the network side is informed that the RR entity has entered the dedicated mode.

On the MS side, the procedure is terminated when the establishment of the main signalling link is confirmed. The MM sublayer is informed that the RR entity has entered the dedicated mode.

Early classmark sending consists in the MS sending as early as possible after access a CLASSMARK CHANGE message to provide the network with additional classmark information.

A MS which implements the « Controlled Early Classmark Sending » option shall perform the early classmark sending if and only if explicitly accepted by the network, as indicated in the last reception in the accessed cell of the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message.

A MS which implements one of the « multiple band support » option shall also implement the « Controlled Early Classmark Sending » option.

A MS which implements the « Controlled Early Classmark Sending » option shall indicate it in the classmark (ES IND bit).

3.3.1.1.5 Abnormal cases

If a lower layer failure occurs on the MS side on the new channel before the successful establishment of the main signalling link, the allocated channels are released; the subsequent behaviour of the MS depends on the type of failure and previous actions.

- If the failure is due to information field mismatch in the contention resolution procedure, see section 3.1.5, and no repetition as described in this paragraph has been performed, the immediate assignment procedure shall be repeated.

- If the failure is due to any other reason or if a repetition triggered by a contention resolution failure has been performed. The MS returns to idle mode (RR connection establishment failure), transactions in progress are aborted and cell reselection then may take place.

If the information available in the MS, after the reception of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message does not satisfactorily define a channel, an RR connection establishment failure has occurred.

If the Mobile Allocation IE indexes frequencies in more than one frequency band then a RR connection establishment failure has occurred.

If an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message indicates (a) channel(s) in a different frequency band to which the CHANNEL REQUEST message was sent then, if the frequency band is supported by the MS, the MS shall access the indicated channel(s) with the same power control level as used for the CHANNEL REQUEST message.

If an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message indicates a channel in non-supported frequency band then a RR connection establishment failure has occurred.

On the network side, if timer T3101 elapses before the main signalling link is established, the newly allocated channels are released and the request is forgotten. Note that the network has no means to distinguish repeated attempts from initial attempts from a MS.

3.3.1.2 Entering the group transmit mode: uplink access procedure

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS transmit:)

The purpose of the uplink control procedure is to establish an RR connection on a VGCS channel between a MS which is in group receive mode on that channel and the network.

The MS enters the group transmit mode when a successful establishment of the RR connection is indicated. The channel mode assumed by the MS is the one derived from the channel description.

3.3.1.2.1 MS side

3.3.1.2.1.1 Uplink investigation procedure

On receipt of a request from the upper layer to access the uplink and if the uplink is not free, the MS starts the timer T3128.

If the uplink is free or becomes free the uplink investigation procedure is finished, the MS shall stop T3128 if running and start the uplink access procedure.

NOTE: The start of the uplink access procedure is not subject to the access class of the MS.

If the uplink is not indicated free before the timer expires, the MS shall remain in the group receive mode and indicate a reject of the uplink request to the upper layer.

3.3.1.2.1.2 Uplink access procedure

The MS shall send UPLINK ACCESS messages on the voice group call channel with the appropriate establishment cause. The first UPLINK ACCESS message shall be transmitted by the MS with a random delay between 0 and 20ms. The UPLINK ACCESS messages shall be repeated after a further period of 100ms plus a random delay between 0 and 20ms..

If an uplink identity code (UIC) of the current cell has been provided by the network in the UPLINK FREE message, the MS shall use this UIC for the coding of the UPLINK ACCESS messages. If no UIC is provided, the MS shall use the BSIC received of the current cell. for instance from the initial synchronization.

Having sent the first UPLINK ACCESS message, the MS starts timer T3130. At expiry of timer 3130, the uplink access procedure is aborted and the MS shall remain in the group receive mode and indicate a reject of the uplink request to the upper layer.

On receipt of an VGCS UPLINK GRANT message corresponding to one of its 3 last UPLINK ACCESS messages, the MS stops T3130, stops sending UPLINK ACCESS messages, and establishes the main signalling link with an SABM containing the TALKER INDICATION message in the information field. Early classmark sending shall be performed if applicable. If a UA is received containing the message sent, the MS enters the group transmit mode and indicates the successful seizure of the uplink to the upper layer. If a UA is received with a message different from the message sent, the MS shall remain in the group receive mode and indicate the reject of the uplink request to the upper layer.

On receipt of an SACCH message without having first received a VGCS UPLINK GRANT message the MS shall stop sending UPLINK ACCESS messages and wait in order to receive a VGCS UPLINK GRANT message. If this is not received before the next SACCH message, the MS shall remain in the group receive mode and indicate the reject of the uplink request to the upper layer.

On receipt of a VGCS UPLINK GRANT message not corresponding to one of its 3 last UPLINK ACCESS messages, the MS shall stop sending UPLINK ACCESS messages, remain in the group receive mode and indicate the reject of the uplink request to the upper layer.

3.3.1.2.2 Network side

On receipt of an UPLINK ACCESS message the network shall perform, if necessary, contention resolution and grant the uplink to one MS. Furthermore, the network shall provide UPLINK BUSY messages on the main signalling link in all cells of the group call area.

After the data link layer is established, the RR entity of the network shall analyse the TALKER INDICATION message received from the MS, adapt the RR procedures to the new classmark if necessary and provide the mobile subscriber identity to the upper layer.

3.3.1.2.3 Abnormal cases

In case of lower link failure or if the release of the data link layer is indicated by the lower layer and no RR release request was previously received from the upper layer, the network shall provide an UPLINK FREE message on the main signalling channel and wait for a new UPLINK ACCESS message.

3.3.2 Paging procedure

The network can initiate the establishment of an RR connection by the paging procedure. Such a procedure can only be initiated by the network.

3.3.2.1 Paging initiation by the network

The network initiates the paging procedure by broadcasting a paging request message on the appropriate paging subchannel, and starts timer T3113. The paging subchannel is specified in GSM 05.02 and GSM 03.13.

The network may also broadcast paging related information on any voice broadcast or voice group call channel downlink.

NOTE: There are 3 types of paging messages:

- PAGING REQUEST TYPE 1,
- PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2, and
- PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3.

A PAGING REQUEST message- includes for each paged MS an indication which defines how mobiles of different capabilities shall code the establishment cause field in the CHANNEL REQUEST message. The information received in the CHANNEL REQUEST can be used by the network to assign a suitable channel.

A PAGING REQUEST message may include more than one MS identification.

A PAGING REQUEST message may also include priority levels related to the MS identifications. A MS supporting eMLPP and VGCS or VBS which is in group receive mode shall take into account this information to decide on response to that paging request and store the priority level, if the call is answered, for the duration of the call. A MS not supporting eMLPP shall ignore this information element when received in a PAGING REQUEST message.

NOTE: A MS not supporting VGCS or VBS may ignore this information element when received in a PAGING REQUEST message, since the priority level is also provided in the SETUP message.

If VGCS or VBS is supported by the network and the network supports "reduced NCH monitoring", messages sent on the PCH may also include an indication of the change of the information sent on the NCH (see section 3.3.3.2).

The choice of the message type depends on the number of MSs to be paged and of the types on identities that are used. The maximum number of paged MSs per message is 4 when using only TMSIs for identification of the MSs.

The MS is required to receive and analyse the paging messages and immediate assignment messages sent on the paging subchannel corresponding to its paging subgroup, as specified in GSM 05.02.

The paging and immediate assignment type messages contain a page mode information element. This information element controls possible additional requirements on MSs belonging to the paging subgroup corresponding to the paging subchannel the message was sent on. This implies that a given MS shall take into account the page mode information element of any message sent on its own paging subchannel whatever the nature of this message (paging messages or immediate assignment messages). This further implies that the MS does not take into account page mode information element of messages sent on paging subchannels other than its own paging subchannel. The requirements yielded by the page mode information element are as follows:

a) normal paging: no additional requirements;

b) extended paging: the MS is required in addition to receive and analyse the next but one paging message on the PCH;

c) paging reorganization: The MS shall receive all messages on the CCCH regardless of the BS-AG-BLKS-RES setting. It is required to receive all BCCH messages. When the MS receives the next message to its (possibly new) paging subgroup the subsequent action is defined in the page mode information element in that message.

d) same as before: No change of page mode from the previous page mode.

Note that a MS takes into account the page mode information only in messages of its own paging subchannel whatever the currently applied requirements (a, b, c or d).

When the MS selects a new PCH, the initial page mode in the MS shall be set to paging reorganization. If a message in the paging subchannel is not received correctly, the message is ignored and the previous page mode is assumed.

3.3.2.2 Paging response

Upon receipt of a paging request message and if access to the network is allowed, the addressed MS shall, when camped on a cell, initiate the immediate assignment procedure as specified in 3.3.1. The establishment of the main signalling link is then initiated by use of an SABM with information field containing the PAGING RESPONSE message (see section 3.1.5). The MM sublayer in the MS is informed that the RR entity has entered the dedicated mode.

Upon receipt of the PAGING RESPONSE message the network stops timer T3113. The MM sublayer in the network is informed that an RR connection exists.

3.3.2.3 Abnormal cases

Lower layer failure occurring during the immediate assignment procedure is treated as specified for that procedure.

If timer T3113 expires and a PAGING RESPONSE message has not been received, the network may repeat the paging request message and start timer T3113 again. The number of successive paging attempts is a network dependant choice.

```
mobile station                              network

                   PAGING REQUEST
              <--------------------------   Start T3113

                   RANDOM ACCESS
              -------------------------->

                     IMM ASSIGN
              <--------------------------   Start T3101

               SABM (PAGING RESPONSE)
              -------------------------->   Stop T3101,
                                                 T3113
```

Figure 3.2/GSM 04.08 Paging sequence

3.3.3 Notification procedure

The network can inform the MS of the voice broadcast calls and the voice group calls with the notification procedure.

In a VGCS call, if the channel mode modify procedure is applied to turn a dedicated channel into a VGCS channel and ciphering will be applied for that call, the network shall wait with the provision of notification messages until ciphering with the group cipher key has started on the dedicated channel.

3.3.3.1 Notification of a call

The MS may receive a notification that a voice broadcast call or a voice group call is established. This notification specifies the group call reference. It may be contained:

- in a NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1 message sent on the NCH to notify MSs of VBS or VGCS calls in the current cell, possibly together with a description of the related VBS or VGCS channel;

- in a NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 2 message sent on the NCH to notify MSs of VBS or VGCS calls in cells different from the current cell;

- in a NOTIFICATION/SACCH or any other message sent on the SACCH to notify MSs in dedicated mode or on a VGCS or VBS channel of other VBS or VGCS calls in the current cell;

- in a NOTIFICATION/FACCH or UPLINK FREE message sent in unacknowledged mode on the main DCCH to notify MSs in dedicated mode or on the main DCCH of a VGCS or VBS channel of other VBS or VGCS calls in the current cell, possibly together with a description of the related VBS or VGCS channel.

A MS supporting neither VGCS listening nor VBS listening shall ignore the notifications sent on the NCH or SACCH. It shall also ignore the notifications sent on the main DCCH and sent a status message to the network.

A MS in idle mode shall deduce from the system information on the BCCH whether an NCH is present in a cell and where this channel is positioned.

A MS supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall give an indication to higher sublayers in the MS which may then decide to:

- not react on the notification, or

- to stop other on-going activities and join the voice broadcast call or the voice group call.

3.3.3.2 Joining a VGCS or VBS call

If order to join a VGCS or VBS call for which a NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 2 message has been received, the MS shall try to receive one of the cells which were indicated in the notification message and read the corresponding NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1 message on the NCH.

If order to join a VGCS or VBS call for which a notification on the SACCH or main DCCH without a description of the VGCS or VBS channel has been received, the MS shall read the corresponding notification message on the NCH.

In order to join a VGCS or VBS call for which the description of the VGCS or VBS channel was included in the NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1 or in a NOTIFICATION/FACCH message, no RR connection establishment shall be initiated. The MS shall enter the group receive mode.

In order to join a VGCS or VBS call for which no description of the VGCS or VBS channel was included in the NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1 message, the MS shall establish an RR connection in order to respond to the notification.

3.3.3.2 "Reduced NCH monitoring" mechanism

This section applies to MSs which read the NCH when being in idle mode in order to receive the notification messages for the voice broadcast call and the voice group call, which read the PCH to receive pagings and which aim at reducing the reception lode.

A "reduced NCH monitoring" mechanism may be used on the NCH. When the MS in idle mode enters a cell and deduces from the BCCH that an NCH is present, it shall read the NCH until the first repeated message containing an NLN is detected. Then it may stop reading the NCH until it is informed on the PCH that new information on the NCH is available.

For this, two parameters are provided on the PCH:

- NCHI: Notification Channel Information;
  The NCHI defines whether there is an NCH in that cell and "reduced NCH monitoring" is applied for the NCH.

- NLN: Notification List Number;
  The NLN is a modulo 4 counter which is changed every time a notification for a new VGCS or VBS call is started on the NCH. If the NCHI indicates the availability of an NCH in the cell with "reduced NCH monitoring", the NLN provides the information on the status of the notifications provided on the NCH.

A MS supporting neither VGCS listening nor VBS listening shall ignore the NCHI and NLN parameters.

If the MS is informed on the PCH about a change of the notification status (the NLN is changed), it shall read the NCH until the first repeated message containing an NLN is detected.

If the MS misses a message on its paging subchannel, or if a paging message does not contain the information on the notification status, the MS shall read the NCH until the first repeated message containing an NLN is detected.

3.4 Procedures in dedicated mode and in group transmit mode

Procedures described in this section apply to the dedicated mode or/and the group transmit mode.

Those procedures which are specific for group transmit mode or refer to transitions to the group transmit mode are only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

Direct transition between dedicated mode and group transmit mode is possible in both directions by use of the following procedures:

- Channel assignment procedure;
- Handover procedure;
- Channel mode modify procedure.

The network shall indicate in the respective command messages the target mode the MS shall enter on the new channel or in the new channel mode, respectively.

3.4.1 SACCH procedures

3.4.1.1 General

In dedicated mode and group transmit mode, the SACCH is used in signalling layer at least for measurement results transmission from the MS.

The SACCH has the particularity that continuous transmission must occur in both directions. For that purpose, in the MS to network direction, measurement result messages are sent at each possible occasion when nothing else has to be sent (see section 3.4.1.2). Similarly, SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5, 6 and optionally 5bis and 5ter messages are sent in the network to MS direction in UI frames when nothing else has to be sent.

On a VGCS channel, the network may sent further or alternative system information messages both for MSs in group transmit mode and in group receive mode (see section 3.4.15.2.1).

The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis message shall be sent if and only if the EXT IND bit in the Neighbour Cell Description information element in both the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5 and TYPE 5bis messages indicates that each information element only carries part of the BA.

A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may consider the EXT-IND bit in the Neighbour Cells Description IE in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5 message bit as a spare bit, assume that the information element carries the complete BA, and ignore any SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis messages.

NOTE: The network should take into account limitations of certain MSs to understand SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5ter and TYPE 5bis messages, the EXT-IND bit in the Neighbour Cells Description, and formats used in the Neighbour Cells Description information element and Cell Channel Description information element used in SYSTEM INFORMATION messages, see section 10.5.2.1b, and section 10.5.2.22.

As specified in GSM 05.08, problems occurring in the reception of SACCH frames are interpreted as a loss of communication means and appropriate procedures are then triggered as specified in section 3.5.2.

3.4.1.2 Measurement report

When in dedicated mode or group transmit mode, the MS regularly sends MEASUREMENT REPORT messages to the network. These messages contain measurements results about reception characteristics from the current cell and from neighbour cells. The BA (list) which is the basis for the measurements is derived from information received on the BCCH in System Information 2 and optionally 2bis and/or 2ter and on the SACCH in System Information 5 and optionally 5bis and/or 5ter.

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS/VBS listening: In case of a VGCS/VBS call, on the SACCH of the VGCS or VBS channel downlink measurements are based on the BA (list) derived from System Information 5 and optionally 5bis and/or 5ter or on the BCCH frequency numbers and BSIC provided in System Information 10 and optionally 10bis or 11 or 12.

When the information is received in more than one message the MS shall only combine information from messages received on the same channel and indicating the same value of the BCCH allocation sequence number without any message indicating a different value of the BCCH allocation sequence number received in between. If neighbouring cell information for the serving cell is not available, the MS indicates this in the MEASUREMENT REPORT message. These measurement results are obtained as specified in GSM 05.08.

These messages are sent on the slow ACCH, in unacknowledged mode.

If no other message is scheduled on the SACCH at the instant when a layer 2 frame is due to be sent, then the MS shall send a MEASUREMENT REPORT message in that frame. The interval between two successive layer 2 frames containing MEASUREMENT REPORT messages shall not exceed one layer 2 frame.

3.4.2 Transfer of messages and link layer service provision

When in dedicated mode or in group transmit mode, upper layers can send messages in multiframe or unacknowledged mode on SAPI 0.

Moreover, but only when in dedicated mode, upper layers have access to the full link layer services for SAPIs other than 0, with the exception of the error indication and local end release that are directly treated by the RR sublayer, as specified in particular places of section 3.

3.4.3 Channel assignment procedure

In dedicated mode or in group transmit mode, an intracell change of channel can be requested by upper layers for changing the channel type, or decided by the RR sublayer, e.g. for an internal handover. This change may be performed through the dedicated channel assignment procedure.

The purpose of the channel assignment procedure is to completely modify the physical channel configuration of the MS without frequency redefinition or change in synchronization while staying in the same cell.

This procedure shall not be used for changing between dependent configurations, i.e. those sharing Radio Resource. An example of dependent channels is a full rate channel and one of the corresponding half rate channels. The only procedures provided for changing between dependent configurations are the additional assignment and the partial release procedures.

The channel assignment procedure happens only in dedicated mode and in group transmit mode. This procedure cannot be used in the idle mode; in this case the immediate assignment procedure is used. However, MSs in group receive mode may be informed by ASSIGNMENT COMMAND messages on the assignment to a new VGCS or VBS channel in a cell (see section 3.4.15.1.3).

The channel assignment procedure includes:

- the suspension of normal operation except for RR management (layer 3).

- the release of the main signalling link, and of the other data links as defined in section 3.1.4, and the disconnection of TCHs if any.

- the deactivation of previously assigned channels (layer 1)

- the activation of the new channels and their connection if applicable.

- The triggering of the establishment of the data link connections for SAPI = 0.

The channel assignment procedure is always initiated by the network.

3.4.3.1 Channel assignment initiation

The network initiates the channel assignment procedure by sending an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message to the MS on the main signalling link. It then starts timer T3107.

NOTE: The network should take into account limitations of certain MSs to understand formats used in the Frequency List IE and Cell Channel Description IE used in the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message, see section 10.5.2.13 and section 10.5.2.1b.

When sending this message on the network side, and when receiving it on the MS side, all transmission of signalling layer messages except for those RR messages needed for this procedure and for abnormal cases is suspended until resumption is indicated. These RR messages can be deduced from sections 3.4.3 and 8.8 Radio Resource management.

Upon receipt of the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message, the MS initiates a local end release of link layer connections, disconnects the physical channels, commands the switching to the assigned channels and initiates the establishment of lower layer connections (this includes the activation of the channels, their connection and the establishment of the main signalling links).

The ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message contains the description of the new configuration, including for the TCH/H + TCH/H + ACCHs configuration, the exact ACCHs to be used and a power command. The power level defined in this power command shall be used by the MS for the initial power on the new channel(s). It shall not affect the power used on the old channel(s).

An ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message may indicate a frequency change in progress, with a starting time and possibly alternative channel descriptions.

In the case of the reception of an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message which contains only the description of a channel to be used after the starting time, the MS shall wait up to the starting time before accessing the channel. If the starting time has already elapsed, the mobile shall access the channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message (see GSM 05.10 for the timing constraints).

If the message contains both the description of a channel to be used after the indicated time and of a channel to be used before, the MS accesses a channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message. If the moment the MS is ready to access is before the indicated time, the MS accesses the channels described for before the starting time. The MS then changes to the channel described for after the starting time at the indicated time. New parameters can be frequency list, MAIO and HSN. Other parameters describing the allocated channels must be identical to the parameters described for before the starting time. If the moment the MS is ready to access is after the starting time, the MS accesses the channel described for after the starting time.

If frequency hopping is applied, the cell allocation if present in the message is used to decode the mobile allocation. If the cell allocation is not included, the MS uses its current cell allocation, the current CA is the last CA received on the BCCH. Afterward, the current CA may be changed by some messages sent on the main signalling link containing a CA (the possible messages are: ASSIGNMENT COMMAND, HANDOVER COMMAND and FREQUENCY REDEFINITION). Note that there are cases in which the current CA is undefined, see section 3.4.3.3.

The ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message may contain a cipher mode setting IE. In that case, this ciphering mode has to be applied on the new channel. If no such information is present, the ciphering mode is the same as on the previous channel. In either case the ciphering key shall not be changed. The ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message shall not contain a cipher mode setting IE that indicates "start ciphering" unless a CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message has been transmitted earlier in the RR connection: if such an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message is received it shall be regarded as erroneous, an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE with cause "Protocol error unspecified" message shall be returned immediately, and no further action taken.

In a voice group call, the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message may contain a VGCS target mode information element defining which mode is to be used on the new channel (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the mode shall be the same as on the previous channel. The VGCS target mode information element shall also indicate the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as on the previous channel. MSs not supporting VGCS talking shall ignore the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message if the VGCS target mode information element is included in the message and shall send an RR STATUS message to the network with cause #96. If a VGCS target mode information element and a cipher mode setting information element is included in the same message, the message shall be regarded as erroneous, an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "Protocol error unspecified" shall be returned immediately, and no further action taken.

3.4.3.2 Assignment completion

After the main signalling link is successfully established, the MS returns an ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message, specifying cause "normal event", to the network on the main DCCH.

The sending of this message on the MS side and its receipt on the network side allow the resumption of the transmission of signalling layer messages other than those belonging to RR management.

At the receipt of the ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message, the network releases the previously allocated resources and stops timer T3107.

3.4.3.3 Abnormal cases

If the MS has no current CA and if it needs a CA to analyse the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message, it stays on the current channel(s) and sends an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "no cell allocation available".

If the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message instructs the MS to use a Channel Description or Mode that it does not support, then the MS shall return an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "channel mode unacceptable", and the MS shall remain on the current channel(s) and uses the old Channel Description or Channel Mode.

If the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message instructs the MS to use a frequency that it is not capable of, then the MS shall return an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented", and the MS shall remain on the current channel(s).

If the MS receives an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message with a Frequency List IE indicating frequencies that are not all in one band, then the MS shall stay on the current channel(s) and send an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented". If the MS receives an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message with a Mobile Allocation IE indexing frequencies that are not all in one band, then the MS shall stay on the current channel(s) and send an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented".

NOTE: An ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message sent to a multi band MS shall not be considered invalid because it indicates frequencies that are all in a different frequency band to that of the current channel.

On the MS side, if a lower layer failure happens on the new channel before the ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message has been sent, the MS deactivates the new channels, reactivates the old channels, reconnects the TCHs if any and triggers the establishment of the main signalling link. It then sends a ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message, cause "protocol error unspecified" on the main DCCH and resumes the normal operation, as if no assignment attempt had occurred. The operational parameters (e.g. ciphering mode) when returning on the old channel are those applied before the procedure.

When receiving the ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message, the network stops T3107.

If a lower layer failure happens while attempting to connect back to the old channels, the radio link failure procedure is applied (see section 3.4.13.2).

On the network side, if timer T3107 elapses before either the ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message has been received on the new channels, an ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message is received on the old channels or the MS has re-established the call, the old channels and the new channels are released if they both were dedicated channels and all contexts related to the connections with that MS are cleared. If one of the channels was a VGCS channel, it shall be maintained and the uplink shall be set free. If both channels were VGCS channels, the network shall maintain one of the channels and the uplink shall be set free.

On the network side, lower layer failure occurring on the old channels after the sending of the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message are ignored. Lower layer failures occurring after the receipt of the SABM Frame on the new main signalling link are treated following the general rules (cf. section 3.5.2).

3.4.4 Handover procedure

In dedicated mode or group transmit mode, an intercell or intracell change of channel can be requested by the network RR sublayer. This change may be performed through the handover procedure

NOTE: The decision to do a handover and the choice of the new cell is out of the scope of this technical specification.

The purpose of the handover procedure is to completely modify the channels allocated to the MS e.g. when the cell is changed. A change in the channel configuration nature is possible. This procedure is used only while in dedicated mode or group transmit mode.

The handover procedure shall not be used for changing between dependent configurations (see section 3.4.3).

The handover procedure includes:

- The suspension of normal operation except for RR management (layer 3).
- The disconnection of the main signalling link, and of the other links via local end release (layer 2), and the disconnection of the TCH(s) if any.
- The disconnection and the deactivation of previously assigned channels and their release (layer 1).
- The activation of the new channels, and their connection if applicable.
- The triggering of the establishment of data link connection for SAPI = 0 on the new channels.

The handover procedure is always initiated by the network.

3.4.4.1 Handover initiation

The network initiates the handover procedure by sending a HANDOVER COMMAND message to the MS on the main DCCH. It then starts timer T3103.

NOTE: The network should take into account limitations of certain MSs to understand formats used in the Frequency List IE, Frequency Short List IE, and Cell Channel Description IE used in the HANDOVER COMMAND message, see section 10.5.2.13, section 10.5.2.14, and section 10.5.2.1b.

When sending this message on the network side, and when receiving it on the MS side, all transmission of signalling layer messages except for those RR messages needed for this procedure and for abnormal cases, is suspended until resuming is indicated. These RR messages can be deduced from section 3.4.3 and 8.5.1 "Radio Resource management.

Upon receipt of the HANDOVER COMMAND message, the MS initiates, as described in section 3.1.4, the release of link layer connections, disconnects the physical channels, commands the switching to the assigned channels and initiates the establishment of lower layer connections (this includes the activation of the channels, their connection and the establishment of the data links).

The HANDOVER COMMAND message contains:

- The characteristics of the new channels, including for the TCH/H + TCH/H + ACCHs configuration the exact ACCHs to be used.

- The characteristics of the new cell that are necessary to successfully communicate (e.g. frequency list in the case of slow frequency hopping), including the data that allows the MS to use the pre-knowledge about synchronization it acquires by the measurement process (i.e. BSIC + BCCH frequency).

- A power command (cf. GSM 05.08). The power level defined in this power command shall be used by the MS for the initial power on the new channel(s). It shall not affect the power used on the old channel(s).

- An indication of the physical channel establishment procedure to be used.

- A handover reference, used as specified in the following section. The choice of the handover reference by the network is out of the scope of this specification and left to the manufacturers.

- Optionally a timing advance to be used on the new cell.

- Optionally a cipher mode setting. In that case, this ciphering mode has to be applied on the new channel. If no such information is present, the ciphering mode is the same as on the previous channel. In either case the ciphering key shall not be changed. The HANDOVER COMMAND message shall not contain a cipher mode setting IE that indicates "start ciphering" unless a CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message has been transmitted previously in this instance of the dedicated mode: if such a HANDOVER COMMAND message is received it shall be regarded as erroneous, a HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "Protocol error unspecified" shall be returned immediately, and no further action taken.

- Optionally, in a voice group call, a VGCS target mode information element defining which mode is to be used on the new channel (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the mode shall be the same as on the previous channel. The VGCS target mode information element shall also indicate the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as on the previous channel. MSs not supporting VGCS talking shall ignore the HANDOVER COMMAND message if the VGCS target mode information element is included in the message and shall send an RR STATUS message to the network with cause #96. If a VGCS target mode information element and a cipher mode setting information element is included in the same message, the message shall be regarded as erroneous, an HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "Protocol error unspecified" shall be returned immediately, and no further action taken.

In addition, a HANDOVER COMMAND message may indicate a frequency change in progress, with a starting time and possibly alternative channel descriptions.

In the case of the reception of a HANDOVER COMMAND message which contains only the description of a channel to be used after the starting time, the MS shall wait up to the starting time before accessing the channel. If the starting time has already elapsed, the mobile shall access the channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message (see GSM 05.10 for the timing constraints).

If the message contains both the description of a channel to be used after the indicated time and of a channel to be used before, the MS accesses a channel as an immediate reaction to the reception of the message. If the moment the MS is ready to access is before the indicated time, the MS accesses the channels described for before the starting time. The MS then changes to the channel described for after the starting time at the indicated time. New parameters can be frequency list, MAIO and HSN. Other parameters describing the allocated channels must be identical to the parameters described for before the starting time. If the moment the MS is ready to access is after the starting time, the MS accesses the channel described for after the starting time.

3.4.4.2 Physical channel establishment

Four procedures are defined. The support of three of them is mandatory in the MS. The pseudo-synchronization case is optional in the MS. A pseudo-synchronized handover can be commanded only to a MS that can support it, as indicated in the classmark.

3.4.4.2.1 Finely synchronized cell case

If the MS knows that the timing advance with the new cell is not out of range, i.e. smaller than or equal to the maximum timing advance that can be coded as specified in GSM 04.04, or if the new cell does accept out of range timing advance as indicated in the HANDOVER COMMAND message, the MS proceeds as follows.

After having switched to the assigned channels, the MS sends four times the HANDOVER ACCESS message in four successive layer 1 frames on the main DCCH. This message is sent in an access burst. Its content is reduced to the handover reference information element. The transmission of these four messages is optional if so indicated by the network in the HANDOVER COMMAND message.

It then activates the channels in sending and receiving mode and connects the channels if need be.

If applicable, ciphering is immediately started . The access bursts are not ciphered.

3.4.4.2.2 Non synchronized cell case

After having switched to the assigned channels, the MS starts repeating the HANDOVER ACCESS message in successive layer 1 frames on the main DCCH. This message is sent in an access burst. Its content is reduced to the handover reference information element. The MS starts timer T3124 at the start point of the timeslot in which the HANDOVER ACCESS message is sent the first time.

The MS then activates the channels in receiving mode and connects the channels if need be (only for reception).

If applicable, deciphering is then immediately started . The access bursts are not ciphered.

When the network has the RF characteristics that are necessary, it sends in unacknowledged mode a PHYSICAL INFORMATION message to the MS on the main DCCH. If applicable, ciphering and deciphering is immediately started (i.e., before even the reception of a correct access burst), and the message is sent enciphered.

The PHYSICAL INFORMATION message contains various physical layer related information, allowing a proper transmission by the MS.

When sending the PHYSICAL INFORMATION message, the network starts timer T3105. If this timer times out before the reception of a correctly decoded layer 2 frame in format A or B (see GSM 04.06), or a correctly decoded TCH frame from the MS, the network repeats the PHYSICAL INFORMATION message and restarts timer T3105. The maximum number of repetitions is Ny1.

The correct decoding of a frame means that the decoding algorithm and the error detection tests, if any, indicate no error.

When the MS receives a PHYSICAL INFORMATION message, it stops timer T3124, stops sending access bursts, activates the physical channels in sending and receiving mode and connects the channels if need be. If the allocated channel is an SDCCH (+ SACCH), performance of the MS must enable the MS to accept a correct PHYSICAL INFORMATION message sent by the network in any block while T3124 is running.

3.4.4.2.3 Pseudo-synchronized cell case

The details of the use of this procedure are described in GSM 05.10. The MS computes the timing advance to be used with the new cell from the real time difference value given in the HANDOVER COMMAND message. If the MS knows that the timing advance with the new cell is not out of range , i.e. smaller or equal to the maximum timing advance that can be coded as specified in GSM 04.04, or if the new cell accepts an out of range timing advance as indicated in the HANDOVER COMMAND message, the MS switches to the new channel and proceeds as follows.

After having switched to the assigned channels, the MS sends in four successive slots on the main DCCH a HANDOVER ACCESS message. This message is sent in random mode and thus does not follow the basic format. Its content is reduced to the handover reference information element. The transmission of these four messages is optional if so indicated by the network in the HANDOVER COMMAND message.

The MS then activates the channels in sending and receiving mode and connects the channels if need be. The MS may activate the channels in receiving mode and connect the channels while sending access bursts.

If applicable, ciphering is then immediately started. The access bursts are not ciphered.

3.4.4.2.4 Pre-synchronized cell case

The details of the use of this procedure are described in GSM 05.10. The MS switches to the new channel and proceeds as follows.

After having switched to the assigned channels, the MS sends in four successive slots on the main DCCH a HANDOVER ACCESS message. This message is sent in an access burst and thus does not follow the basic format. Its content is reduced to the handover reference information element. The transmission of these four messages is optional if so indicated by the network in the HANDOVER COMMAND message.

The MS then activates the channel in sending and receiving mode and connects the channels if need be. The timing advance value to be used with the new cell is:

- either the value contained in the HANDOVER COMMAND message if the timing advance information element is present;

- or the default value for pre-synchronized handover as defined in GSM 05.10, if the timing advance information element is not included in the HANDOVER COMMAND message. The MS may activate the channels in receiving mode and connect the channels while sending access bursts.

If applicable, ciphering is immediately started. The access bursts are not ciphered.

3.4.4.3 Handover completion

After lower layer connections are successfully established, the MS returns a HANDOVER COMPLETE message, specifying cause "normal event", to the network on the main DCCH.

The sending of this message on the MS side and its receipt on the network side allow the resumption of the transmission of signalling layer messages other than those for RR management.

When receiving the HANDOVER COMPLETE message, the network stops timer T3103 and releases the old channels.

If requested to do so in the HANDOVER COMMAND message, the MS includes the observed time difference it has measured when performing the handover, corrected by half the timing advance, in the HANDOVER COMPLETE message (detailed specifications are given in GSM 05.10).

3.4.4.4 Abnormal cases

In the case of a synchronous or pseudo-synchronous handover, if the MS knows that the timing advance with the new cell is out of range, i.e. is bigger than the maximum timing advance that can be coded as specified in GSM 04.04, and if the new cell does not accept out of range timing advance as indicated in the HANDOVER COMMAND message, the MS sends a HANDOVER FAILURE message, cause "handover impossible, timing advance out of range", on the main signalling link and does not attempt that handover.

If the HANDOVER COMMAND message instructs the MS to use a Channel Description or Mode that it does not support, then the MS shall return a HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "channel mode unacceptable", and the MS shall remain on the current channel(s) and uses the old Channel Description or Mode.

If the HANDOVER COMMAND message instructs the MS to use a frequency that it is not capable of, then the MS shall return a HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented", and the MS shall remain on the current channel(s).

If the MS receives a HANDOVER COMMAND message with a Frequency List IE or Frequency Short List IE indicating frequencies that are not all in one band, then the MS shall stay on the current channel(s) and send a HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented". If the MS receives a HANDOVER COMMAND message with a Mobile Allocation IE indexing frequencies that are not all in one band, then the MS shall stay on the current channel(s) and send a HANDOVER FAILURE message with cause "frequency not implemented".

NOTE: A HANDOVER COMMAND message sent to a multi band MS shall not be considered invalid because it indicates target channel frequencies that are all in a different frequency band to that of the ARFCN in the Cell Description IE.

On the MS side, if timer T3124 times out (only in the non- synchronized case) or if a lower layer failure happens on the new channel before the HANDOVER COMPLETE message has been sent, the MS deactivates the new channels, reactivates the old channels, reconnects the TCHs if any and triggers the establishment of the main signalling link. It then sends a HANDOVER FAILURE message on the main signalling link and resumes normal operation as if no handover attempt had occurred. The operational parameters (e.g. ciphering mode) when returning on the old channel are those applied before the HANDOVER COMMAND message was received.

When the HANDOVER FAILURE message has been received, the network releases the new channels if they were dedicated channels and stops timers T3105 and stops T3103 in the non-synchronized case. If the new channels were VGCS channels, they shall be maintained.

If a lower layer failure happens while attempting to connect back to the old channels, the standard rules are applied (cf. section 3.4.13.2).

On the network side, if timer T3103 elapses before either the HANDOVER COMPLETE message is received on the new channels, or a HANDOVER FAILURE message is received on the old channels, or the MS has re-established the call, the old channels are released if they were dedicated channels and all contexts related to the connections with that MS are cleared. If the old channel was a VGCS channel, it shall be maintained and the uplink shall be set free.

On the network side, if neither a correctly layer 2 frame in format A or B nor a correctly TCH frame have been received from the MS on the new channel, the newly allocated channels are released if they were dedicated channels. If the new channels were VGCS channels, they shall be maintained and the uplink shall be set free..

On the network side, lower layer failures occurring on the old channels after the sending of the HANDOVER COMMAND message are ignored. Lower layer failures occurring after the receipt of the SABM frame on the new main signalling link are treated following a general scheme (cf. section 3.4.13.2).

3.4.5 Frequency redefinition procedure

In dedicated mode and group transmit mode, this procedure is used by the network to change the frequencies and hopping sequences of the allocated channels. This is meaningful only in the case of frequency hopping.

The network sends to the MS a FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message containing the new parameters together with a starting time indication.

NOTE: The network should take into account limitations of certain MSs to understand formats used in the Cell Channel Description IE used in the FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message, see section 10.5.2.13.

When receiving such a message, the MS modifies the frequencies/hopping sequences it uses at the exact indicated time slot, i.e. the indicated time slot is the first with new parameters. All other functions are not disturbed by this change. New parameters can be the cell channel description, the mobile allocation and the MAIO. Other parameters describing the allocated channels must be identical to the current parameters.

3.4.5.1 Abnormal cases

If the MS receives a FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message with a Mobile Allocation IE indexing frequencies that are not all in one band and a Starting Time IE indicating a time that has not elapsed, then the MS shall stay on the current channel(s) and send a RR STATUS message with cause "frequency not implemented".

If the MS receives a FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message with a Mobile Allocation IE indexing frequencies that are not all in one band and a Starting Time IE indicating a time that has elapsed, then the MS shall locally abort the radio connection and, if permitted, attempt Call Re-establishment.

NOTE: A FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message sent to a multi band MS shall not be considered invalid because it indicates new frequencies that are all in a different frequency band to that of the ARFCN of the serving cell.

3.4.6 Channel mode modify procedure

In dedicated mode or group transmit mode, higher layers can request the setting of the channel mode.

The channel mode modify procedure allows the network to request the MS to set the channel mode for one channel. The channel mode covers the coding, decoding and transcoding mode used on the indicated channel.

This procedure is always initiated by the network.

NOTE: Direct transitions between full rate speech coder version 1 and full rate speech coder version 2 (and vice versa) may cause unpleasant audiobursts.

3.4.6.1 Normal channel mode modify procedure

3.4.6.1.1 Initiation of the channel mode modify procedure

The network initiates the procedure by sending a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message to the MS. This message contains:

- a channel description of the channel on which the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message is sent, and

- the mode to be used on the channel.

3.4.6.1.2 Completion of channel mode modify procedure

When it has received the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message, the MS sets the mode for the indicated channel and then replies by a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message indicating the ordered channel mode.

This applies whether the mode commanded by the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY is different from the one used by the MS or whether it is already in use.

3.4.6.1.3 Abnormal cases

No specific action for a lower layer failure is specified in this section. If the MS does not support the indicated mode, it shall retain the old mode and return the associated channel mode information in the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message.

3.4.6.2 Channel mode modify procedure for a voice group call talker

3.4.6.2.1 Initiation of the channel mode modify procedure

The network initiates the procedure by sending a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message to the MS. This message contains:

- a channel description of the channel on which the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message is sent, and

- the new channel mode to be used on the channel, and

- optionally, the VGCS target mode information element defining which RR mode is to be used with the new channel mode (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the RR mode shall be the same as with the previous channel mode. The VGCS target mode information element shall also indicate the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as with the previous channel mode. MSs not supporting VGCS talking shall ignore the CIPHER MODE COMMAND message if the VGCS target mode information element is included in the message and shall send an RR STATUS message to the network with cause #96.

The start of ciphering with a group cipher key with the new channel mode is only possible from the non ciphered mode.

If a VGCS target mode information element indicating a group cipher key number is included in the message and the previous mode is not non ciphered and the group cipher key is different to the previous cipher key, the MS shall behave in the same way as if it would not support the indicated channel mode.

3.4.6.2.2 Completion of mode change procedure

When it has received the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message, the MS changes the mode for the indicated channel and then replies by a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message indicating the new channel mode.

3.4.6.2.3 Abnormal cases

No specific action for a lower layer failure is specified in this section. If the MS does not support the indicated mode, it shall retain the old mode and return the associated channel mode information in the CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message.

3.4.7 Ciphering mode setting procedure

In dedicated mode, the ciphering mode setting procedure is used by the network to set the ciphering mode, i.e. whether or not the transmission is ciphered, and if so which algorithm to use. The procedure shall only be used to change from "not ciphered" mode to "ciphered" mode, or vice-versa, or to pass a CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message to the MS while remaining in the "not ciphered" mode. The ciphering mode setting procedure is always triggered by the network and it only applies to dedicated resources.

The cipher mode setting procedure shall not be applied in group transmit mode.

3.4.7.1 Ciphering mode setting initiation

The network initiates the ciphering mode setting procedure by sending a CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message to the MS on the main signalling link, indicating whether ciphering shall be used or not, and if yes which algorithm to use.

Additionally, the network may, by the use of the cipher response information element, request the MS to include its IMEISV in the CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message.

The new mode is applied for reception on the network side after the message has been sent.

3.4.7.2 Ciphering mode setting completion

Whenever the MS receives a valid CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message, it shall, if a SIM is present and considered valid by the ME and the ciphering key sequence number stored on the SIM indicates that a ciphering key is available, load the ciphering key stored on the SIM into the ME. A valid CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message is defined to be one of the following:

- one that indicates "start ciphering" and is received by the MS in the "not ciphered" mode;

- one that indicates "no ciphering" and is received by the MS in the "not ciphered" mode; and

- one that indicates "no ciphering" and is received by the MS in the "ciphered" mode.

Other CIPHERING MODE COMMAND messages shall be regarded as erroneous, an RR STATUS message with cause "Protocol error unspecified" shall be returned, and no further action taken.

Upon receipt of the CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message indicating ciphering, the MS shall start transmission and reception in the indicated mode.

When the appropriate action on the CIPHERING MODE COMMAND has been taken, the MS sends back a CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message. If the "cipher response" field of the cipher response information element in the CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message specified "IMEI must be included" the MS shall include its IMEISV in the CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message.

Upon receipt of the CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message or any other correct layer 2 frame which was sent in the new mode, the network starts transmission in the new mode.

```
                mobile station                         network

                                 CIPH MOD CMD
                          <---------------------------
                                                <------- start reception
             start  --->                                      in new mode
       transmission and
       reception in new mode
                                 CIPH MOD COM
                          --------------------------->
                                                  <------ start trans-
                                                    mission in new mode
```

Figure 3.3/GSM 04.08: Ciphering mode setting sequence

3.4.8 Additional channel assignment procedure

NOTE: In the present state of GSM 04.03, this procedure is only possible for the TCH/H + ACCHs to TCH/H + TCH/H + ACCHs transition. As a consequence it is not needed for simple MSs. The description of the procedure is in general terms to cope with possible evolution.

In dedicated mode, a change of channel configuration to include an additional channel can be requested by upper layers.

The additional channel assignment procedure shall not be applied in group transmit mode,

The purpose of the additional assignment procedure is to allocate an additional dedicated channel to a MS while keeping the previously allocated channels. In particular the main DCCH and the SACCH are not modified, and signalling exchanges are not interrupted.

The additional assignment procedure may happen only in dedicated mode. It is used for instance for the transition from the TCH/H + ACCHs configuration to the TCH/H + TCH/H + ACCHs configuration.

The additional assignment procedure is always initiated by the network.

3.4.8.1 Additional assignment procedure initiation

The network initiates the procedure by sending an ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT message to the MS on the main DCCH. The ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT message contains the description of the newly assigned channel.

On receipt of the message, the MS activates the new channel.

3.4.8.2 Additional assignment procedure completion

The MS sends an ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message to the network on the channel, on which it receives the ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT message.

3.4.8.3 Abnormal cases

A lower layer failure occurring during the procedure is treated according to the general case (see section 3.5.2).

The network considers the channel as allocated from the sending of the ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT message. As a consequence, if a re-establishment occurs, the network will consider the context as if the MS has received the message, and the new configuration allocated after the re-establishment may differ from the one the MS had before the re-establishment.

3.4.9 Partial channel release procedure

In dedicated mode, a change of channel configuration to release one channel can be requested by upper layers.

The partial channel release procedure shall not be applied in group transmit mode.

The purpose of this procedure is to deactivate part of the dedicated channels in use. The channel configuration remains dedicated.

NOTE: In the present state of GSM 04.03, this procedure is only possible for the TCH/H + TCH/H + ACCHs to TCH/H + ACCHs transition. As a consequence it is not needed for simple MSs.

The partial release procedure is always initiated by the network.

3.4.9.1 Partial release procedure initiation

The network initiates the partial release by sending a PARTIAL RELEASE message to the MS on the main DCCH.

On receipt of the PARTIAL RELEASE message the MS:

- Initiates the disconnection of all the link layer connections carried by the channel to be released;

- Simultaneously initiates the connection on remaining channels of the data link layer connections that have been released;

- Deactivates the physical channels to be released.

- Sends a PARTIAL RELEASE COMPLETE to the network on the (possibly new) main signalling link.

3.4.9.2 Abnormal cases

A lower layer failure is treated following the general rules as specified in section 3.5.2.

Moreover, on the network side, the channel configuration nature is set from the sending of the PARTIAL RELEASE message onward. As a consequence, any new assignment after a re- establishment may concern a different channel configuration nature from the one known by the MS before the re-establishment.

3.4.10 Classmark change procedure

In dedicated mode or in group transmit mode, this procedure allows the MS to indicate to the network a change of characteristics reflected in the classmark (e.g. due to addition of power amplification). Furthermore, a MS which implements the « controlled early classmark sending » option may also send a CLASSMARK CHANGE message as described in clause 3.3.1.4, even if no change of characteristics has occurred.

The MS sends a CLASSMARK CHANGE message to the network. This message contains the new MS classmark 2 information element. It may also contain a Classmark 3 Information Element. There is no acknowledgement from the network at layer 3.

3.4.11 Classmark interrogation procedure

This procedure allows the network to request additional classmark information from the MS (e.g. if the information initially sent by the MS is not sufficient for network decisions).

3.4.11.1 Classmark interrogation initiation

The network initiates the classmark interrogation procedure by sending a CLASSMARK ENQUIRY message to the MS on the main DCCH.

3.4.11.2 Classmark interrogation completion

On receipt of the CLASSMARK ENQUIRY message the MS sends a CLASSMARK CHANGE message to the network on the main DCCH. This message contains the MS classmark 2 information element. It may also contain a Classmark 3 Information Element.

3.4.12 Indication of notifications and paging informations

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

In dedicated mode or in group transmit mode, the RR entity shall provide indications on all received notifications for voice group calls or voice broadcast calls which are related to the VGCS or VBS subscription data stored in the MS to the upper layer. The indication shall include the notified group or broadcast call reference and possibly the related priority, if provided.

In group transmit mode, if the MS has received a paging message with the own MS identity on the PCH or on the voice group call channel downlink, the RR entity shall provide an indication to the GCC sublayer, together with the related priority, if applicable.

In group transmit mode, if the RR entity receives information on the voice group call channel of the existence of a paging message in its paging subgroup of the PCH, the RR entity shall pass this information to the GCC sublayer together with the related priority if provided. If the GCC sublayer decides to read the new paging message, the RR entity shall read its paging subchannel for up to three times the occurrence of its subgroup.

3.4.13 RR connection release procedure

3.4.13.1 Normal release procedure

The release of the RR connection can be requested by upper layers.

The purpose of this procedure is to deactivate all the dedicated channels in use. When the channels are released, the MS returns to the CCCH configuration, idle mode. The channel release procedure can be used in a variety of cases, including TCH release after a call release, and DCCH release when a dedicated channel allocated for signalling is released.

In dedicated mode and group transmit mode, the channel release procedure is always initiated by the network.

3.4.13.1.1 Channel release procedure initiation in dedicated mode and in group transmit mode

The network initiates the channel release by sending a CHANNEL RELEASE message to the MS on the main DCCH, starts timer T3109 and deactivates the SACCH.

On receipt of a CHANNEL RELEASE message the MS starts timer T3110 and disconnects the main signalling link. When T3110 times out, or when the disconnection is confirmed, the MS deactivates all channels, considers the RR connection as released, and returns to CCCH idle mode.

NOTE: Data Links other than the main signalling link are disconnected by local end link release.

If case of dedicated mode, on the network side, when the main signalling link is disconnected, the network stops timer T3109 and starts timer T3111. When timer T3111 times out, the network deactivates the channels, they are then free to be allocated to another connection.

NOTE: The sole purpose of timer T3111 is to let some time to acknowledge the disconnection and to protect the channel in case of loss of the acknowledge frame.

If timer T3109 times out, the network deactivates the channels; they are then free to be allocated to another connection.

The CHANNEL RELEASE message will include an RR cause indication as follows:

#0 if it is a normal release, e.g. at the end of a call or at normal release of a DCCH.

#1 to indicate an unspecified abnormal release.

#2, #3 or #4 to indicate a specific release event.

#5 if the channel is to be assigned for servicing a higher priority call (e.g. an emergency call).

#65 if e.g. a handover procedure is stopped because the call has been cleared.

The CHANNEL RELEASE message may include the information element BA Range which may be used by a MS in its selection algorithm (see GSM 05.08 and GSM 03.22).

For MSs supporting VGCS listening, the following procedures apply:

The CHANNEL RELEASE message may include the information element Group Channel Description. In this case, the MS shall release the layer 2 link, enter the group receive mode and give an indication to the upper layer. If a CHANNEL RELEASE message with no Group Channel Description is received, the normal behaviour applies.

If ciphering is applied on the VGCS or VBS channel, the network shall provide in the CHANNEL RELEASE message the Group Cipher Key Number information element for the group cipher key to be used by the MS for reception of the VGCS or VBS channel. If this information element is not included, no ciphering is applied on the VGCS or VBS channel.

MSs not supporting VGCS or VBS listening shall ignore Group Channel Description and Group Cipher Key Number information elements and perform the channel release procedure as normal.

3.4.13.1.2 Abnormal cases

Abnormal cases are taken into account in the main part of the description of the procedure.

3.4.13.2 Radio link failure in dedicated mode

The main part of these procedures concerns the "normal" cases, i.e. those without any occurrence of loss of communication means. A separate paragraph at the end of the description of each procedure treats the cases of loss of communication, called a radio link failure. In dedicated mode, in most of the cases the reaction of the MS or the network is the same. Those reactions are described in this section to avoid repetitions.

A radio link failure can be detected by several ways:

(1) By analysis of reception at layer 1, as specified in GSM 05.08 and section 3.4.1.1.
(2) By a data link layer failure as specified in GSM 04.06, on the main signalling link. A data link failure on any other data link shall not be considered as a radio link failure.
(3) When a lower layer failure happens while the MS attempts to connect back to the old channels in a channel assignment procedure or handover procedure.
(4) In some cases where timers are started to detect the lack of answer from the other party, as described in section 3.

The two first cases are known by the term "lower layer failure".

3.4.13.2.1 Mobile side

When a radio link failure is detected by the MS,

- the MS shall perform a local end release on all signalling links unless otherwise specified;
- the MS shall deactivate all channels;
- the RR sublayer of the MS shall indicate an RR connection failure to the MM sublayer unless otherwise specified.

NOTE: Upper layers may decide on a re-establishment (cf. section 5.5.4).

3.4.13.2.2 Network side

In dedicated mode, the reaction of the network to a lower layer failure depends on the context. Except when otherwise specified, it is to release the connection either with the channel release procedure as specified in section 3.5.1, or with the following procedure. The network starts timer T3109 and deactivates the SACCH (and hence to stop transmission on the SACCH).

When a radio link failure has been detected, an indication is passed to the upper Mobility Management sublayer on the network side.

When timer T3109 expires, the network can regard the channels as released and free for allocation.

This procedure relies on the fact that if a MS does not receive the SACCH for some time, it completely releases the channels (cf. GSM 05.08).

NOTE: The network should maintain for a while the transaction context in order to allow call re-establishment. The length of timer is for further study.

3.4.13.3 RR connection abortion in dedicated mode

The MS aborts the RR connection by initiating a normal release of the main signalling link, performing local end releases on all other signalling links and disconnecting all traffic channels, if any.

3.4.13.4 Uplink release procedure in group transmit mode

If the uplink release is requested by the upper layer the MS shall send an UPLINK RELEASE message on the voice group call channel uplink, perform a release of the main signalling link and go back to the group receive mode.

If the UPLINK RELEASE message is received from the network on the voice group call channel downlink, the MS shall perform a release of the main signalling link and go back to the group receive mode.

3.4.14 Receiving a RR STATUS message by a RR entity.

If the RR entity of the MS receives a RR STATUS message no transition and no specific action shall be taken as seen from the radio interface, i.e. local actions are possible.

The actions to be taken on receiving a RR STATUS message in the network are an implementation dependent option see also section 8.

3.4.15 Group receive mode procedures

Only applicable for support of VGCS listening or VBS listening.

3.4.15.1 MS side

3.4.15.1.1 Reception of the VGCS or VBS channel

In group receive mode, the MS receives the downlink of the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel for which the channel description was provided within the notification message or in the related command message. The MS should also listen to the CCCH of the serving cell. Moreover, it measures the received levels on the serving cell and on the neighbour cells to assess the need of a cell reselection as specified in GSM 05.08. The general cell reselection procedure for the MS in group receive mode is described in GSM 03.22.

Information on neighbour cells used for cell reselection and reception of the VGCS or VBS channel in the neighbour cells may be provided on the downlink messages (see section 3.4.15.1.2). If no such information is provided or information is missing, the MS shall try to read this information on the BCCH and NCH of the neighbour cells.

3.4.15.1.2 Monitoring of downlink messages and related procedures

MSs in group receive mode shall monitor messages related to the following procedures on the VGCS or VBS channel downlink and act appropriately in order to be able to keep receiving the VGCS or VBS channel downlink.

All messages for MSs in group receive mode shall be received in UI format on the VGCS or VBS channel downlink. MSs in group receive mode shall ignore all messages which are not sent in UI format or which are not related to the following mentioned procedures.

The mobile should also monitor messages on the PCH or NCH of the current cell.

3.4.15.1.2.1 Channel assignment procedure

The MS shall monitor messages related to the channel assignment procedure. If the VGCS target mode information element indicating dedicated mode as target mode is included in the message, the MS shall ignore the message. Otherwise, the mobile shall go to the new channel and continue receiving but shall not transmit any response to the network.

3.4.15.1.2.2 Frequency redefinition procedure

The MS shall monitor messages related to the frequency redefinition procedure. The behaviour on the messages shall be as defined in section 3.4.5.

3.4.15.1.2.3 Channel mode modify procedure

The MS shall monitor messages related to the channel mode modify procedure. The MS shall receive with the new channel mode but shall not transmit any response to the network.

3.4.15.1.2.4 Notification and paging information

The MS shall monitor messages related to notification and paging procedures.

The RR entity shall provide indications on all received notifications for voice group calls or voice broadcast calls to the upper layer. The indication shall include the notified group or broadcast call reference and possibly the related priority, if provided.

On request by the upper layer to join another voice broadcast call or voice group call for which a corresponding notification with its corresponding channel description has been received, the RR entity shall search for the VBS or VGCS channel of the requested call. If the respective channel is received, then an indication to the upper layer shall be provided.

On request by the upper layer to join another voice broadcast call or voice group call for which a corresponding notification without its corresponding channel description has been received on the VGCS or VBS channel downlink, the RR entity shall read the corresponding notification on the NCH.

If the RR entity receives information on the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel of the existence of a paging message in its paging subgroup of the PCH, the RR entity shall pass this information to the GCC or BCC sublayer together with the related priority if provided. If the GCC or BCC sublayer decides that it is interested in new paging information, then the RR entity shall read its paging subchannel for up to three times the occurrence of its subgroup and during this time also the NCH.

If the MS has received a paging message with its own MS identity on the PCH or on the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel downlink, the RR entity shall provide an indication to the GCC or BCC sublayer, together with the related priority, if applicable.

3.4.15.1.2.5 Uplink status messages

MSs supporting VGCS talking shall monitor the VGCS uplink control related messages UPLINK FREE and UPLINK BUSY.

3.4.15.1.2.6 Channel release message

The MS shall monitor messages related to the channel release procedure. On receipt of a CHANNEL RELEASE message, the RR entity shall go to idle mode and give an indication to the upper layer.

3.4.15.1.3 Uplink reply procedure

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:

On receipt of an UPLINK FREE message with an uplink access request indication from the network on the voice group call channel downlink, the MS shall send two UPLINK ACCESS messages on the voice group call channel with the appropriate establishment cause and then stop immediately transmitting on the uplink.

The first UPLINK ACCESS message shall be transmitted by the MS with a random delay between 0 and 20 ms. The second UPLINK ACCESS messages shall be repeated after a further period of 100 ms plus a random delay between 0 and 20 ms.

If an uplink identity code (UIC) of the current cell has been provided by the network in the UPLINK FREE message, the MS shall use this UIC for the coding of the UPLINK ACCESS messages. If no UIC is provided, the MS shall use the BSIC received of the serving cell, for instance as received from the initial synchronization.

3.4.15.1.4 Leaving the group receive mode

3.4.15.1.4.1 Returning to idle mode

If the MS enters a cell belonging to the group call area for which no VGCS or VBS channel description is provided neither on the downlink of the VGCS or VBS channel of the previous cell nor on the NCH of the target cell, the MS shall go to idle mode and give an indication to the upper layer which then can request the establishment of an RR connection in order to be informed on the channel description by the network.

If the MS is entering a cell not belonging to the group call area, the MS shall go to idle mode and give an indication to the upper layer.

On request by the upper layer in order to respond to a paging message the RR entity shall go to the idle mode in order to establish a dedicated RR connection.

On receipt of a CHANNEL RELEASE message in UI format from the network the RR entity shall go to idle mode and give an indication to the upper layer.

If the upper layer requests to abort the group receive mode, the MS shall go back to idle mode.

3.4.15.1.4.2 Going to group transmit mode

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS transmit.)

If the upper layer request an uplink access and the MS shall perform the uplink investigation procedure as defined in section 3.3.1.2.1.1.

If the uplink investigation procedure is not successful, the MS shall give an indication to the upper layer and remain in group receive mode.

If the uplink investigation procedure is successful, the uplink access procedure is initiated as defined in section 3.3.1.2.1.2.

If the uplink access procedure is successful, the MS shall give an indication to the upper layer and enter the group transmit mode.

If the uplink access procedure is not successful, the MS shall give an indication to the upper layer and remain in group receive mode.

3.4.15.2 Network side

3.4.15.2.1 Provision of messages on the VGCS or VBS channel downlink

3.4.15.2.1.1 General

The network shall provide all messages directed to MSs in group receive mode (see section 3.4.15.1.2) in unacknowledged mode. Those messages which are also sent to the MS in group transmit mode in acknowledged mode have therefore to be repeated in addition as UI messages on the VGCS channel downlink if they shall also be received by MSs in group receive mode.

3.4.15.2.1.2 Provision of general information messages

In the case where the group call area exceeds one cell, the network shall provide the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6 message on the SACCH related to the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel.

In addition, if the group call area exceeds one cell, the network should provide either SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5 (possibly together with TYPE 5bis and 5ter) or TYPE 10 (possibly together with TYPE 10bis) or TYPE 11 or TYPE 12 messages on the SACCH related to the voice broadcast channel or voice group call channel.

- The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5, TYPE 5bis and TYPE 5ter messages provide information on the BCCH frequency in the neighbour cells.

- The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6 message provides information on the location area identification and the cell identity of the present cell.

- The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10 and TYPE 10bis messages provide information on the BCCH frequency and BSIC in the neighbour cells belonging to the group call area.

- The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11 message provides information on the cell description and the related voice broadcast channels or voice group call channel in the neighbour cells belonging to the group call area.

- The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12 provides informations on neighbour cells belonging to the group call area used for cell reselection calculations.

If SYSTEM INFORMATION messages TYPE 5 (and possibly 5bis and 5ter) or TYPE 10 (and possibly 10bis) or TYPE 11 or TYPE 12 are sent alone or in any combination in a cell during a voice group call or voice broadcast call, the latest received message shall be regarded as additional information to the previously received messages by the MS except where contradicting information is provided. In this case, the information of the latest received message shall replace older informations.

The network may also provide layer 3 messages for notification on the VGCS or VBS channel downlink FACCH and SACCH.

3.4.15.2.1.3 Provision of messages related to the voice group call uplink channel

(Only applicable for the support of VGCS talking.)

The network shall provide UPLINK FREE messages on the main signalling link of all voice group call channels when the uplink is released. The provision of UPLINK FREE messages shall be repeated as long as no uplink is granted to a MS.

The network shall provide an UPLINK BUSY message on the main signalling link of all voice group call when the uplink has been granted to a MS.

The network may send UPLINK FREE messages containing an uplink access request on the main signalling channel of the VGCS channels in order to obtain knowledge on whether any listening mobile is present in a cell or not. If there is no MS responding to the uplink access request, the network may decide to clear the VGCS channel in that cell.

3.4.15.2.2 Release of the VGCS or VBS Channels

If a release request for a voice group call is received from the upper layer, the network, after having released the RR connection with the MS in group transmit mode, shall stop the notification procedures for that voice group call and clear all related voice group call channels.

If a release request for a voice broadcast call is received from the upper layer, the network shall stop the notification procedures for that voice broadcast call and clear all related voice broadcast channels.

3.4.15.3 Failure cases

If the MS looses the voice group call channel or voice broadcast channel, the MS shall search all possible channel positions on the current cell and the neighbour cells for which a channel description is known for that call.

In case of a non successful channel assignment procedure, if a lower layer failure happens on the new channel to which the MS in group receive mode has gone, the MS may either:

- recognize that the MS which has control of the uplink has deactivated the new channels, or

- recognize a radio link timeout.

In both cases, the MS shall try to receive the call on the old channel.

4 Elementary procedures for Mobility Management

4.1 General

This section describes the procedures used for mobility management at the radio interface (Reference Point Um).

The main function of the Mobility Management sublayer is to support the mobility of user terminals, such as informing the network of its present location and providing user identity confidentiality.

A further function of the MM sublayer is to provide connection management services to the different entities of the upper Connection Management (CM) sublayer (see GSM 04.07).

All the MM procedures described in this section can only be performed if a RR connection has been established between the MS and the network. Else the MM sublayer has to initiate the establishment of a RR connection according to the procedures specified in section 3.3.

4.1.1 Type of MM procedures

Depending on how they can be initiated, three types of MM procedures can be distinguished:

(i) MM common procedures:

A MM common procedure can always be initiated whilst a RR connection exists. The procedures belonging to this type are:

Initiated by the network:

- TMSI reallocation procedure;
- authentication procedure;
- identification procedure;
- MM information procedure;
- abort procedure.

However, abort procedure is used only if an MM connection is being established or has already been established i.e. not during MM specific procedures or during IMSI detach procedure, see section 4.3.5.

Initiated by the MS:

- IMSI detach procedure (with the exceptions specified in section 4.3.4).

(ii) MM specific procedures:

A MM specific procedure can only be initiated if no other MM specific procedure is running or no MM connection exists. The procedures belonging to this type are:

- normal location updating procedure;
- periodic updating procedure;
- IMSI attach procedure.

(iii) MM connection management procedures:

These procedures are used to establish, maintain and release a MM connection between the MS and the network, over which an entity of the upper CM layer can exchange information with its peer. A MM connection establishment can only be performed if no MM specific procedure is running. More than one MM connection may be active at the same time.

4.1.2 MM sublayer states

The description of the states for the MM sublayer is organized as follows. The main states for the MS side, related to the procedures, are described in section 4.1.2.1.1. The MM IDLE state is subdivided in substates for the description of the behaviour in idle mode (section 4.1.2.1.2). This behaviour depends on an update status, described in 4.1.2.2. The states for the network side are described in 4.1.2.3.

4.1.2.1 MM sublayer states in the MS

In this section the possible states for the MM sublayer in the MS is described. In figure 4.1/GSM 04.08 an overview of the MM sublayer protocol is given.

4.1.2.1.1 Main states

0. NULL
   The MS is inactive (e.g. power down). Important parameters are stored. Only manual action by the user may transfer the MM sublayer to another state.

3. LOCATION UPDATING INITIATED
   A location updating procedure has been started and the MM awaits a response from the network. The timer T3210 is running.

5. WAIT FOR OUTGOING MM CONNECTION
   The MM connection establishment has been started, and the MM awaits a response from the network. The timer T3230 is running.

6. MM CONNECTION ACTIVE
   The MM sublayer has a RR connection to its peer entity on the network side. One or more MM connections are active.

7. IMSI DETACH INITIATED
   The IMSI detach procedure has been started. The timer T3220 is running.

9. WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND
   The MM sublayer has a RR connection to its peer entity in the network, but no MM connection is established. The MS is passive, awaiting further commands from the network. The timer T3240 may be running.

10. LOCATION UPDATE REJECTED
   A location updating procedure has been rejected and RR connection release is awaited. The timer T3240 is running.

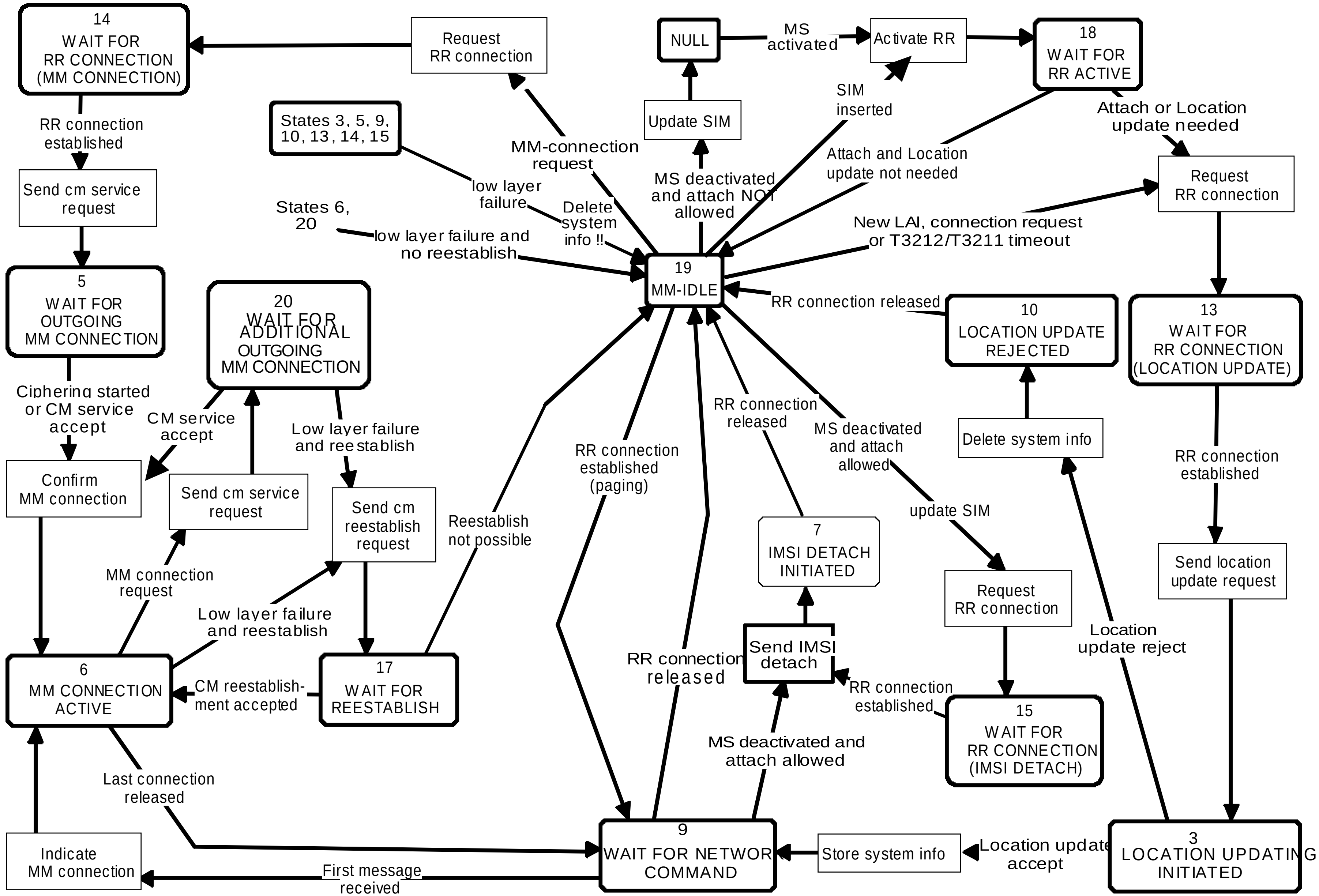
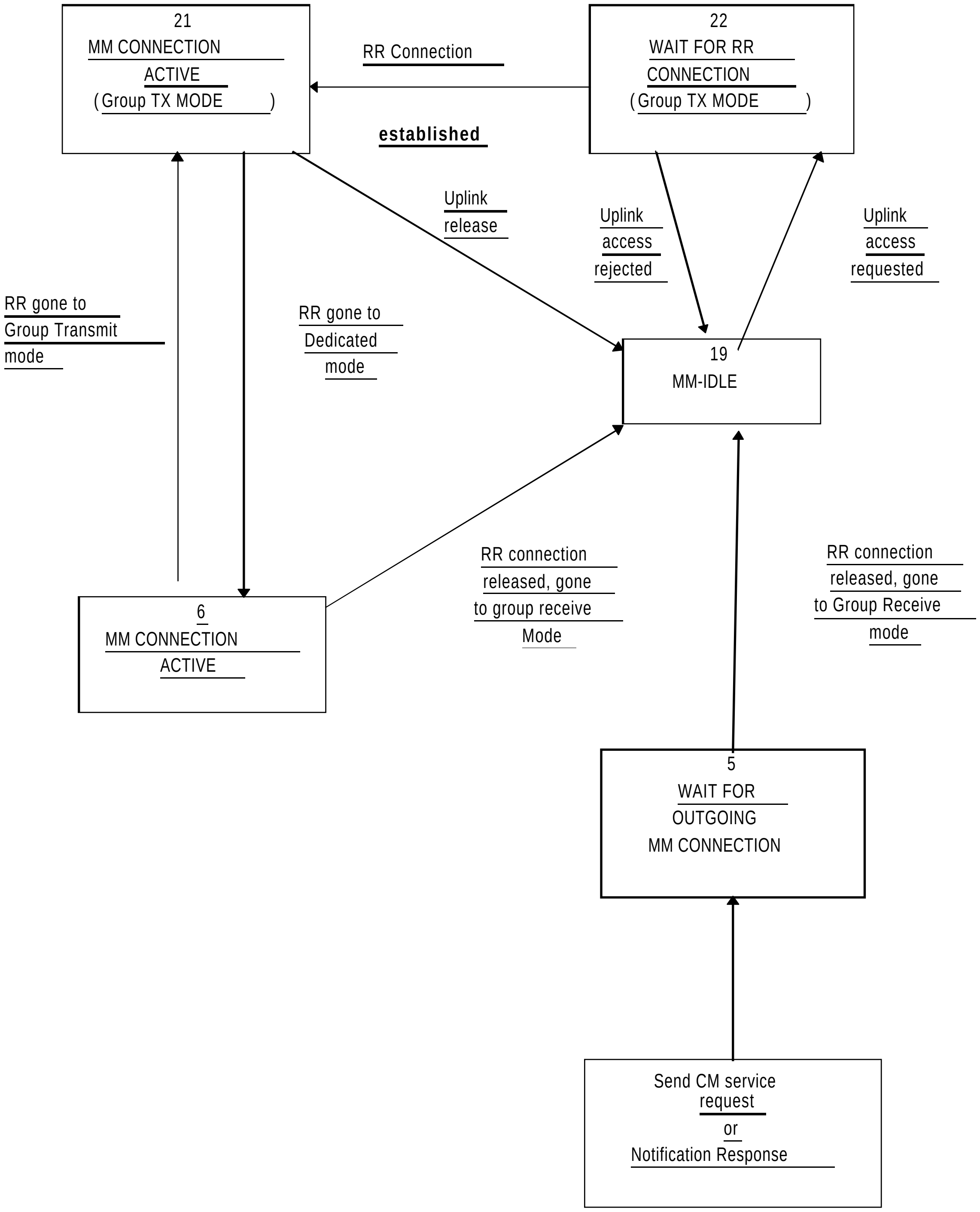


Figure 4.1a / GSM 04.08: Overview mobility management protocol / MS Side



Additions to Figure 4.1.a/GSM 04.08

13. WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (LOCATION UPDATING)
    The MM sublayer has requested RR connection establishment for starting the location updating procedure.

14. WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (MM CONNECTION)
    The MM sublayer has requested RR connection establishment for starting the MM connection establishment.

15. WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (IMSI DETACH)
    The MM sublayer has requested RR connection establishment for starting the IMSI detach procedure.

17. WAIT FOR REESTABLISH
    A lower layer failure has occurred and re-establishment may be performed from the disturbed CM layer entities.

18. WAIT FOR RR ACTIVE
    The MM sublayer has requested activation of the RR sublayer.

19. MM IDLE
    There is no MM procedure running and no RR connection exist. This is a compound state, and the actual behaviour of the MS to Connection Management requests is determined by the actual substate as described hereafter.

20. WAIT FOR ADDITIONAL OUTGOING MM CONNECTION.
    The MM connection establishment for an additional MM connection has been started, and the MM awaits response from the network.

21. MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP TRANSMIT MODE)
    (Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:) The MM sublayer has an RR connection on the VGCS channel to its peer entity on the network side. Only one MM connection is active.

22. WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (GROUP TRANSMIT MODE)
    (Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:) The MM sublayer has requested to perform an uplink access on the VGCS channel.

4.1.2.1.2 Substates of the MM IDLE state

For the description of the behaviour of the MS the MM IDLE state is subdivided in several substates, also called the service states. The service state pertains to the whole MS (ME alone if no SIM is inserted, or ME plus SIM.). The service state depends on the update status (see 4.1.2.2) and on the selected cell.

19.1 NORMAL SERVICE
  Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U1, a cell is selected that belongs to the LA where the subscriber is registered.
  In this state, all requests from the CM layers are treated normally.

19.2 ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE
  Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U2 and a cell is selected. Requests from upper layers are accepted. Emergency call requests are treated normally, otherwise the request triggers first a location updating attempt in the selected cell, and then triggers the needed procedure only in case of successful location updating, otherwise the request is rejected.

19.3 LIMITED SERVICE
  Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U3, and a cell is selected, which is known not to be able to provide normal service. Only emergency services are offered.

19.4 NO IMSI

No valid subscriber data (no SIM, or the SIM is not considered valid by the ME), and a cell is selected. Only emergency services are offered.

19.5 NO CELL AVAILABLE

No cell can be selected. This state is entered after a first intensive search failed (state 19.7). Cells are searched at a low rhythm. No services are offered.

19.6 LOCATION UPDATE NEEDED

Valid subscriber data are available, and for some reason a location updating must be done as soon as possible (for instance update status is U1 but the selected cell is not in the registered LA, or the timer has expired, ...). This state is usually of no duration, but can last, e.g., in the case of access class blocking.

19.7 PLMN SEARCH

The MS is searching for PLMNs, and the conditions for state 19.8 are not met. This state is ended when either a cell is selected (the new state is 19.1, 19.3 or 19.6), or when it is concluded that no cell is available for the moment (the new state is 19.5).

19.8 PLMN SEARCH, NORMAL SERVICE

Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U1, a cell is selected which belongs to the LA where the subscriber is registered, and the MS is searching for PLMNs. This state is ended when either a cell is selected (the new state is 19.1, 19.3 or 19.6), or when it is concluded that no cell is available for the moment (the new state is 19.5).

19.9 RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE)

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U1, a VGCS channel or VBS channel is received in a cell that belongs to the LA where the subscriber is registered.
In this state, only requests from the GCC or BCC layers are treated.

19.10 RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE)

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) Valid subscriber data are available, update status is U3, a VGCS channel or VBS channel is received in a cell which is known not to be able to provide normal service.
In this state, only requests from the GCC or BCC layers for the reception of VGCS or VBS calls are treated and emergency services are offered.

4.1.2.2 The update Status

In parallel with the sublayer states described in section 4.1.2.1 and which control the MM sublayer protocol, an update status exists.

The update status pertains to a specific subscriber embodied by a SIM. This status is defined even when the subscriber is not activated (SIM removed or connected to a switched-off ME). It is stored in a non volatile memory in the SIM. The update status is changed only as a result of a location updating procedure attempt (with the exception of an authentication failure and of some cases of CM service rejection).

U1 UPDATED

The last location updating attempt was successful (correct procedure outcome, and the answer was acceptance from the network). With this status, the SIM contains also the LAI of the LA where the subscriber is registered, and possibly valid TMSI, ciphering key and ciphering key sequence number. The "Location update status" stored on the SIM shall be "updated".

U2 NOT UPDATED

The last location updating attempt made failed procedurally (no significant answer was received from the network, including the cases of failures or congestion inside the network).

For this status, the SIM does not contain any valid LAI, TMSI, ciphering key or ciphering key sequence number. For compatibility reasons, all these fields must be set to the "deleted" value at the moment the status is set to NOT UPDATED. However the presence of other values shall not be considered an error by the MS. The "Location update status" stored on the SIM shall be "not updated".

U3 ROAMING NOT ALLOWED

The last location updating attempt run correctly, but the answer from the network was negative (because of roaming or subscription restrictions).

For this status, the SIM does not contain any valid LAI, TMSI, ciphering key or ciphering key sequence number. For compatibility reasons, all these fields must be set to the "deleted" value at the moment the status is set to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED. However the presence of other values shall not be considered an error by the MS. The "Location update status" stored on the SIM shall be "Location Area not allowed".

4.1.2.3 MM sublayer states on the network side

1. IDLE

The MM sublayer is not active.

2. WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION

The MM sublayer has received a request for MM connection establishment from the CM layer. A RR connection to the MS is requested from the RR sublayer (i.e. paging is performed).

3. MM CONNECTION ACTIVE

The MM sublayer has a RR connection to a MS. One or more MM connections are active.

4. IDENTIFICATION INITIATED

The identification procedure has been started by the network. The timer T3270 is running.

5. AUTHENTICATION INITIATED

The authentication procedure has been started by the network. The timer T3260 is running.

6. TMSI REALLOCATION INITIATED

The TMSI reallocation procedure has been started by the network. The timer T3250 is running.

7. CIPHERING MODE INITIATED

The cipher mode setting procedure has been requested to the RR sublayer.

8. WAIT FOR MOBILE ORIGINATED MM CONNECTION

A CM SERVICE REQUEST message is received and processed, and the MM sublayer awaits the "opening message" of the MM connection.

9. WAIT FOR REESTABLISHMENT

The RR connection to a MS with one or more active MM connection has been lost. The network awaits a possible re-establishment request from the MS.

10. WAIT FOR GROUP CALL

(Only applicable in case of VGCS:) The MM sublayer has received a request for a VGCS establishment from the GCC sublayer. The request for establishment of VGCS channels is given to the RR sublayer.

11. GROUP CALL ACTIVE

(Only applicable in case of VGCS:) A VGCS channel is established by the RR sublayer. An RR connection to the talking MS can be established by the RR sublayer on the VGCS channel. No MM connection is active.

12. MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL)
    (Only applicable in case of VGCS:) The MM sublayer has a RR connection to a talking MS on the VGCS channel. Only one MM connection is active.

13. WAIT FOR BROADCAST CALL
    (Only applicable in case of VBS:) The MM sublayer has received a request for a VBS establishment from the BCC sublayer. The request for establishment of VBS channels is given to the RR sublayer.

14. BROADCAST CALL ACTIVE
    (Only applicable in case of VBS:) A VBS channel is established by the RR sublayer. No MM connection is active.

4.2 Behaviour in MM IDLE State

The MM IDLE state is entered when none of the MM procedures are running and no RR connection exists. It is left when one of the MM procedures are triggered or an RR connection is established.

The specific behaviour in the MM IDLE state depends on the service state of the MS as described in section 4.1.2.1.2. The service state depends in particular on the update status which is defined in section 4.1.2.2.

How an appropriate service state is chosen after power on is described in section 4.2.1, and the specific behaviour of the MS in MM IDLE state is described in section 4.2.2. The service state chosen when the MM IDLE state is returned to from any state except NULL state is described in 4.2.3.

It should be noted that transitions between the various MM idle states are caused by (e.g.):

- results of procedures on RR connected mode (see section 4.2.3);
- insertion or removal of the SIM;
- cell selection/reselection (see also GSM 03.22);
- PLMN search;
- loss of coverage.

How various MM procedures affects the service state and the update status is described in the detailed descriptions of the procedures in sections 4.3 to 4.5.

4.2.1 Primary Service State selection

4.2.1.1 Selection of the Service State after Power On.

When mobility management is activated after power-on, the service state is 19.7 PLMN SEARCH. The detailed processing in this state is described in detail in GSM 03.22 and 05.08, where procedures for power on and selection of PLMN is described in detail. If the "Location update status" stored on the SIM is different from "updated", then the mobile shall act as if the "Location update status" stored on the SIM is "not updated".

The service state when the PLMN SEARCH state is left depends on the outcome of the search and on the presence of the SIM:

- if no cell has been found, the state is NO CELL AVAILABLE, until a cell is found;

- if no SIM is present the state is NO IMSI;

- if the MS has been continuously activated since loosing coverage and then returns to coverage, and if the selected cell is in the location area where the MS is registered and the timer T3212 has not expired, then the state is NORMAL SERVICE;

- if the selected cell is in the location area where the MS is registered and IMSI ATTACH is not required and timer T3212 has not expired, then the state is NORMAL SERVICE;

- if the MS is in automatic network selection mode and the selected cell is in a forbidden PLMN or a forbidden LA, then the MS enters the LIMITED SERVICE state;

- if the MS is in manual network selection mode and no cell of the selected PLMN has been found, then the MS enters the LIMITED SERVICE state;

- otherwise, the MS enters the LOCATION UPDATE NEEDED state.

4.2.1.2 Other Cases

The state PLMN SEARCH is also entered in the following cases:

- In state NO IMSI, a SIM is inserted;
- In any state except NO IMSI, NO CELL AVAILABLE and NORMAL SERVICE, after the user has asked for a PLMN selection;
- In any state except NO IMSI and NO CELL AVAILABLE, coverage is lost;
- Roaming is denied;
- optionally, when the MS is in the ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE state and is in Automatic Network Selection mode and location update attempt counter is greater than or equal to 4.

The service state when the PLMN SEARCH is left depends on the outcome of the search and on the presence of the SIM as specified in paragraph 4.2.1.1.

4.2.2 Detailed Description of the MS behaviour in MM IDLE State.

In the MM IDLE state the MS shall behave according to the service state. In the following sections the behaviour is described for the non transient service states. It should be noted that after procedures in RR connected mode, e.g. location updating procedures, section 4.2.3 applies which specifies the selection of the MM idle state. Furthermore when in sub-state NORMAL SERVICE, if a PLMN selection is requested, the MS enters sub-state PLMN SEARCH, NORMAL SERVICE

4.2.2.1 Service State, NORMAL SERVICE

When in state MM IDLE and service state NORMAL SERVICE, the MS shall:

- perform normal location updating when a new location area is entered;
- perform location updating procedure at expiry of timer T3211 or T3213;
- perform periodic updating at expiration of timer T3212;
- perform IMSI detach;
- support requests from the CM layer;
- respond to paging.

In addition, MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall:

- indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC sublayer;
- respond to notification if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive a voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer and then go to the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE).

4.2.2.2 Service State, ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE

When in state MM IDLE and service state ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE the MS shall:

- perform location updating procedure at expiry of timer T3211 or T3213;
- perform normal location updating when the location area identification of the serving cell changes;
- if entry into this state was caused by c) or d) or f) (with cause different from "abnormal release, unspecified") or g) (with cause "retry upon entry into a new cell") of section 4.4.4.9, then location updating shall be performed when a new cell is entered;
- if entry into this state was caused by e) or f) (with cause "abnormal release, unspecified") or g) (with cause different from "retry upon entry into a new cell") of section 4.4.4.9, then location updating shall not be performed because a new cell is entered;
- perform normal location updating at expiry of timer T3212;
- not perform IMSI detach;
- support request for emergency calls;
- use other request from CM layer as triggering of normal location updating procedure (if the location updating procedure is successful, then the request for MM connection is accepted, see section 4.5.1);
- respond to paging (with IMSI).

In addition, MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall:

- indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC sublayer for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- reject requests of the GCC or BCC sublayer to respond to notifications for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive a voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer and then go to the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE).

4.2.2.3 Service State, LIMITED SERVICE

When in state MM IDLE and service state LIMITED SERVICE the MS shall:

- not perform periodic updating;
- not perform IMSI detach;
- reject any requests from CM entities for MM connections except for emergency calls;
- perform normal location updating when a cell is entered which may provide normal service (e.g. location area not in one of the forbidden LAI lists.);
- it may respond to paging (with IMSI).

In addition, MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall:

- indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC sublayer for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- reject requests of the GCC or BCC sublayer to respond to notifications for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive a voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer and then go to the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE).

4.2.2.4 Service State, NO IMSI

When in state MM IDLE and service state NO IMSI the MS shall (see section 3.2, GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08):

- not start any normal location updating attempt;
- not perform periodic updating;

- not perform IMSI detach if powered down;
- reject any request from CM entities for MM connections except for emergency calls;
- not respond to paging;
- only perform default cell selection.

In addition, MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall:

- not indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC layer.

4.2.2.5 Service State, SEARCH FOR PLMN, NORMAL SERVICE

When in state MM IDLE and service state SEARCH FOR PLMN, NORMAL SERVICE the MS shall:

- if timer T3211 or T3213 expires in this state perform a location updating procedure at the latest if and when back to NORMAL SERVICE state and if the cell is not changed;
- if timer T3212 expires in this state perform a periodic location updating procedure at the latest if and when back to NORMAL SERVICE state;
- perform IMSI detach;
- support requests from the CM layer;
- listen as far as possible to paging, and respond.

In addition, MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall:

- listen as far as possible to notifications and indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC layer;
- respond to notification if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive a voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer.

4.2.2.6 Service State, SEARCH FOR PLMN

When in state MM IDLE and service state SEARCH FOR PLMN the MS shall:

- not start any normal location updating attempt;
- not perform periodic updating;
- not perform IMSI detach if powered down;
- reject any request from CM entities for MM connections except emergency calls;
- not respond to paging.

4.2.2.7 Service State, RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE)

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

When in state MM IDLE and service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE), the MS shall:

- perform normal location updating when a new location area is entered;
- perform location updating procedure at expiry of timer T3211 or T3213;
- perform periodic updating at expiration of timer T3212;
- perform IMSI detach;
- support requests from the GCC or BCC layers;
- indicate notifications or paging informations to the GCC or BCC layer;
- respond to notification if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive another voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer.

4.2.2.8 Service State, RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE)

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

When in state MM IDLE and service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL, the MS shall:

- not perform periodic updating;
- not perform IMSI detach;
- reject any requests from CM entities for MM connections except for emergency calls;
- perform normal location updating when a cell is entered which may provide normal service (e.g. location area not in one of the forbidden LAI lists.);
- it may respond to paging (with IMSI);
- indicate notifications to the GCC or BCC sublayer for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- reject requests of the GCC or BCC sublayer to respond to notifications for which no channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer;
- request the RR sublayer to receive a voice group or broadcast call if the GCC or BCC sublayer requests the reception of a voice group or broadcast call for which a channel description has been received in the notification by the RR sublayer and then go to the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE).

4.2.3 Service state when back to state MM IDLE from another state

When returning to MM IDLE, e.g., after a location updating procedure, the MS selects the cell as specified in GSM 03.22. With one exception, this is a normal cell selection.

If this return to idle state is not subsequent to a location updating procedure terminated with reception of cause "Roaming not allowed in this location area" the service state depends on the result of the cell selection procedure, on the update status of the MS, on the location data stored in the MS and on the presence of the SIM:

- if no cell has been found, the state is NO CELL AVAILABLE, until a cell is found;

- if no SIM is present, or if the inserted SIM is considered invalid by the MS, the state is NO IMSI;

- if the selected cell is in the location area where the MS is registered, then the state is NORMAL SERVICE; it shall be noted that this also includes an abnormal case described in paragraph 4.4.4.9;

- (only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) if the MSs was in the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE) or RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE) before the location updating procedure and the selected cell is in the location area where the MS is registered, then the state is RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE);

- if the selected cell is in a location area where the MS is not registered but in which the MS is allowed to attempt a location update, then the state is LOCATION UPDATE NEEDED;

- if the selected cell is in a location area where the MS is not allowed to attempt a location update, then the state is LIMITED SERVICE;

- (only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) if the MSs was in the service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE) or RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE) before the location updating procedure and the selected cell is in the location area where the MS is not allowed to attempt a location update, then the state is RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE);

- after some abnormal cases occurring during an unsuccessful location updating procedure, as described in paragraph 4.4.4.9, the state is ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE.

In case of a return from a location updating procedure to which was answered "Roaming not allowed in this location area", the service state PLMN SEARCH is entered as specified in section 4.2.1.2.

4.3 MM common procedures

As described above, a MM common procedure can be initiated at any time whilst a RR connection exists between the network an the MS.

4.3.1 TMSI reallocation procedure

The purpose of the TMSI reallocation procedure is to provide identity confidentiality , i.e. to protect a user against being identified and located by an intruder (see GSM 02.09 and 03.20).

If the identity confidentiality service is applied for an IMSI, a Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity (TMSI) is used for identification within the radio interface signalling procedures.

The structure of the TMSI is specified in GSM 03.03. The TMSI has significance only within a location area. Outside the location area it has to be combined with the Location Area Identifier (LAI) to provide for an unambiguous identity.

Usually the TMSI reallocation is performed at least at each change of a location area. (Such choices are left to the network operator).

The reallocation of a TMSI can be performed either by a unique procedure defined in this section or implicitly by a location updating procedure using the TMSI. The implicit reallocation of a TMSI is described together with that procedure.

If a TMSI provided by a MS is unknown in the network e.g. due to a data base failure, the network may require the MS to provide its International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI). In this case the identification procedure (see section 4.3.3) should be used before the TMSI reallocation procedure may be initiated.

The TMSI reallocation can be initiated by the network at any time whilst a RR connection exists between the network and the MS.

NOTE 1: Usually the TMSI reallocation is performed in ciphered mode.

NOTE 2: Normally the TMSI reallocation will take place in conjunction with another procedure, e.g. at location updating or at call setup (see GSM 09.02).

4.3.1.1 TMSI reallocation initiation by the network

The network initiates the TMSI reallocation procedure by sending a TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND message to the MS and starts the timer T3250.

The TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND message contains a new combination of TMSI and LAI allocated by the network or a LAI and the IMSI if the used TMSI shall be deleted. Usually the TMSI-REALLOCATION COMMAND message is sent to the MS using a RR connection in ciphered mode (see GSM 03.20).

4.3.1.2 TMSI reallocation completion by the MS

Upon receipt of the TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND message the MS stores the Location Area Identifier (LAI) in the SIM. If the received identity is the IMSI of the relevant MS, the MS deletes any TMSI. If the received identity is a TMSI the MS stores the TMSI in the SIM. In both cases the MS sends a TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message to the network.

4.3.1.3 TMSI reallocation completion in the network.

Upon receipt of the TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message, the network stops the timer T3250 and either considers the new TMSI as valid or, if an IMSI was sent to the MS, considers the old TMSI as deleted.

If the RR connection is no more needed, then the network will request the RR sublayer to release it (see section 3.5).

4.3.1.4 Abnormal cases

MS side:

> The MS shall consider the new TMSI and new LAI, if any, as valid and the old TMSI and old LAI as deleted as soon as a TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND or another message containing a new TMSI (e.g. LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT) is correctly received. Any RR connection failure at a later stage shall not have any impact on the TMSI and LAI storage.

Network side:

(a) RR connection failure:

If the RR connection is lost before the TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message is received, all MM connections (if any) shall be released and both the old and the new TMSIs should be considered as occupied for a certain recovery time.
During this period the network may:

- use the IMSI for paging in the case of network originated transactions on the CM layer. Upon response from the MS the TMSI reallocation is restarted;

- consider the new TMSI as valid if it is used by the MS in mobile originated requests for RR connection;

- use the Identification procedure followed by a new TMSI reallocation if the MS uses the old TMSI.

Other implementations are possible.

(b) Expiry of timer T3250:

The TMSI reallocation is supervised by the timer T3250 in the network. At the first expiry of timer T3250 the network may release the RR connection. In this case, the network shall abort the reallocation procedure release all MM connections if any, and follow the rules described for RR connection failure above.

```
mobile station                       network

                    TMSI REAL CMD
                  <----------------    Start T3250

                    TMSI REAL COM
                 ----------------->    Stop T3250
```

Figure 4.1/GSM 04.08: TMSI reallocation sequence

4.3.2 Authentication procedure

The purpose of the authentication procedure is twofold:

First to permit the network to check whether the identity provided by the MS is acceptable or not (see GSM 03.20);

Second to provide parameters enabling the MS to calculate a new ciphering key.

The cases where the authentication procedure should be used are defined in GSM 02.09.

The authentication procedure is always initiated and controlled by the network.

4.3.2.1 Authentication request by the network

The network initiates the authentication procedure by transferring an AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message across the radio interface and starts the timer T3260. The AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message contains the parameters necessary to calculate the response parameters (see GSM 03.20). It also contains the ciphering key sequence number allocated to the key which may be computed from the given parameters.

4.3.2.2 Authentication response by the MS

The MS shall be ready to respond upon an AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message at any time whilst a RR connection exists. It shall process the challenge information and send back an AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE message to the network. The new ciphering key calculated from the challenge information shall overwrite the previous one and be stored on the SIM before the AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE message is transmitted. The ciphering key stored in the SIM shall be loaded in to the ME when any valid CIPHERING MODE COMMAND is received during an RR connection (the definition of a valid CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message is given in section 3.4.7.2). The ciphering key sequence number shall be stored together with the calculated key.

4.3.2.3 Authentication processing in the network

Upon receipt of the AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE message, the network stops the timer T3260 and checks the validity of the response (see GSM 03.20).

4.3.2.4 Ciphering key sequence number

The security parameters for authentication and ciphering are tied together in sets, i.e. from a challenge parameter RAND both the authentication response SRES and the ciphering key can be computed given the secret key associated to the IMSI.

In order to allow start of ciphering on a RR connection without authentication, the ciphering key sequence numbers are introduced. The sequence number is managed by the network in the way that the AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message contains the sequence number allocated to the key which may be computed from the RAND parameter carried in that message.

The MS stores this number with the key, and indicates to the network in the first message (LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST, CM SERVICE REQUEST, PAGING RESPONSE, CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST) which sequence number the stored key has. When the deletion of the sequence number is described this also means that the associated key shall be considered as invalid.

The network may choose to start ciphering with the stored key (under the restrictions given in GSM 02.09) if the stored sequence number and the one given from the MS are equal.

4.3.2.5 Unsuccessful authentication

If authentication fails, i.e. if the response is not valid, the network may distinguish between the two different ways of identification used by the MS:

- the TMSI was used;
- the IMSI was used.

If the TMSI has been used, the network may decide to initiate the identification procedure. If the IMSI given by the MS then differs from the one the network had associated with the TMSI, the authentication should be restarted with the correct parameters. If the IMSI provided by the MS is the expected one (i.e. authentication has really failed), the network should proceed as described below.

If the IMSI has been used, or the network decides not to try the identification procedure, an AUTHENTICATION REJECT message should be transferred to the MS.

After having sent this message, all MM connections in progress (if any) are released and the network should initiate the RR connection release procedure described in section 3.5.

Upon receipt of an AUTHENTICATION REJECT message, the MS shall set the update status in the SIM to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED, delete from the SIM the stored TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number, and consider the SIM invalid until switched-off or the SIM is removed.

If the AUTHENTICATION REJECT message is received in the state IMSI DETACH INITIATED the MS shall follow section 4.3.4.3.

If the AUTHENTICATION REJECT message is received in any other state the MS shall abort any MM specific, MM connection establishment or call re-establishment procedure, stop any of the timers T3210 or T3230 (if running), release all MM connections (if any), set timer T3240 and enter the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND, expecting the release of the RR connection. start timer T3240 and enter the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND, expecting the release of the RR connection. If the RR connection is not released within a given time controlled by the timer T3240, the MS shall abort the RR connection. In both cases, either after a RR connection release triggered from the network side or after a RR connection abort requested by the MS-side, the MS enters state MM IDLE, substate NO IMSI.

4.3.2.6 Abnormal cases

(a) RR connection failure:

> Upon detection of a RR connection failure before the AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE is received, the network shall release all MM connections (if any) and abort any ongoing MM specific procedure.

(b) Expiry of timer T3260:

> The authentication procedure is supervised on the network side by the timer T3260. At expiry of this timer the network may release the RR connection. In this case the network shall abort the authentication procedure and any ongoing MM specific procedure, release all MM connections if any, and initiate the RR connection release procedure described in section 3.5.

```
MS                    network
          AUT REQ
     <------------------        Start T3260
          AUT RES
     ------------------>       Stop T3260
            (a)
          AUT REJ
     < - - - - - - - - -
            (b)
```

Figure 4.2/GSM 04.08: Authentication sequence:
(a) authentication;
(b) authentication rejection.

4.3.3 Identification procedure

The identification procedure is used by the network to request a MS to provide specific identification parameters to the network e.g. International Mobile Subscriber Identity, International Mobile Equipment Identity (cf. GSM 03.03). For the presentation of the IMEI, the requirements of GSM 02.09 apply.

4.3.3.1 Identity request by the network

The network initiates the identification procedure by transferring an IDENTITY REQUEST message to the MS and starts the timer T3270. The IDENTITY REQUEST message specifies the requested identification parameters in the identity type information element.

4.3.3.2 Identification response by the MS

The MS shall be ready to respond to an IDENTITY REQUEST message at any time whilst a RR connection exists.

Upon receipt of the IDENTITY REQUEST message the MS sends back an IDENTITY RESPONSE message. The IDENTITY RESPONSE message contains the identification parameters as requested by the network.

Upon receipt of the IDENTITY RESPONSE the network shall stop timer T3270.

4.3.3.3 Abnormal cases

(a) RR connection failure:

> Upon detection of a RR connection failure before the IDENTITY RESPONSE is received, the network shall release all MM connections (if any) and abort any ongoing MM specific procedure.

(b) Expiry of timer T3270:

> The identification procedure is supervised by the network by the timer T3270. At expiry of the timer T3270 the network may release the RR connection. In this case, the network shall abort the identification procedure and any ongoing MM specific procedure, release all MM connections if any, and initiate the RR connection release procedure as described in section 3.5.

```
MS                    network
          ID REQ
<-----------------------    Start T3270
          ID RES
----------------------->    Stop T3270
```

Figure 4.3/GSM 04.08: Identification sequence

4.3.4 IMSI detach procedure

The IMSI detach procedure may be invoked by a MS if the MS is deactivated or if the Subscriber Identity Module (see GSM 02.17) is detached from the MS. A flag (ATT) broadcasted in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message on the BCCH is used by the network to indicate whether the detach procedure is required.

The procedure causes the MS to be indicated as inactive in the network.

4.3.4.1 IMSI detach initiation by the MS

The IMSI detach procedure consists only of the IMSI DETACH INDICATION message sent from the MS to the network. The MS then starts timer T3220 and enters the MM sublayer state IMSI DETACH INITIATED.

If no RR connection exists, the MM sublayer within the MS will request the RR sublayer to establish a RR connection. If establishment of the RR connection is not possible because a suitable cell is not (or not yet) available then, the MS shall try for a period of at least 5 seconds and for not more than a period of 20 seconds to find a suitable cell. If a suitable cell is found during this time then, the MS shall request the RR sublayer to establish an RR connection, otherwise the IMSI detach is aborted.

If a RR connection exists, the MM sublayer will release locally any ongoing MM connections before the IMSI DETACH INDICATION message is sent.

The IMSI detach procedure may not be started if a MM specific procedure is active. If possible, the IMSI detach procedure is then delayed until the MM specific procedure is finished, else the IMSI detach is omitted.

4.3.4.2 IMSI detach procedure in the network

When receiving an IMSI DETACH INDICATION message, the network may set an inactive indication for the IMSI. No response is returned to the MS. After reception of the IMSI DETACH INDICATION message the network shall release locally any ongoing MM connections, and start the normal RR connection release procedure (see section 3.5).

(Only applicable for VGCS:) If an IMSI DETACH INDICATION message is received from a talking MS while the network is in service state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL), the network shall release locally the ongoing MM connection and then go to the service state GROUP CALL ACTIVE.

4.3.4.3 IMSI detach completion by the MS

Timer T3220 is stopped when the RR connection is released. The MS should, if possible, delay the local release of the channel to allow a normal release from the network side until T3220 timeout. If this is not possible (e.g. detach at power down) the RR sublayer on the MS side should be aborted.

4.3.4.4 Abnormal cases

If the establishment of an RR connection is unsuccessful, or the RR connection is lost, the IMSI detach is aborted by the MS.

```
MS                    network
      IMSI DET IND
  --------------------->
```

Figure 4.4/GSM 04.08: IMSI detach sequence

4.3.5 Abort procedure

The abort procedure may be invoked by the network to abort any on-going MM connection establishment or already established MM connection. The MS shall treat ABORT message as compatible with current protocol state only if it is received when at least one MM connection exists or an MM connection is being established.

4.3.5.1 Abort procedure initiation by the network

The abort procedure consists only of the ABORT message sent from the network to the MS. Before the sending of the ABORT message the network shall locally release any ongoing MM connection. After the sending the network may start the normal RR connection release procedure.

The Cause information element indicates the reason for the abortion. The following cause values may apply:

6: Illegal ME
#17: Network failure

4.3.5.2 Abort procedure in the MS

At the receipt of the ABORT message the MS shall abort any MM connection establishment or call re-establishment procedure and release all MM connections (if any). If cause value #6 is received the MS shall delete any TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number stored in the SIM, set the update status to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED (and store it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2) and consider the SIM invalid until switch off or the SIM is removed. As a consequence the MS enters state MM IDLE, substate NO IMSI after the release of the RR connection.

The MS shall then wait for the network to release the RR connection - see section 4.5.3.1.

4.3.6 MM information procedure

The MM information procedure is optional in the network.

The MM information procedure described in section 4.3.6 is mandatory for the MS.

The MM information procedure may be invoked by the network at any time during an RR connection.

4.3.6.1 MM information procedure initiation by the network

The MM information procedure consists only of the MM INFORMATION message sent from the network to the MS. During an RR connection, the network shall send none, one, or more MM INFORMATION messages to the MS. If more than one MM INFORMATION message is sent, the messages need not have the same content.

NOTE: The network may be able to select particular instants where it can send the MM INFORMATION message without adding delay to, or interrupting, any CM layer transaction, e.g. immediately after the AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message.

4.3.6.2 MM information procedure in the MS

When the MS receives an MM INFORMATION message, it shall either:

- ignore the contents of the message and return an MM STATUS message with cause #97, or

- accept the message and optionally use the contents to update appropriate information stored within the MS.

4.4 MM specific procedures

A MM specific procedure can only be started if no other MM specific procedure is running or no MM connection exists between the network and the MS. The end of the running MM specific procedure or the release of all MM connections have to be awaited before a new MM specific procedure can be started.

During the lifetime of a MM specific procedure, if a MM connection establishment is requested by a CM entity, this request will either be rejected or be delayed until the running MM specific procedure is terminated (this depends on the implementation).

Any MM common procedure (except IMSI detach) may be initiated during a MM specific procedure.

Unless it has specific permission from the network (follow-on proceed) the MS side should await the release of the RR connection used for a MM specific procedure before a new MM specific procedure or MM connection establishment is started.

NOTE: The network side may use the same RR connection for MM connection management.

4.4.1 Location updating procedure

The location updating procedure is a general procedure which is used for the following purposes:

- normal location updating (described in this section);
- periodic updating (see section 4.4.2);
- IMSI attach (see section 4.4.3).

The normal location updating procedure is used to update the registration of the actual Location Area of a MS in the network. The location updating type information element in the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message shall indicate normal location updating. The conditions under which the normal location updating procedure is used by a MS in the MM IDLE state are defined for each service state in section 4.2.2.

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) A MS in RR group receive mode is in the MM IDLE state, substate RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE) or RECEIVING GROUP CALL (LIMITED SERVICE). To perform a location updating, the MS in RR group receive mode shall leave the group receive mode, establish an independent dedicated RR connection to perform the location updating as described above and return to the RR group receive mode afterwards.

The normal location updating procedure shall also be started if the network indicates that the MS is unknown in the VLR as a response to MM connection establishment request.

To limit the number of location updating attempts made, where location updating is unsuccessful, an attempt counter is used. The attempt counter is reset when a MS is switched on or a SIM card is inserted.

Upon successful location updating the MS sets the update status to UPDATED in the SIM, and stores the received Location Area Identification in the SIM. The attempt counter shall be reset.

The detailed handling of the attempt counter is described in 4.4.4.6 to 4.4.4.9.

The Mobile Equipment shall contain a list of "forbidden location areas for roaming", as well as a list of "forbidden location areas for regional provision of service". These lists shall be erased when the MS is switched off or when the SIM is removed, and periodically (with period in the range 12 to 24 hours). The location area identification received on the BCCH that triggered the location updating request shall be added to the suitable list whenever a location update reject message is received with the cause "Roaming not allowed in this location area" or with the cause "Location Area not allowed". The lists shall accommodate each 10 or more location area identifications. When the list is full and a new entry has to be inserted, the oldest entry shall be deleted.

The cell selection processes in the different states are described in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

The location updating procedure is always initiated by the MS.

4.4.2 Periodic updating

Periodic updating may be used to notify periodically the availability of the MS to the network. Periodic updating is performed by using the location updating procedure. The location updating type information element in the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message shall indicate periodic updating.

The procedure is controlled by the timer T3212 in the MS. If the timer is not already started, the timer is started each time the MS enters the MM IDLE substate NORMAL SERVICE or ATTEMPTing TO UPDATE. The timer T3212 is held when the MS leaves the MM IDLE state. I.e. the timer is not running anymore, but the remaining time is memorized for the next start.

The timer is stopped (shall be set to its initial value for the next start) when:

- a LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT or LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message is received;
- an AUTHENTICATION REJECT message is received;
- the first MM message is received, or ciphering mode setting is completed in the case of MM connection establishment, except when the most recent service state is LIMITED SERVICE;
- the MS has responded to paging and thereafter has received the first correct layer 3 message except RR message;
- the timer has expired.
- the MS is deactivated (i.e. equipment powered down or SIM removed).

When the timer reaches the T3212 timeout value, the location updating procedure is started.

The conditions under which the periodic location updating procedure is used by a MS in the MM IDLE state are defined for each service state in section 4.2.2.

If the MS is in service state NO CELL AVAILABLE, LIMITED SERVICE, PLMN SEARCH or PLMN SEARCH-NORMAL SERVICE when the timer expires the location updating procedure is delayed until this service state is left. The (periodic) location updating procedure is not started if the BCCH information at the time the procedure is triggered indicates that periodic location shall not be used. The timeout value is broadcasted in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message on the BCCH, in the Control channel description IE, see section 10.5.2.11.

The T3212 timeout value shall not be changed in the NO CELL AVAILABLE, LIMITED SERVICE, PLMN SEARCH and PLMN SEARCH-NORMAL SERVICE states.

When a change of the T3212 timeout value has to be taken into account and the timer is running (at change of the serving cell or, change of the broadcast value of T3212), the MS shall behave as follows:

> Let t1 be the new T3212 timeout value and let t be the current timer value at the moment of the change to the new T3212 timeout value; then the timer shall be restarted with the value t modulo t1.

When the MS is activated, or when a change of the T3212 timeout value has to be taken into account and the timer is not running, the MS shall behave as follows:

> Let t1 be the new T3212 timeout value, the new timer shall be started at a value randomly, uniformly drawn between 0 and t1.

4.4.3 IMSI attach procedure

The IMSI attach procedure is the complement of the IMSI detach procedure (see section 4.3.4). It is used to indicate the IMSI as active in the network. A flag (ATT) is broadcast in the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message. It indicates whether the attach and detach procedures are required to be used or not.

The IMSI attach procedure is invoked if the detach/attach procedures are required by the network and an IMSI is activated in a MS (i.e. activation of a MS with plug-in SIM, insertion of a card in a card-operated MS etc.) within coverage area from the network or a MS with an IMSI activated outside the coverage area enters the coverage area. The IMSI attach procedure is used only if the update status is UPDATED and if the stored Location Area Identification is the same as the one which is actually broadcasted on the BCCH of the current serving cell. Otherwise a normal location updating procedure (see section 4.4.1) is invoked independently of the ATT flag indication.

IMSI attach is performed by using the location updating procedure. The location updating type information element in the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message shall in this case indicate IMSI attach.

4.4.4 Generic Location Updating procedure

4.4.4.1 Location updating initiation by the MS

Any timer used for triggering the location updating procedure (e.g. T3211, T3212) is stopped if running.

As no RR connection exists at the time when the location updating procedure has to be started, the MM sublayer within the MS will request the RR sublayer to establish a RR connection and enter state WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (LOCATION UPDATE). The procedure for establishing an RR connection is described in section 3.3.

The MS initiates the location updating procedure by sending a LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message to the network, starts the timer T3210 and enters state LOCATION UPDATING INITIATED. The location updating type information element shall indicate what kind of updating is requested.

4.4.4.1a Network Request for Additional MS Capability Information

The network may initiate the classmark interrogation procedure, for example, to obtain further information on the MS's encryption capabilities.

4.4.4.2 Identification request from the network

The network may initiate the identification procedure, e.g. if the network is unable to get the IMSI based on the TMSI and LAI used as identification by the MS (see section 4.3.3).

4.4.4.3 Authentication by the network

The authentication procedure (see section 4.3.2) may be initiated by the network upon receipt of the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message from the MS. (See the cases defined in GSM 02.09).

4.4.4.4 Ciphering mode setting by the network

The ciphering mode setting procedure (see section 3.4.7) may be initiated by the network, e.g., if a new TMSI has to be allocated.

4.4.4.5 Attempt Counter

To limit the number of location updating attempts made, where location updating is unsuccessful, an attempt counter is used. It counts the number of consecutive unsuccessful location update attempts.

The attempt counter is incremented when a location update procedure fails. The specific situations is specified in section 4.4.4.9.

The attempt counter is reset when:

- the MS is powered on;
- a SIM is inserted;
- location update is successfully completed;
- location update completed with cause #11, #12 or #13 (see section 4.4.4.7).

and in case of service state ATTEMPTING to UPDATE:

- a new location area is entered;
- expiry of timer T3212;
- location update is triggered by CM sublayer requests.

The attempt counter is used when deciding whether to re-attempt a location update after timeout of timer T3211.

4.4.4.6 Location updating accepted by the network

If the location updating is accepted by the network a LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message is transferred to the MS.

In case the identity confidentiality service is active (see section 4.3.1 and 4.4.4.4), the TMSI reallocation may be part of the location updating procedure. The TMSI allocated is then contained in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message together with the location area identifier LAI. The network shall in this case start the supervision timer T3250 as described in section 4.3.1.

If the network wishes to prolong the RR connection to allow the MS to initiate MM connection establishment (for example if the MS has indicated in the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST that it has a follow-on request pending) the network shall send "follow on proceed" in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT and start timer T3255.

The MS receiving a LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message shall store the received location area identification LAI, stop timer T3210, reset the attempt counter and set the update status in the SIM to UPDATED. If the message contains an IMSI, the MS is not allocated any TMSI, and shall delete any TMSI in the SIM accordingly. If the message contains a TMSI, the MS is allocated this TMSI, and shall store this TMSI in the SIM and a TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE shall be returned to the network. If neither IMSI nor TMSI is received in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message, the old TMSI if any available shall be kept.

If the LAI or PLMN identity contained in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message is a member of any of the "forbidden lists" then any such entries shall be deleted.

After that, the MS shall act according to the presence of the "Follow-on proceed" information element in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT; if this element is present and the MS has a CM application request pending, it shall send a CM SERVICE REQUEST to the network and proceed as in section 4.5.1.1. Otherwise, it shall start timer T3240 and enter state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND.

4.4.4.7 Location updating not accepted by the network

If the location updating cannot be accepted the network sends a LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message to the MS. The MS receiving a LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message shall stop the timer T3210, store the reject cause, start T3240, enter state LOCATION UPDATING REJECTED await the release of the RR connection triggered by the network. Upon the release of the RR connection the MS shall take the following actions depending on the stored reject cause:

2 (IMSI unknown in HLR),
3 (Illegal MS), or
6 (Illegal ME).

The MS shall set the update status to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED (and store it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2), and delete any TMSI, stored LAI and ciphering key sequence number and shall consider the SIM as invalid until switch-off or the SIM is removed.

11 (PLMN not allowed)
12 (Location Area not allowed)
13 (Roaming not allowed in this location area)

The MS shall delete any LAI, TMSI and ciphering key sequence number stored in the SIM, reset the attempt counter, set the update status to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED (and store it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2). The MS shall store the LAI or the PLMN identity in the suitable forbidden list, i.e. in the "forbidden PLMN list" for cause #11, in the list of "forbidden location areas for regional provision of service" for cause #12, and in the list of "forbidden location areas for roaming" for cause #13. In addition, the MS will memorize if cause #13 was received, so to perform a PLMN selection instead of a cell selection when back to the MM IDLE state.

Other values are considered as abnormal cases and the specification of the MS behaviour in those cases is given in section 4.4.4.9.

4.4.4.8 Release of RR connection after location updating

When the Location updating procedure is finished (see sections 4.4.4.6 and 4.4.4.7) the MS shall (except in the case where the mobile has a follow-on CM application request pending and has received the follow-on proceed indication, see 4.4.4.6) set timer T3240 and enter the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND, expecting the release of the RR connection. The network may decide to keep the RR connection for network initiated establishment of a MM connection, or to allow for mobile initiated MM connection establishment.

Any release of the RR connection shall be initiated by the network according to section 3.5. If the RR connection is not released within a given time controlled by the timer T3240, the MS shall abort the RR connection. In both cases, either after a RR connection release triggered from the network side or after a RR connection abort requested by the MS-side, the MS shall return to state MM IDLE.

At transition to state MM IDLE, substates NORMAL SERVICE or RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE) or ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE either timer T3212 or timer T3211 is started as described in section 4.4.4.9.

4.4.4.9 Abnormal cases on the MS side

The different abnormal cases that can be identified are the following:

a) Access barred because of access class control
The location updating procedure is not started. The MS stays in the current serving cell and applies normal cell reselection process. The procedure is started as soon as possible and if still necessary (when the barred state is ended or because of a cell change)

b) The answer to random access is an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message
The location updating is not started. The MS stays in the chosen cell and applies normal cell selection process. The waiting timer T3122 is reset when a cell change occurs. The procedure is started as soon as possible after T3122 timeout if still necessary.

c) Random access failure
Timer T3213 is started. When it expires the procedure is attempted again if still necessary.

NOTE: As specified in GSM 05.08, a cell reselection then takes place, with return to the cell inhibited for 5 seconds if there is at least one other suitable cell. Typically the selection process will take the MS back to the cell where the random access failed after 5 seconds.

If at the expiry of timer T3213 a new cell has not been selected due to the lack of valid information (see GSM 05.08), the MS may as an option delay the repeated attempt for up to 8 seconds to allow cell re-selection to take place. In this case the procedure is attempted as soon as a new cell has been selected or the MS has concluded that no other cell can be selected.

If random access failure occurs for two successive random access attempts for location updating the MS proceeds as specified below.

d) RR connection failure
The procedure is aborted and the MS proceeds as specified below.

e) T3210 timeout
The procedure is aborted, the RR connection is aborted and the MS proceeds as specified below.

f) RR release before the normal end of procedure
The procedure is aborted and the MS proceeds as specified below.

g) Location updating reject, other causes than those treated in section 4.4.4.7
The MS waits for release of the RR connection as specified in section 4.4.4.8, and then proceeds as specified below.

In cases d) to g) above and for repeated failures as defined in c) above the MS proceeds as follows. Timer T3210 is stopped if still running. The RR Connection is aborted in case of timer T3210 timeout. The attempt counter is incremented. The next actions depend on the Location Area Identities (stored and received from the BCCH of the current serving cell) and the value of the attempt counter.

- the update status is UPDATED, and the stored LAI is equal to the one received on the BCCH from the current serving cell and the attempt counter is smaller than 4;

  the MS shall keep the update status to UPDATED, the MM IDLE sub-state after the RR connection release is NORMAL SERVICE. The MS shall memorize the location updating type used in the location updating procedure. It shall start timer T3211 when the RR connection is released. When timer T3211 expires the location updating procedure is triggered again with the memorized location updating type;

- either the update status is different from UPDATED, or the stored LAI is different from the one received on the BCCH from the current serving cell, or the attempt counter is greater or equal to 4;

  the MS shall delete any LAI, TMSI, ciphering key sequence number stored in the SIM, set the update status to NOT UPDATED and enter the MM IDLE sub-state ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE when the RR connection is released (See section 4.2.2.2 for the subsequent actions). If the attempt counter is smaller than 4, the MS shall memorize that timer T3211 is to be started when the RR connection is released, otherwise it shall memorize that timer T3212 is to be started when the RR connection is released.

4.4.4.10 Abnormal cases on the network side

a) RR connection failure

If a RR connection failure occurs during a common procedure integrated with the location updating procedure, the behaviour of the network should be according to the description of that common procedure.

If a RR connection failure occurs when a common procedure does not exist, the location updating procedure towards the MS should be aborted.

b) protocol error

If the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message is received with a protocol error, the network should, if possible, return a LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message with one of the following Reject causes:

#96: Mandatory information element error
#99: Information element non-existent or not implemented
#100: Conditional IE error
#111: Protocol error, unspecified

Having sent the response, the network should start the channel release procedure (see section 3.5).

```
                     MS                      network
                                LOC UPD REQ
Start T3210         ----------------------->
                                LOC UPD ACC
 Stop T3210          <----------------------
                                LOC UPD REJ
      "             <- - - - - - - - - - - -
```

Figure 4.5/GSM 04.08: Location updating sequence

4.5 Connection management sublayer service provision

The concept of MM connection is introduced in this section. This concept is mainly a descriptive tool: The establishment of an MM connection by the network and the release of an MM connection by the network or by the MS is always local, i.e. these purposes can be achieved without sending any MM messages over the air interface. (On the contrary, establishment of an MM connection by the MS requires the sending of MM messages over the air interface. An exception is VGCS, where an MM connection will be established as result of an uplink access procedure (see section 3.7.2.1.1).)

The Mobility Management (MM) sublayer is providing connection management services to the different entities of the upper Connection management (CM) sublayer (see GSM 04.07). It offers to a CM entity the possibility to use an MM connection for the exchange of information with its peer entity. An MM connection is established and released on request from a CM entity. Different CM entities communicate with their peer entity using different MM connections. Several MM connections may be active at the same time.

An MM connection requires an RR connection. All simultaneous MM connections for a given MS use the same RR connection.

In the following sections, the procedures for establishing, re-establishing, maintaining, and releasing an MM connection are described, usually separately for the MS and the network side.

4.5.1 MM connection establishment

4.5.1.1 MM connection establishment initiated by the MS

Upon request of a CM entity to establish an MM connection the MM sublayer first decides whether to accept, delay, or reject this request:

- An MM connection establishment may only be initiated by the MS when the following conditions are fulfilled:

  - Its update status is UPDATED.
  - The MM sublayer is in one of the states MM IDLE or MM connection active but not in MM connection active (Group call).

  An exception from this general rule exists for emergency calls (see section 4.5.1.5). A further exception is defined in the following clause.

- If an MM specific procedure is running at the time the request from the CM sublayer is received, and the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message has been sent, the request will either be rejected or delayed, depending on implementation, until the MM specific procedure is finished and, provided that the network has not sent a "follow-on proceed" indication, the RR connection is released. If the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message has not been sent, the MS may include a "follow-on request" indicator in the message. The MS shall then delay the request until the MM specific procedure is completed, when it may be given the opportunity by the network to use the RR connection: see section 4.4.4.6.

In order to establish an MM connection, the MS proceeds as follows:

a) If no RR connection exists, the MM sublayer requests the RR sublayer to establish an RR connection and enters MM sublayer state WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (MM CONNECTION). This request contains an establishment cause and a CM SERVICE REQUEST or NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message. When the establishment of an RR connection is indicated by the RR sublayer (this indication implies that the CM SERVICE REQUEST or NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message has been successfully transferred via the air interface, see section 2.2), the MM sublayer of the MS starts timer T3230, gives an indication to the CM entity that requested the MM connection establishment, and enters MM sublayer state WAIT FOR OUTGOING MM CONNECTION.

b) If an RR connection is available, the MM sublayer of the MS sends a CM SERVICE REQUEST or NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message to the network, starts timer T3230, gives an indication to the CM entity that requested the MM connection establishment, and enters
   - MM sublayer state WAIT FOR OUTGOING MM CONNECTION, if no MM connection is active,
   - MM sublayer state WAIT FOR ADDITIONAL OUTGOING MM CONNECTION, if at least one MM connection is active,
   - If an RR connection exists but the MS is in the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND then any requests from the CM layer that are received will either be rejected or delayed until this state is left.

c) (Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:)
   If a MS which is in the MM sublayer state MM IDLE, service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE), receives a request from the GCC sublayer to perform an uplink access, the MM sublayer requests the RR sublayer to perform an uplink access procedure and enters MM sublayer state WAIT FOR RR CONNECTION (GROUP TRANSMIT MODE).
   When a successful uplink access is indicated by the RR sublayer, the MM sublayer of the MS gives an indication to the GCC sublayer and enters MM sublayer state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP TRANSMIT MODE).
   When an uplink access reject is indicated by the RR sublayer, the MM sublayer of the MS gives an indication to the GCC sublayer and enters the MM sublayer state MM IDLE, service state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE).
   In the network, if an uplink access procedure is performed, the RR sublayer in the network provides an indication to the MM sublayer together with the mobile subscriber identity received in the TALKER INDICATION message. The network shall then enter the MM sublayer state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL).

The CM SERVICE REQUEST message contains the

- mobile identity according to section 10.5.1.4,
- MS classmark 2 ,
- ciphering key sequence number, and
- CM service type identifying the requested type of transaction (e.g. mobile originating call establishment, emergency call establishment, short message service, supplementary service activation).

A MS supporting eMLPP may optionally include a priority level in the CM SERVICE REQUEST message.

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:) The NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message is used if a MS has received a notification message on the NCH for a VGCS or VBS call without a description of the respective VGCS or VBS channel. The MS therefore establishes an MM connection with a NOTIFICATION RESPONSE in order to obtain the necessary details from the network. The NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message contains the

- mobile identity according to section 10.5.1.4,
- MS classmark 2 , and
- notified voice group or broadcast call reference according to section 10.5.1.9.

Upon receiving a CM SERVICE REQUEST or NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message, the network shall analyse its content. The type of semantic analysis may depend on other on going MM connection(s). Depending on the type of request and the current status of the RR connection, the network may start any of the MM common procedures and RR procedures.

The network may initiate the classmark interrogation procedure, for example, to obtain further information on the MS's encryption capabilities.

The identification procedure (see section 4.3.3) may be invoked for instance if a TMSI provided by the MS is not recognized.

The network may invoke the authentication procedure (see section 4.3.2) depending on the CM service type.

The network decides also if the ciphering mode setting procedure shall be invoked (see section 3.4.7).

NOTE: If the CM_SERVICE_REQUEST message contains a priority level the network may use this to perform queuing and pre-emption as defined in GSM 03.67.

An indication from the RR sublayer that the ciphering mode setting procedure is completed, or reception of a CM SERVICE ACCEPT message, shall be treated as a service acceptance indication by the MS. The MM connection establishment is completed, timer T3230 shall be stopped, the CM entity that requested the MM connection shall be informed, and MM sublayer state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE is entered. The MM connection is considered to be active.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a CM SERVICE REJECT message to the MS.

The reject cause information element (see 10.5.3.6 and Annex G) indicates the reason for rejection. The following cause values may apply:

#4 : IMSI unknown in VLR
#6 : Illegal ME
#17 : Network failure
#22 : Congestion
#32 : Service option not supported
#33 : Requested service option not subscribed
#34 : Service option temporarily out of order

If no other MM connection is active, the network may start the RR connection release (see section 3.5) when the CM SERVICE REJECT message is sent.

If a CM SERVICE REJECT message is received by the MS, timer T3230 shall be stopped, the requesting CM sublayer entity informed. Then the MS shall proceed as follows:

- If the cause value is not #4 or #6 the MM sublayer returns to the previous state (the state where the request was received). Other MM connections shall not be affected by the CM SERVICE REJECT message.

- If cause value #4 is received, the MS aborts any MM connection, deletes any TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number in the SIM, changes the update status to NOT UPDATED (and stores it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2), and enters the MM sublayer state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND. If subsequently the RR connection is released or aborted, this will force the MS to initiate a normal location updating). Whether the CM request shall be memorized during the location updating procedure, is a choice of implementation.

- If cause value #6 is received, the MS aborts any MM connection, deletes any TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number in the SIM, changes the update status to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED (and stores it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2), and enters the MM sublayer state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND. The MS shall consider the SIM as invalid until switch-off or the SIM is removed.

4.5.1.2 Abnormal cases

MS side:

a) RR connection failure or IMSI deactivation

If an RR connection failure occurs or the IMSI is deactivated during the establishment of an MM connection, the MM connection establishment is aborted, timers T3230 is stopped, and an indication is given to the CM entity that requested the MM connection establishment. This shall be treated as a rejection for establishment of the new MM connection, and the MM sublayer shall release all active MM connections.

b) T3230 expiry

If T3230 expires (i.e. no response is given but a RR connection is available) the MM connection establishment is aborted and the requesting CM sublayer is informed. If no other MM connection exists then the MS shall proceed as described in section 4.5.3.1 for release of the RR connection. Otherwise the MS shall return to the MM sublayer state where the request of an MM connection was received, i.e. to MM sublayer state MM connection active. Other ongoing MM connections (if any) shall not be affected.

c) Reject cause values #95, #96, #97, #99, #100, #111 received

The same actions as on timer expiry shall be taken by the MS.

d) Random access failure or RR connection establishment failure

If the MS detects a random access failure or RR connection establishment failure during the establishment of an MM connection, it aborts the MM connection establishment and gives an indication to the CM entity that requested the MM connection establishment.

NOTE: Further actions of the MS depend on the RR procedures and MM specific procedures during which the abnormal situation has occurred and are described together with those procedures.

Network side:

a) RR connection failure

The actions to be taken upon RR connection failure within a MM common procedure are described together with that procedure. A RR connection failure occurring outside such MM common procedures, shall trigger the release of all active MM connections if any.

b) Invalid message or message content

Upon reception of an invalid initial message or a CM SERVICE REQUEST message with invalid content, a CM SERVICE REJECT message shall be returned with one of the following appropriate Reject cause indications:
95: Semantically incorrect message
96: Mandatory information element error
97: Message type non-existent or not implemented
99: Information element non-existent or not implemented
100: Conditional IE error
111: Protocol error, unspecified

When the CM SERVICE REJECT message has been sent, the network may start RR connection release if no other MM connections exist or if the abnormal condition also has influence on the other MM connections.

4.5.1.3 MM connection establishment initiated by the network

When a CM sublayer entity in the network requests the MM sublayer to establish a MM connection, the MM sublayer will request the establishment of an RR connection to the RR sublayer if no RR connection to the desired MS exists. The MM sublayer is informed when the paging procedure is finished (see section 3.3.2).

When an RR connection is established (or if it already exists at the time the request is received), the MM sublayer may initiate any of the MM common procedures (except IMSI detach); it may request the RR sublayer to perform the RR classmark interrogation procedure, and/or the ciphering mode setting procedure.

When all MM and RR procedures are successfully completed which the network considers necessary, the MM sublayer will inform the requesting CM sublayer entity on the success of the MM connection establishment.

If an RR connection already exists and no MM specific procedure is running, the network may also establish a new MM connection by sending a CM message with a new PD/TI combination.

If the establishment of an RR connection is unsuccessful, or if any of the MM common procedures or the ciphering mode setting fail, this is indicated to the CM layer with an appropriate error cause.

If an RR connection used for a MM specific procedure exists to the MS, the CM request may be rejected or delayed depending on implementation. When the MM specific procedure has been completed, the network may use the same RR connection for the delayed CM request.

(Only applicable in case of VGCS talking:)

In the MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL) the MS is in RR Group transmit mode. There shall be only one MM connection active.

When in MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL) state, the MM sublayer in the network shall reject the request for the establishment of another MM connection by any CM layer.

If the RR sublayer in the network indicates a request to perform a transfer of the MS from RR connected mode to RR Group transmit mode which will result in a transition from MM CONNECTION ACTIVE state to MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP CALL) state in the MM sublayer, the MM sublayer shall not allow the transition if more than one MM connection is active with the MS,

4.5.1.4 Abnormal cases

The behaviour upon abnormal events is described together with the relevant RR procedure or MM common procedure.

4.5.1.5 MM connection establishment for emergency calls

A MM connection for an emergency call may be established in all states of the mobility management sublayer which allow MM connection establishment for a normal originating call. In addition, establishment may be attempted in all service states where a cell is selected (see 4.2.2) but not in the MM connection active (Group call) state. However, as a network dependent option, a MM connection establishment for emergency call may be rejected in some of the states.

When a user requests an emergency call establishment the MS will send a CM SERVICE REQUEST message to the network with a CM service type information element indicating emergency call establishment. If the network does not accept the emergency call request, e.g., because IMEI was used as identification and this capability is not supported by the network, the network will reject the request by returning a CM SERVICE REJECT message to the MS.

The reject cause information element indicates the reason for rejection. The following cause values may apply:

#3 "Illegal MS"
#4 "IMSI unknown in VLR"
#5 "IMEI not accepted"
#6 "Illegal ME"
#17 "Network failure"
#22 "Congestion"
#32 "Service option not supported"
#34 "Service option temporarily out of order"

With the above defined exceptions, the procedures described for MM connection establishment in 4.5.1.1 and 4.5.1.2 shall be followed.

NOTE: Normally, the MS will be identified by an IMSI or a TMSI. However, if none of these identifiers is available in the MS, then the MS shall use the IMEI for identification purposes. The network may in that case reject the request by returning a CM SERVICE REJECT message with reject cause:
#5 "IMEI not accepted".

4.5.1.6 Call re-establishment

The re-establishment procedure allows a MS to resume a connection in progress after a radio link failure, possibly in a new cell and possibly in a new location area. The conditions in which to attempt call re-establishment or not depend on the call control state, see section 5.5.4 and, whether or not a cell allowing call re-establishment has been found (as described in GSM 05.08). MM connections are identified by their protocol discriminators and transaction identifiers: these shall not be changed during call re-establishment.

The re-establishment takes place when a lower layer failure occurs and at least one MM connection is active (i.e.. the MS's MM sublayer is either in state 6 "MM CONNECTION ACTIVE" or state 20 "WAIT FOR ADDITIONAL OUTGOING MM CONNECTION").

NOTE: During a re-establishment attempt the MS does not return to the MM IDLE state; thus no location updating is performed even if the mobile is not updated in the location area of the selected cell.

No call re-establishment shall be performed for voice group and broadcast calls.

4.5.1.6.1 Call re-establishment, initiation by the MS

NOTE: The network is unable to initiate call re-establishment.

If at least one request to re-establish an MM connection is received from a CM entity as a response to the indication that the MM connection is interrupted (see 4.5.2.3.) the MS initiates the call re-establishment procedure. If several CM entities request re-establishment only one re-establishment procedure is initiated. If any CM entity requests re-establishment, then re-establishment of all transactions belonging to all Protocol Discriminators that permit Call Re-establishment shall be attempted.

Upon request of a CM entity to re-establish an MM connection the MM sublayer requests the RR sublayer to establish an RR connection and enters MM sublayer state WAIT FOR REESTABLISH. This request contains an establishment cause and a CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message. When the establishment of an RR connection is indicated by the RR sublayer (this indication implies that the CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message has been successfully transferred via the air interface, see section 2.2), the MM sublayer of the MS starts timer T3230, gives an indication to all CM entities that are being re-established, and remains in the MM sublayer state WAIT FOR REESTABLISH.

The CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message contains the

- mobile identity according to section 10.5.1.4;
- MS classmark 2;
- ciphering key sequence number.

NOTE: Whether or not a CM entity can request re-establishment depends upon the Protocol Discriminator. The specifications for Short Message Service (GSM 04.11) and Call Independent Supplementary Services (GSM 04.10) do not currently specify any re-establishment procedures.

Upon receiving a CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message, the network shall analyse its content. Depending on the type of request, the network may start any of the MM common procedures and RR procedures.

The network may initiate the classmark interrogation procedure, for example, to obtain further information on the MS's encryption capabilities.

The identification procedure (see section 4.3.3) may be invoked.

The network may invoke the authentication procedure (see section 4.3.2).

The network decides if the ciphering mode setting procedure shall be invoked (see section 3.4.7).

An indication from the RR sublayer that the ciphering mode setting procedure is completed, or reception of a CM SERVICE ACCEPT message, shall be treated as a service acceptance indication by the MS. The MM connection re-establishment is completed, timer T3230 shall be stopped, all CM entities associated with the re-establishment shall be informed, and MM sublayer state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE is re-entered. All the MM connections are considered to be active.

If the network cannot associate the re-establishment request with any existing call for that MS, a CM SERVICE REJECT message is returned with the reject cause:

#38 "call cannot be identified"

If call re-establishment cannot be performed for other reasons, a CM SERVICE REJECT is returned, the appropriate reject cause may be any of the following (see annex G):

4 "IMSI unknown in VLR",
6 "illegal ME",
#17 "network failure",
#22 "congestion",
#32 "service option not supported",
#34 "service option temporarily out of order".

Whatever the reject cause a MS receiving a CM SERVICE REJECT as a response to the CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST shall stop T3230, release all MM connections and proceed as described in section 4.5.3.1. In addition:

- if cause value #4 is received, the MS deletes any TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number in the SIM, changes the update status to NOT UPDATED (and stores it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2), and enters the MM sublayer state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND. If subsequently the RR connection is released or aborted, this will force the MS to initiate a normal location updating). The CM re-establishment request shall not be memorized during the location updating procedure.

- if cause value #6 is received, the MS deletes any TMSI, LAI and ciphering key sequence number in the SIM, changes the update status to ROAMING NOT ALLOWED (and stores it in the SIM according to section 4.1.2.2), and enters the MM sublayer state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND. The MS shall consider the SIM as invalid until switch-off or the SIM is removed.

4.5.1.6.2 Abnormal cases

MS side:

a) Random access failure or RR connection establishment failure

If the MS detects a random access failure or RR connection establishment failure during the re-establishment of an MM connection, the re-establishment is aborted and all MM connections are released.

b) RR connection failure

If a RR connection failure occurs, timer T3230 is stopped, the re-establishment is aborted and all active MM connections are released.

c) IMSI deactivation

If the IMSI deactivated during the re-establishment attempt then timer T3230 is stopped, the re-establishment is aborted and all MM connections are released.

d) T3230 expires

If T3230 expires (i.e. no response is given but a RR connection is available) the re-establishment is aborted, all active MM connections are released and the MS proceeds as described in section 4.5.3.1.

e) Reject causes #96, #97, #99, #100, #111 received

The MS shall perform the same actions as if timer T3230 had expired.

Network side:

a) RR connection failure

If a RR connection failure occurs after receipt of the CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST the network shall release all MM connections.

b) Invalid message content

Upon reception an invalid initial of message or a CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message with invalid content, a CM SERVICE REJECT message shall be returned with one of the following appropriate Reject cause indications:

#96: Mandatory information element error
#99: Information element non-existent or not implemented
#100: Conditional IE error
#111: Protocol error, unspecified

When the CM SERVICE REJECT message has been sent, the network shall release the RR connection.

4.5.1.7 Forced release during MO MM connection establishment

If the MS's CM layer initiated the MM connection establishment but the CM layer wishes to abort the establishment prior to the completion of the establishment phase, the MS shall send a CM SERVICE ABORT message any time after the completion of the RR connection and not after the first CM message (e.g. SETUP) is sent.

If the first CM message has already been sent, the normal release procedure defined by the appropriate CM protocol applies and the CM SERVICE ABORT shall not be sent.

Sending of the CM SERVICE ABORT message is only allowed during the establishment of the first MM connection, where no other MM connection exists in parallel. If parallel MM connections exist already, a new connection establishment cannot be aborted and normal MM connection release according to 4.5.3 applies after MM connection establishment.

Upon transmission of the CM SERVICE ABORT message the MS shall set timer T3240 and enter the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND, expecting the release of the RR connection.

Upon receipt of the CM SERVICE ABORT message the network shall abort ongoing processes, release the appropriate resources, and unless another MM connection establishment is pending, initiate a normal release of the RR connection.

If the RR connection is not released within a given time controlled by timer T3240, the MS shall abort the RR connection. In both cases, either after a RR connection release triggered from the network side or after a RR connection abort requested by the MS side the MS shall return to state MM IDLE; the service state depending upon the current update status as specified in section 4.2.3.

4.5.2 MM connection information transfer phase

After the MM connection has been established, it can be used by the CM sublayer entity for information transfer. According to the protocol architecture described in GSM 04.07, each CM entity will have its own MM connection. These different MM connections are identified by the protocol discriminator PD and, additionally, by the transaction identifier TI.

All MM common procedures may be initiated at any time while MM connections are active. Except for Short Message Control which uses a separate layer 2 low priority data link, no priority mechanism is defined between the CM, MM and RR sublayer messages.

4.5.2.1 Sending CM messages

A CM sublayer entity, after having been advised that a MM connection has been established, can request the transfer of CM messages. The CM messages passed to the MM sublayer are then sent to the other side of the interface with the PD and TI set according to the source entity.

4.5.2.2 Receiving CM messages

Upon receiving a CM message, the MM sublayer will distribute it to the relevant CM entity according to the PD value and TI value. However, if the received CM message is the first for the MM connection (identified by PD and TI), the MM sublayer will in addition indicate to the CM entity that a new MM connection has been established.

4.5.2.3 Abnormal cases

RR connection failure:

> If the RR connection failure occurs during a RR or MM common procedure, the consequent actions are described together with that procedure.
>
> In other cases, the following applies:
>
> MS:
>
> The MM sublayer shall indicate to all CM entities associated with active MM connections that the MM connection is interrupted, the subsequent action of the MM sublayer (call re-establishment, see 4.5.1.6, or local release) will then depend on the decisions by the CM entities.
>
> Network:
>
> The MM sublayer shall locally release all active MM connections. As an option the network may delay the release of all or some of the MM connections to allow the MS to initiate call re-establishment

4.5.3 MM connection release

An established MM connection can be released by the local CM entity. The release of the CM connection will then be done locally in the MM sublayer, i.e. no MM message are sent over the air interface for this purpose.

4.5.3.1 Release of associated RR connection

If all MM connections are released by their CM entities, the MS shall set timer T3240 and enter the state WAIT FOR NETWORK COMMAND, expecting the release of the RR connection.

In the network, if the last MM connection is released by its user, the MM sublayer may decide to release the RR connection by requesting the RR sublayer according to section 3.5. The RR connection may be maintained by the network, e.g. in order to establish another MM connection.

If the RR connection is not released within a given time controlled by the timer T3240, the MS shall abort the RR connection. In both cases, either after a RR connection release triggered from the network side or after a RR connection abort requested by the MS-side, the MS shall return to MM IDLE state; the service state depending upon the current update status as specified in section 4.2.3.

4.5.3.2 Uplink release in a voice group call

(Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:)

If a MS which is in the MM sublayer state MM CONNECTION ACTIVE (GROUP TRANSMIT MODE) receives a request from the GCC sublayer to perform an uplink release, the MM sublayer requests the RR sublayer to perform an uplink release procedure and enters the MM sublayer state RECEIVING GROUP CALL (NORMAL SERVICE).

4.6 Receiving a MM STATUS message by a MM entity.

If the MM entity of the MS receives a MM STATUS message no state transition and no specific action shall be taken as seen from the radio interface, i.e. local actions are possible.

The actions to be taken on receiving a MM STATUS message in the network are an implementation dependant option.

5 Elementary procedures for circuit-switched Call Control

5.1 Overview

5.1.1 General

This section describes the call control (CC) protocol, which is one of the protocols of the Connection Management (CM) sublayer (see GSM 04.07).

Every MS must support the call control protocol. If a MS does not support any bearer capability at all then it shall respond to a SETUP message with a RELEASE COMPLETE message as specified in section 5.2.2.2.

In the call control protocol, more than one CC entity are defined. Each CC entity is independent from each other and shall communicate with the correspondent peer entity using its own MM connection. Different CC entities use different transaction identifiers.

With a few exceptions this Technical Specification describes the call control protocol only with regard to two peer entities. The call control entities are described as communicating finite state machines which exchange messages across the radio interface and communicate internally with other protocol (sub)layers. This description in only normative as far as the consequential externally observable behaviour is concerned.

Certain sequences of actions of the two peer entities compose "elementary procedures" which are used as a basis for the description in this section. These elementary procedures may be grouped into the following classes:

- call establishment procedures;
- call clearing procedures;
- call information phase procedures;
- miscellaneous procedures..

The terms "mobile originating" or "mobile originated" (MO) are used to describe a call initiated by the MS. The terms "mobile terminating" or "mobile terminated" (MT) are used to describe a call initiated by the network.

Figure 5.1a/GSM 04.08 gives an overview of the main states and transitions on the MS side.

Figure 5.1b/GSM 04.08 gives an overview of the main states and transitions on the network side.

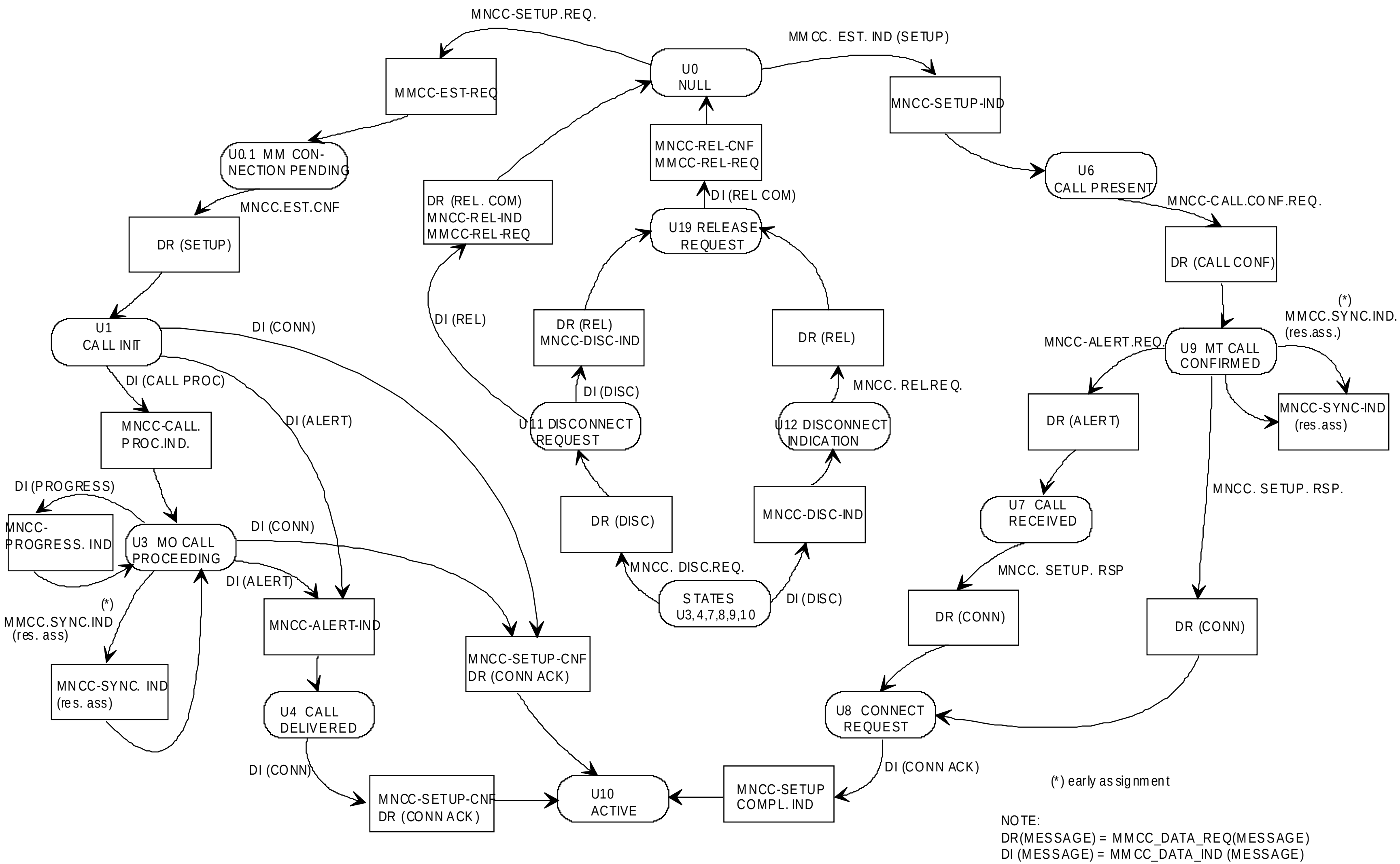
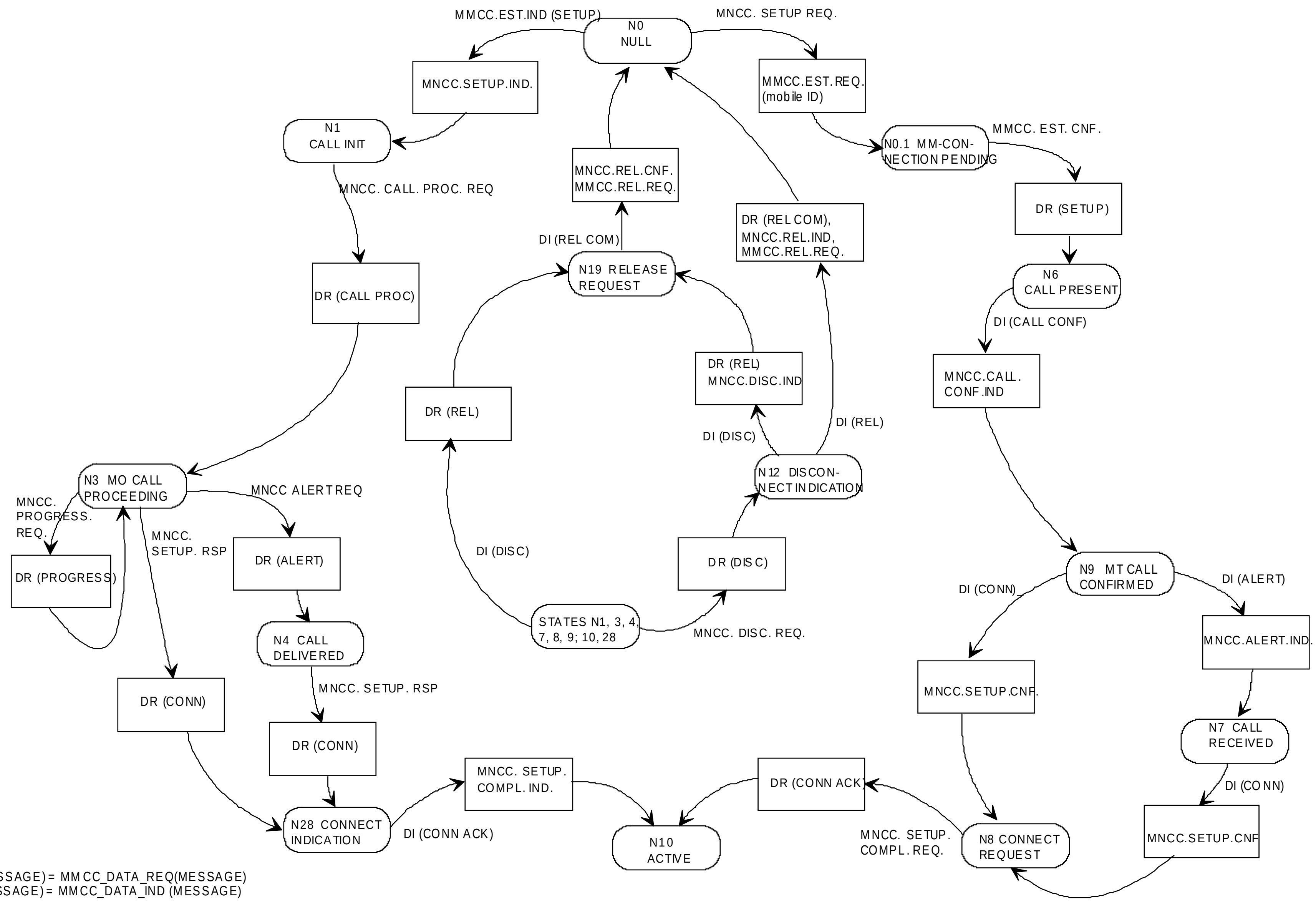


FIGURE 5.1a/GSM 04.08
Overview call control protocol/MS side



NOTE:
DR(MESSAGE) = MMCC_DATA_REQ(MESSAGE)
DI (MESSAGE) = MMCC_DATA_IND (MESSAGE)

FIGURE 5.1b/GSM 04.08
Overview call control protocol/Network side

5.1.2 Call Control States

5.1.2.1 Call states at the MS side of the interface

The states which may exist on the MS side of the radio interface are defined in this section.

NOTE: States U0.1, U26, and U27 are GSM specific. All other states are CCITT defined.

5.1.2.1.1 Null (State U0)

No call exists.

5.1.2.1.2 MM Connection pending (U0.1)

This state exists for a mobile originating call, when the MS requests the establishment of a MM connection.

5.1.2.1.3 Call initiated (U1)

This state exists for a mobile originating call, when the MS requests call establishment from the network.

5.1.2.1.4 Mobile originating call proceeding (U3)

This state exists for a mobile originating call when the MS has received acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

5.1.2.1.5 Call delivered (U4)

This state exists for a mobile originating call, when the calling MS has received an indication that remote user alerting has been initiated.

5.1.2.1.6 Call present (U6)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the MS has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

5.1.2.1.7 Call received (U7)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the MS has indicated alerting but has not yet answered.

5.1.2.1.8 Connect Request (U8)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call, when the MS has answered the call and is waiting to be awarded the call.

5.1.2.1.9 Mobile terminating call confirmed (U9)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the MS has sent acknowledgement that the MS has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

5.1.2.1.10 Active (U10)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the MS has answered the call. This state exists for a mobile originating call when the MS has received an indication that the remote user has answered the call.

5.1.2.1.11 Disconnect request (U11)

This state exists when the MS has requested the network to clear the end-to-end connection (if any) and is waiting for a response.

5.1.2.1.12 Disconnect indication (U12)

This state exists when the MS has received an invitation to disconnect because the network has disconnected the end-to-end connection (if any).

5.1.2.1.13 Release request (U19)

This state exists when the MS has requested the network to release and is waiting for a response.

5.1.2.1.14 Mobile originating modify (U26)

This state exists when the MS has sent a request to the network for a new mode but has not yet received an answer.

5.1.2.1.15 Mobile terminating modify (U27)

This state exists when the MS has received a request from the network for a new mode and has not yet sent a response to this request.

5.1.2.2 Network call states

NOTE: States N0.1, N26, N27, N28, N3a, N4,a, N7a, and N9a are GSM specific. All other states are CCITT defined.

The call states that may exist on the network side of the radio interface are defined in this section.

5.1.2.2.1 Null (State N0)

No call exists.

5.1.2.2.2 MM connection pending (N0.1)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call, when the network requests the establishment of a MM connection.

5.1.2.2.3 Call initiated (N1)

This state exists for a mobile originating call when the network has received a call establishment request but has not yet responded.

5.1.2.2.4 Mobile originating call proceeding (N3)

This state exists for a mobile originating call when the network has sent acknowledgement that the network has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

5.1.2.2.5 Call delivered (N4)

This state exists for a mobile originating call when the network has indicated that remote user alerting has been initiated.

5.1.2.2.6 Call present (N6)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the network has sent a call establishment request but has not yet received a satisfactory response.

5.1.2.2.7 Call received (N7)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the network has received an indication that the MS is alerting but has not yet received an answer.

5.1.2.2.8 Connect request (N8)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the network has received an answer but the network has not yet awarded the call.

5.1.2.2.9 Mobile terminating call confirmed (N9)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the network has received acknowledgement that the MS has received all call information necessary to effect call establishment.

5.1.2.2.10 Active (N10)

This state exists for a mobile terminating call when the network has awarded the call to the called MS. This state exists for a mobile originating call when the network has indicated that the remote user has answered the call.

5.1.2.2.11 {Not used}

5.1.2.2.12 Disconnect indication (N12)

This state exists when the network has disconnected the end- to-end connection (if any) and has sent an invitation to disconnect the MS to network connection.

5.1.2.2.13 Release request (N19)

This state exists when the network has requested the MS to release and is waiting for a response.

5.1.2.2.14 Mobile originating modify (N26)

This state exists when the network has received a request from the MS for a new mode but has not yet sent a response.

5.1.2.2.15 Mobile terminating modify (N27)

This state exists when the network has sent a request to the MS for a new mode but has not yet received an answer.

5.1.2.2.16 Connect Indication (N28)

This state exists for a mobile originating call when the network has indicated that the remote user has answered the call and the network is waiting for acknowledgement by the MS.

5.2 Call establishment procedures

Establishment of a call is initiated by request of upper layer in either the MS or the network; it consists of:

- the establishment of a CC connection between the MS and the network;
- the activation of the codec or interworking function.

Whenever it is specified in GSM 04.08, section 5 that the MS shall attach the user connection, this means that the MS shall activate the codec or interworking function as soon as an appropriate channel is available. The MS shall de-activate the codec or interworking function whenever an appropriate channel is no longer available. As soon as an appropriate channel is (again) available, the codec or interworking function shall be re-activated. If a new order to attach the user connection is received, the new order shall supersede the previous one.

A channel shall be considered as appropriate if it is consistent with the possibly negotiated bearer capability applicable for the actual phase of the call. The MS shall not consider a channel as not appropriate because the type of the channel (full rate/half rate) is not the preferred one. If;

- the user connection has to be attached but no appropriate channel is available for a contiguous time of 30 seconds, or if

- the codec or interworking function is de-activated for a contiguous time of 30 seconds,

then the MS may initiate call clearing.

Upon request of upper layers to establish a call, restricting conditions for the establishment of the call are examined. These restricting conditions concern the states of parallel CC entities and are defined elsewhere. If these restricting conditions are fulfilled, the call establishment is rejected. Otherwise a CC entity in state U0, "null", is selected to establish the call. It initiates the establishment by requesting the MM sublayer to establish an MM connection.

5.2.1 Mobile originating call establishment

The call control entity of the MS initiates establishment of a CC connection by requesting the MM sublayer to establish a mobile originating MM connection and entering the "MM connection pending" state. There are two kinds of a mobile originating call: basic call and emergency call. The request to establish an MM connection shall contain a parameter to specify whether the call is a basic or an emergency call. This information may lead to specific qualities of services to be provided by the MM sublayers. Timer T303 is started when the CM SERVICE REQUEST message is sent.

For MSs supporting eMLPP basic calls may optionally have an associated priority level as defined in GSM 03.67. This information may also lead to specified qualities of service to be provided by the MM sublayers.

While being in the "MM connection pending" state, the call entity of the MS may cancel the call prior to sending the first call control message according to the rules given in section 4.5.1.7.

5.2.1.1 Call initiation

Having entered the "MM connection pending" state, upon MM connection establishment, the call control entity of the MS sends a setup message to its peer entity. This setup message is:

- a SETUP message, if the call to be established is a basic call, and
- an EMERGENCY SETUP message, if the call to be established is an emergency call.

It then enters the "call initiated" state. This state is supervised by timer T303, which has already been started after entering the "MM connection pending" state.

The setup message shall contain all the information required by the network to process the call. In particular, the SETUP message shall contain the called party address information.

When the call control entity of the MS is in the "call initiated" state and if it receives:

i) a CALL PROCEEDING message, it shall proceed as described in section 5.2.1.3;

ii) an ALERTING message, it shall proceed as described in section 5.2.1.5;

iii) a CONNECT message, it shall proceed as described in section 5.2.1.6;

iv) a RELEASE COMPLETE message it shall proceed as described in section 5.2.1.2.

Abnormal case:

Since timer T303 is used to supervise the two consecutive states "MM connection pending" and "call initiated", the expiry of timer T303 leads to different actions depending on the respective state:

- If timer T303 elapses in the "MM connection pending" state, the MM connection in progress shall be aborted and the user shall be informed about the rejection of the call.
- If timer T303 elapses in the "call initiated" state before any of the CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, CONNECT or RELEASE COMPLETE messages has been received, the clearing procedure described in section 5.4 is performed.

5.2.1.2 Receipt of a setup message

In the "null" state, upon receipt of a setup message (a SETUP message or an EMERGENCY SETUP message, see section 5.2.1.1), the call control entity of the network enters the "call initiated" state. It shall then analyse the call information contained in the setup message.

i) If, following the receipt of the setup message, the call control entity of the network determines that the call information received from the MS is invalid (e.g. invalid number), then the network shall initiate call clearing as defined in section 5.4 with one of the following cause values:

1 "unassigned (unallocated) number"
3 "no route to destination"
22 " number changed"
28 "invalid number format (incomplete number)"

ii) If, following the receipt of the setup message, the call control entity of the network determines that a requested service is not authorized or is not available, it shall initiate call clearing in accordance with section 5.4.2 with one of the following cause values:

8 "operator determined barring",
57 "bearer capability not authorized",
58 "bearer capability not presently available",
63 "service or option not available, unspecified", or
65 "bearer service not implemented".

iii) Otherwise, the call control entity of the network shall either:

- send a CALL PROCEEDING message to its peer entity to indicate that the call is being processed; and enter the "mobile originating call proceeding" state.
- or: send an ALERTING message to its peer entity to indicate that alerting has been started at the called user side; and enter the "call received" state.
- or: send a CONNECT message to its peer entity to indicate that the call has been accepted at the called user side; and enter the "connect request" state.

The call control entity of the network may insert bearer capability information element(s) in the CALL PROCEEDING message to select options presented by the MS in the Bearer Capability information element(s) of the SETUP message. The bearer capability information element(s) shall contain the same parameters as received in the SETUP except those presenting a choice. Where choices were offered, appropriate parameters indicating the results of those choices shall be included.

The CALL_PROCEEDING message may also contain the priority of the call in the case where eMLPP is applied and where the network has assigned a different priority to the call than that requested by the user, or where the user has not requested a priority and the network has assigned a default priority. MSs supporting eMLPP shall indicate this priority level to higher sublayers and store this information for the duration of the call for further action. MSs not supporting eMLPP shall ignore this information element if provided in a CALL PROCEEDING message.

The call control entity of the network having entered the "mobile originating call proceeding" state, the network may initiate the assignment of a traffic channel according to section 5.2.1.9 (early assignment).

```
  MS                     Network
 ------------------------------
|                              |
|     (EMERGENCY) SETUP        |
|    ---------------------->   |
|                              |
 ------------------------------

        CALL_PROCEEDING           (i)
   < - - - - - - - - - - - -
          ALERTING               (ii)
   < - - - - - - - - - - - -
          CONNECT                (iii)
   < - - - - - - - - - - - -
        RELEASE COMPLETE          (iv)
   < - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

Figure 5.2/GSM 04.08
Mobile originated call initiation and possible subsequent responses.

5.2.1.3 Receipt of a CALL PROCEEDING message

Having entered the "call initiated" state, when the call control entity of the MS receives a CALL PROCEEDING message, it shall stop timer T303; start timer T310 unless

- the CALL PROCEEDING message contains a *progress indicator* IE specifying progress description #1, #2, or #64
- or it has received a PROGRESS message containing a *progress indicator* IE specifying progress description #1, #2, or #64 prior to the CALL PROCEEDING message;

and enter the "mobile originating call proceeding" state.

Abnormal case:

If timer T310 elapses before any of the ALERTING, CONNECT or DISCONNECT messages has been received, the MS shall perform the clearing procedure described in section 5.4.

```
  MS                     Network
 ----------------------------
|                            |
|      CALL PROCEEDING       |
|   <--------------------    |
|                            |
 ----------------------------
```

Figure 5.3/GSM 04.08
Call proceeding sequence at mobile originating call establishment

5.2.1.4 Notification of progressing mobile originated call

In this section, the term "interworking" is used only in the meaning of interworking with a network other than PLMN or ISDN, not as interworking between PLMN and ISDN since this is the normal case. In this sense, PLMN and ISDN are seen within the same environment, called the PLMN/ISDN environment.

5.2.1.4.1 Notification of interworking in connection with mobile originated call establishment

During call establishment, the call may leave a PLMN/ISDN environment; e.g., because of interworking with another network, with a non-PLMN/ISDN user, or with non-PLMN/ISDN equipment within the called user's premises; the call may also return to a PLMN/ISDN environment. When such situations occur, the network may send a *progress indicator* information element to the calling MS either:

a) in an appropriate call control message, if a state change is required (e.g. ALERTING or CONNECT); or,

b) in the PROGRESS message, if no state change is appropriate.

This *progress indicator* information element shall contain one of the following progress description values:

a) #1 "call is not end-to-end PLMN/ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band".

b) #2 "destination address is non-PLMN/ISDN".

c) #4 "call has returned to PLMN/ISDN.

See also sections 5.5.1 and 5.5.6 for further reactions of the MS.

5.2.1.4.2 Call progress in the PLMN/ISDN environment

In order to inform the MS that the call is progressing in the PLMN/ISDN environment the network may send a *progress indicator* information element to the calling MS either:

a) in an appropriate call control message, if a state change is required (e.g., ALERTING or CONNECT); or

b) in the PROGRESS message, if no state change is appropriate.

This *progress indicator* information element shall contain progress description value #32 "Call is end-to-end ISDN/PLMN". See also section 5.5.6 for further reactions of the MS.

5.2.1.5 Alerting

Having entered the "mobile originating call proceeding" state, upon receiving an indication that user alerting has been initiated at the called address, the call control entity of the network shall: send an ALERTING message to its peer entity at the calling MS and enter the "call delivered" state.

When the call control entity of the MS in the "call initiated" state or "mobile originating call proceeding" state receives an ALERTING message then, the call control entity of the MS shall stop timer T303 and T310 (if running) and shall enter the "call delivered" state. In this state, for speech calls:

- an alerting indication should be given to the user. If the MS has not attached the user connection then the MS shall internally generate an alerting indication. If the MS has attached the user connection then the network is responsible for generating the alerting indication and the MS need not generate one.

Abnormal cases:

On the MS side, if timer T310 expires, the call control entity of the MS shall initiate call clearing as described in section 5.4.

```
MS                    Network
   +----------------------+
   |                      |
   |      ALERTING        |
   |  <--------------     |
   |                      |
   +----------------------+
```

Figure 5.4/GSM 04.08
Call confirmation
at mobile originating call establishment

5.2.1.6 Call connected

Upon receiving an indication that the call has been accepted, the call control entity of the network shall: through connect the traffic channel (including the connection of an interworking function, if required) and send a CONNECT message to its peer entity at the calling MS; start timer T313 and enter the "connect indication" state.

This message indicates to the call control entity of the calling MS that a connection has been established through the network.

The call control entity of the MS in the "call initiated" state, in the "mobile originating call proceeding" state or in the "call delivered" state, shall, upon receipt of a CONNECT message:

- attach the user connection;
- return a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message;
- stop any locally generated alerting indication (if applied);
- stop timer T303 and T310 (if running);
- enter the "active" state.

Abnormal cases:

On the MS side, if timer T303 or T310 expires, the call control entity of the MS shall initiate call clearing as described in section 5.4.

NOTE: The MS may have applied an additional internal alerting supervision which causes initiation of call clearing prior to the expiry of T303 or T310.

The call control of the network in the "connect indication" state, shall, upon receipt of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message:

- stop timer T313 and enter the "active" state.

Abnormal cases:

On the network side, if timer T313 elapses before a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message has been received, the network shall perform the clearing procedure as described in section 5.4.

```
MS                             Network
        CONNECT
   <----------------------
     CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
   ---------------------->
```

Figure 5.5/GSM 04.08
Call acceptance sequence
at mobile originating call establishment

5.2.1.7 Call rejection

Upon receiving an indication that the network or the called user is unable to accept the call, the network shall initiate call clearing at the radio interface to the mobile which originated the call, as described in section 5.4 using the cause provided by the terminating network or the called user.

5.2.1.8 Transit network selection

NOTE: For further study.

5.2.1.9 Traffic channel assignment at mobile originating call establishment

It is a network dependent decision when to initiate the assignment of an appropriate traffic channel during the mobile originating call establishment phase. Initiation of a suitable RR procedure to assign an appropriate traffic channel does neither change the state of a call control entity nor affect any call control timer.

NOTE: During certain phases of such an RR procedure, transmission of CC and MM messages may be suspended, see GSM 04.08, section 3 and GSM 08.08.

The assignment procedure does not affect any call control timer.

5.2.1.10 Call queuing at mobile originating call establishment

The conditions to apply queuing are described in GSM 03.01.

If an idle traffic channel is not available at the assignment instant, the network may place the traffic channel request in a queue. Calls arriving when all positions in the queue are occupied shall be cleared by the network using the cause #34 "no circuit/channel available".

The maximum queuing interval is supervised by the network. The limit is a network dependent choice. In case the network is not able to allocate a traffic channel within the queuing limit, the network will release the call using cause #34 "no circuit/channel available".

Optionally, e.g. if eMLPP is used, the network may decide to pre-empt existing calls or to place the traffic channel request at some preferential position within the queue.

Specific indications provided in the network to the remote user are a network dependent choice.

5.2.2 Mobile terminating call establishment

Before call establishment can be initiated in the MS, the MM connection must be established by the network.

5.2.2.1 Call indication

After the arrival of a call from a remote user, the corresponding call control entity in the network shall: initiate the MM connection establishment according to section 4 and enter the "MM connection pending" state. The request to establish the MM connection is passed from the CM sublayer to the MM sublayer. It contains the necessary routing information derived from the SETUP message.

Upon completion of the MM connection, the call control entity of the network shall: send the SETUP message to its peer entity at the MS, start timer T303 and enter the "call present" state.

Upon receipt of a SETUP message, the MS shall perform compatibility checking as described in 5.2.2.2. If the result of the compatibility checking was compatibility, the call control entity of the MS shall enter the "call present" state. An incompatible MS shall respond with a RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with section 5.2.2.3.4.

If no response to the SETUP message is received by the call control entity of the network before the expiry of timer T303, the procedures described in section 5.2.2.3.3 shall apply.

```
MS                       Network
   +------------------------+
   |        SETUP           |
   |   <--------------      |
   |                        |
   +------------------------+

         CALL_CONFIRMED              (i)
  - - - - - - - - - - - - - - >
        RELEASE COMPLETE            (ii)
  - - - - - - - - - - - - - - >
```

Figure 5.6/GSM 04.08
Mobile terminating call initiation and possible subsequent responses.

5.2.2.2 Compatibility checking

The MS receiving a SETUP message shall perform compatibility checking before responding to that SETUP message. Annex B defines compatibility checking to be performed by the MS upon receiving a SETUP message.

5.2.2.3 Call confirmation

5.2.2.3.1 Response to SETUP

Having entered the "call present state" the call control entity of the MS shall - with the exception of the cases described below - acknowledge the SETUP message by a CALL CONFIRMED message, and enter the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state.

The call control entity of the MS may include in the CALL CONFIRMED message to the network one or two bearer capability information elements to the network, either preselected in the MS or corresponding to a service dependent directory number (see GSM 09.07). The MS may also include one or two bearer capabilities in the CALL CONFIRMED message to define the radio channel requirements. In any case the rules specified in section 9.3.2.2 shall be followed.

NOTE: The possibility of alternative responses (e.g., in connection with supplementary services) is for further study.

A busy MS which satisfies the compatibility requirements indicated in the SETUP message shall respond either with a CALL CONFIRMED message if the call setup is allowed to continue or a RELEASE COMPLETE message if the call setup is not allowed to continue, both with cause #17 "user busy".

If the mobile user wishes to refuse the call, a RELEASE COMPLETE message shall be sent with the cause #21 "call rejected" .

In the cases where the MS responds to a SETUP message with RELEASE COMPLETE message the MS shall release the MM connection and enter the "null" state after sending the RELEASE COMPLETE message.

The network shall process the RELEASE COMPLETE message in accordance with section 5.4.

5.2.2.3.2 Receipt of CALL CONFIRMED and ALERTING by the network

The call control entity of the network in the "call present" state, shall, upon receipt of a CALL CONFIRMED message: stop timer T303, start timer T310 and enter the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state.

The call control entity of the MS having entered the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state, if the call is accepted at the called user side, the MS proceeds as described in 5.2.2.5. Otherwise, if the signal information element was present in the SETUP message user alerting is initiated at the MS side; if the signal information element was not present in the SETUP message, user alerting is initiated when an appropriate channel is available.

Here, initiation of user alerting means:

- the generation of an appropriate tone or indication at the MS, and
- sending of an ALERTING message by the call control entity of the MS to its peer entity in the network and entering the "call received" state.

The call control entity of the network in the "mobile terminated call confirmed" state shall, upon receipt of an ALERTING message: send a corresponding ALERTING indication to the calling user; stop timer T310; start timer T301, and enter the "call received" state.

In the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state or the "call received" state, if the user of a MS is User Determined User Busy then a DISCONNECT message shall be sent with cause #17 "user busy". In the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state, if the user of a MS wishes to reject the call then a DISCONNECT message shall be sent with cause #21 "call rejected".

5.2.2.3.3 Call failure procedures

In case of abnormal behaviour the following call failure procedures apply:

i. If the network does not receive any response to the SETUP message prior to the expiration of timer T303, then the network shall: initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause #18 "no user responding"; and initiate clearing procedures towards the called MS in accordance with 5.4.4 using cause #102 "recovery on timer expiry".

ii. If the network has received a CALL CONFIRMED message, but does not receive an ALERTING, CONNECT or DISCONNECT message prior to the expiration of timer T310, then the network shall:
    - initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause #18 "no user responding"; and
    - initiate clearing procedures towards the called MS in accordance with section 5.4.4 using cause #102 "recovery on timer expiry".

iii. If the network has received an ALERTING message, but does not receive a CONNECT or DISCONNECT message prior to the expiry of timer T301 (or a corresponding internal alerting supervision timing function), then the network shall: initiate clearing procedures towards the calling user with cause #19 "user alerting, no answer"; and initiate clearing procedures towards the called MS in accordance with section 5.4.4, using cause #102 "recovery on timer expiry" or using cause #31 "normal, unspecified".

    NOTE: The choice between cause #31 and cause #102 may have consequences on indications generated by the MS, see GSM 02.40.

5.2.2.3.4 Called MS clearing during mobile terminating call establishment

See section 5.4.2.

5.2.2.4 Notification of interworking in connection with mobile terminating call establishment

In this section, the term "interworking" is used only in the meaning of interworking with a network other than PLMN or ISDN, not as interworking between PLMN and ISDN since this is the normal case. In this sense, PLMN and ISDN are seen within the same environment, called the PLMN/ISDN environment.

During call establishment the call may enter an PLMN/ISDN environment, e.g., because of interworking with another network, with a non-PLMN/ISDN user, or with non-PLMN/ISDN equipment within the calling or called user's premises. When this occurs, the network may include a *progress indicator* information element to be included in the SETUP message to be sent to the called MS specifying progress description value

a) #1 "call is not end-to-end PLMN/ISDN; further call progress information may be available in-band" or
b) #3 "origination address is non-PLMN/ISDN".

See also section 5.5.1 for further reactions of the MS.

5.2.2.5 Call accept

In the "mobile terminating call confirmed" state or the "call received" state, the call control entity in the MS indicates acceptance of a mobile terminating call by;

- sending a CONNECT message to its peer entity in the network;
- starting Timer T313; and
- entering the "connect request" state.

5.2.2.6 Active indication

In the "mobile terminated call confirmed" state or in the "call received" state, the call control entity of the network shall, upon receipt of a CONNECT message: through connect the traffic channel (including the connection of an interworking function, if required), stop timers T310, T303 or T301 (if running); send a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message to its peer entity at the MS of the called user; initiate procedures to send a CONNECT message towards the calling user and enter the "active" state.

In the "connect request" state, the call control entity of the MS shall, upon receipt of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message: stop timer T313 and enter the "active" state.

When timer T313 expires prior to the receipt of a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message, the MS shall initiate clearing in accordance with section 5.4.3.

```
MS                    Network
 +-------------------------+
 |      CONNECT            |
 | ---------------------->  |
 |   CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE   |
 | <---------------------  |
 +-------------------------+
```

Figure 5.7/GSM 04.08
Call acceptance and active indication at mobile terminating call establishment

5.2.2.7 Traffic channel assignment at mobile terminating call establishment

It is a network dependent decision when to initiate the assignment of a traffic channel during the mobile terminating call establishment phase.

Initiation of the assignment phase does not directly change the state of a CC entity nor affect any call control timer, but may have such secondary effects (see e.g. clause 5.2.2.3.2).

5.2.2.8 Call queuing at mobile terminating call establishment

The principles described in section 5.2.1.1.10 apply accordingly.

NOTE: The interworking to the fixed network has to fulfil the network specific requirements.

5.2.2.9 User connection attachment during a mobile terminating call

For speech calls:

The MS shall attach the user connection at latest when sending the connect message.

For data calls:

The MS shall attach the user connection when receiving the CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message from the network.

5.3 Signalling procedures during the "active" state

5.3.1 User notification procedure

The mobile terminating user notification procedure allows the network to notify a MS of any appropriate call-related event during the "active" state of a call. The procedure consists in the network sending a NOTIFY message to the MS. No state change occurs at any of the interface sides following the sending or the receipt of this message (but an appropriate indication may optionally be generated in the MS).

The mobile originating notification procedure allows the MS to notify the remote user of any appropriate call-related event during the "active" state of a call by sending a NOTIFY message containing a notification indicator to the network; upon receipt of this message, the network sends a NOTIFY message containing the same notify indicator to the other user involved in the call. No state change occurs at any of the interface sides following the sending or the receipt of this message.

5.3.2 Call rearrangements

Call rearrangements on the air interface are not supported by explicit messages (e.g. SUSPEND and RESUME messages as defined in ETS 300 102-1). However if a remote non-PLMN user initiates call rearrangements, the network shall inform the MS by means of a NOTIFY message. In a similar way the MS can inform the network about rearrangements by sending a NOTIFY message (e.g. change of user equipment connected to the MS).

5.3.3 Not used

5.3.4 Support of Dual Services

The behaviour described in this section is used to realize the following required services throughout section 5.3.4. The MS is not obliged to support the network originated in-call modification procedure. In that case, the MS shall, when receiving a MODIFY message, treat the message as unknown and react as described in section 8.4. If the MS is already prepared to support the procedure in both directions, it shall act as described in this section.

a) Alternate Speech/Data (BS 61 according to GSM 02.02);
b) Speech followed by Data (BS 81 according to GSM 02.02);
c) Alternate Speech/Group 3 fax (Teleservice 61 according to GSM 02.03).

5.3.4.1 Service Description

This circuit switched service allows the two users on a point-to-point connection to use the connection between them for different information transfer during the same call, but not at the same time.

If the negotiation during call establishment leads to the recognition of the above mentioned services, the in-call modification procedure is allowed to be executed within the current call by changing from one call mode to the other.

In some cases the in-call modification procedure makes it necessary to change the channel configuration by allocating a new channel and in other cases to change channel configuration parameters while keeping the previously allocated channel. This change is determined by the network, which initiates either the channel assignment procedure, handover procedure or channel mode modify procedure (see section 3).

The capability and the initial mode desired must be identified by the MS by identifying each mode of operation with a separate information element during call establishment. Further the type of change between the modes must be identified by means of the repeat indicator:

mode 1 "alternate" mode 2, or
mode 1 "and then" mode 2.

5.3.4.2 Call establishment

For both mobile originating and mobile terminating calls, the normal call establishment procedures apply.

5.3.4.2.1 Mobile Originating Establishment

The service is requested by the originating MS by transferring a SETUP message to the network containing the *BC repeat indicator* IE, the *bearer capability 1* information element, and the *bearer capability 2* information element. The first mode of operation ("call mode") shall be indicated by the *bearer capability 1* information element and the second call mode by the *bearer capability 2* information element.

A low layer compatibility may optionally be specified for each call mode in a *low layer compatibility I* and *low layer compatibility II* information element. In that case:

- the SETUP message shall contain the *LLC repeat indicator* IE and both *low layer compatibility I* and *low layer compatibility II* information elements. The *low layer compatibility I* information element then corresponds to the *bearer capability 1* information element and the *low layer compatibility II* information element to the *bearer capability 2* information element;
- if no low layer compatibility specification applies for one of the two call modes, the corresponding low layer compatibility IE (*low layer compatibility I* or *low layer compatibility II)* shall indicate "not applicable";
- the *LLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

Similarly, a high layer compatibility may optionally be specified for each call mode in a *high layer compatibility i* and *high layer compatibility ii* information element. In that case:

- the SETUP message shall contain the *HLC repeat indicator* IE and both *high layer compatibility i* and *high layer compatibility ii* information elements. The *high layer compatibility i* information element then corresponds to the *bearer capability 1* information element and the *high layer compatibility ii* information element to the *bearer capability 2* information element;
- if no high layer compatibility specification applies for one of the two call modes, the corresponding high layer compatibility IE (*high layer compatibility i* or *high layer compatibility ii)* shall indicate "not applicable";
- the *HLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

The receiving entity shall ignore whether the *LLC repeat indicator* IE or *HLC repeat indicator* are contained in the message or not; it shall also ignore the repeat indication of an *LLC repeat indicator* IE or *HLC repeat indicator* IE. If the *low layer compatibility II* IE is not contained in the message and the *low layer compatibility I* IE is contained in the message, the receiving entity shall relate it to a call mode indicated in the message that does not specify speech (if any). If the *high layer compatibility ii* IE is not contained in the message and the *high layer compatibility i* IE is contained in the message, the receiving entity shall relate it to a call mode indicated in the message that does not specify speech (if any).

The specific part of the network which is sensitive to the call mode shall examine each mode described in the bearer capabilities included in the SETUP message by performing compatibility checking as defined in Annex B. If as a result of this compatibility checking the network decides to reject the call, then the network shall initiate call clearing as specified in section 5.4 with the following causes:

a) #57 "bearer capability not authorized"
b) #58 "bearer capability not presently available"
c) #65 "bearer service not implemented"
d) #70 "only restricted digital information bearer capability is available"

5.3.4.2.2 Mobile Terminating Establishment

The service is indicated to the called MS by a SETUP message coded in the same manner as in the mobile originating call establishment. As specified for normal terminating call establishment, the service may be indicated by the called MS in the CALL CONFIRMED message.

The destination MS shall perform the compatibility checking as defined in Annex B for both required modes if indicated in the SETUP message. If as a result of compatibility checking the MS decides to reject the call, the MS shall initiate call clearing according to the procedures of section 5.4 with one of the following causes:

a) #57 "bearer capability not authorized"
b) #58 "bearer capability not presently available"
c) #65 "bearer service not implemented"
d) #88 "incompatible destination"

The MS may accept the call if the first mode indicated is free irrespective of whether the other mode is free or busy.

5.3.4.3 Changing the Call Mode

In order to change the call mode, the following in-call modification procedures shall be used.

Either side of the radio interface may act as the requesting user to invoke the in-call modification.

Upon each successful completion of the in-call modification procedure, the call changes to the next mode negotiated and agreed during the establishment phase of the call.

The in-call modification procedures are completely symmetrical at the radio interface.

NOTE: Considering a possible future evolution, in-call modification is specified as a symmetrical procedure.

5.3.4.3.1 Initiation of in-call modification

The procedure is initiated by the requesting originating side in the "active" state of the call. It shall send a MODIFY message including the new mode to be changed to; start timer T323; and enter the "mobile originating modify" state (MS side) or the "mobile terminating modify" state (network side). Any internal resources necessary to support the next call mode shall be reserved. The new mode given in the MODIFY message shall be one of those already negotiated and agreed during the establishment phase of the call. If the data call direction is different from the direction of the call setup a reverse call setup direction IE shall be included in the MODIFY message; otherwise this IE shall not be included. The MODIFY originating side shall stop sending Bm-channel information; and stop interpreting received Bm-channel information according to the old call mode.

Upon receipt of the MODIFY message, the destination side shall check to ensure that the requested call mode can still be supported and if so, it shall initiate the reservation of any resources necessary to support the next call mode and enter the "mobile originating modify" (network side) or "mobile terminating modify" state (MS side).

5.3.4.3.2 Successful completion of in-call modification

If the destination network/MS receives a MODIFY message with a new mode which is already the actual one of the call the network/MS shall remain in the "active" state; send a MODIFY COMPLETE message with the actual mode; and shall not initiate anything else.

If the requested mode is not the actual one and can be supported by the destination interface it shall change the channel configuration, if required, and step on to any internal resources necessary to support the next call mode. If the requested mode is a data or facsimile mode, it shall also perform the appropriate means to take the direction of the data call into account. After successful change of the channel configuration it shall start sending user information according to the next call mode and start interpreting received user channel information according to the next call mode; send a MODIFY COMPLETE message with the new call mode included and enter the "active" state (MS or network side). If the MODIFY message had contained a *reverse call setup direction* IE, the same IE shall be included in the MODIFY COMPLETE message.

In case of an alternate speech/data or alternate speech/facsimile group 3 service (refer to section 5.3.4) the old resources may still be kept reserved, in case of speech followed by data service they may be released.

Upon receipt of the MODIFY COMPLETE message the originating side shall: initiate the alternation to those resources necessary to support the next call mode; stop timer T323; and enter the "active" state (MS or network side). The reaction of the originating side if it had included a reverse call setup direction IE in the MODIFY message, but the destination side did not include the IE in the MODIFY COMPLETE message is implementation dependent.

5.3.4.3.3 Change of the channel configuration

In case the requested bearer capability cannot be supported by the current channel configuration the network shall initiate the assignment procedure and change the channel configuration accordingly.

5.3.4.3.4 Failure of in-call modification

5.3.4.3.4.1 Network rejection of in-call modification

If the network cannot support the change to the requested call mode or if the change of the channel configuration fails the network shall: release the resources which had been reserved for the alternation: send a MODIFY REJECT message with the old bearer capability and with cause # 58 "bearer capability not presently available" to the initiating MS; and enter the "active" state. If the change of the channel configuration fails, the network shall return to the internal resources required for the old call mode.

Upon receipt of the MODIFY REJECT message with the old bearer capability the initiating MS shall: stop timer T323; release any resources which had been reserved for the alternation; resume sending user channel information according to the present call mode; resume interpreting received user channel information according to the present call mode; and enter the "active" state.

5.3.4.3.4.2 MS rejection of in-call modification

If the MS cannot support the change to the requested call mode, the MS shall: release any resources which had been reserved for the alternation; send a MODIFY REJECT message with the old bearer capability and cause # 58 "bearer capability not presently available", and enter the "active" state.

Upon receipt of the MODIFY REJECT message the network shall: stop timer T323, release any resources which had been reserved for the alternation.

5.3.4.3.4.3 Time-out recovery

Upon expiration of T323 in either the MS or the network the procedures for call clearing shall be initiated with cause # 102 "recovery on timer expiry".

5.3.4.4 Abnormal procedures

If a MODIFY, MODIFY COMPLETE or MODIFY REJECT message is received in the "disconnect indication", "disconnect request" (MS side only) or "release request" state then the received message shall be discarded and no action shall be taken.

If a MODIFY COMPLETE message indicating a call mode which does not correspond to the requested one is received or if a MODIFY REJECT message indicating a call mode which does not correspond to the actual one is received then the received message shall be discarded and no action shall be taken.

If a MODIFY message indicating a call mode which does not belong to those negotiated and agreed during the establishment phase of the call, is received, then a MODIFY REJECT message with the actual call mode and with cause # 57 "bearer capability not authorized" shall be sent back.

```
   MS                                Network
             MOD
 -------------------------------->
        |-------------|
        | assignment or channel mode modify
        |-------------|
             MOD COMP
 <-------------------------------
             MOD REJ
 <--  --  --  --  --  --  --  --
```

Figure 5.10a/GSM 04.08
In-call modification sequence initiated by MS

```
  MS                                Network
             MOD
 <-------------------------------
             MOD COMP
 ------------------------------->
             MOD REJ
  --  --  --  --  --  --  --  ->
        |-------------|
        | assignment or channel mode modify
        |-------------|
```

Figure 5.10b/GSM 04.08
In-call modification sequence initiated by network

5.4 Call clearing

5.4.1 Terminology

The following terms are used in this Technical Specification in the description of clearing procedures:

- A traffic channel (see GSM 04.03) is "connected" when the channel is part of a circuit-switched connection established according to this Technical Specification.

- A traffic channel is "disconnected" when the channel is no longer part of a circuit-switched connection, but is not yet available for use in a new connection.

5.4.2 Exception conditions

Under normal conditions, the call control entity of the MS or of the network initiates call clearing by sending a DISCONNECT message to its peer entity; then both entities follow the procedures defined in sections 5.4.3 and 5.4.4 respectively.

As an exception to the above rule, the call control entity of the MS or of the network, in response to a SETUP message, can reject a call by stopping all running call control timers, responding with a RELEASE COMPLETE message, releasing the MM connection, and returning to the "null" state, provided no other response has previously been sent.

As a further exception, the call control entity of the network may initiate call clearing by stopping all running call control timers, sending a RELEASE message, starting timer T308, and entering the "release request" state.

NOTE: This way to initiate call clearing by sending a RELEASE message should not be used by the network:

- if in-band tones/announcements are provided and the network decides to use the procedure described in section 5.4.4.1;

- if the network wants to have the opportunity to respond to information sent by the MS during call clearing.

A call control entity shall accept an incoming RELEASE COMPLETE message used to initiate the call clearing even though the cause information element is not included.

A control entity shall accept an incoming RELEASE message used to initiate the call clearing even though the cause information element is not included.

Furthermore, a call control entity shall regard an incoming RELEASE COMPLETE message as consistent with any of its states; a call control entity shall regard an incoming RELEASE message as consistent with any of its states except the null state: a call control entity of the MOBILE STATION shall regard an incoming DISCONNECT message as consistent with any of its call control states except the "null" state, the "release request" state, and the "disconnect indication" state; a call control entity of the network shall regard an incoming DISCONNECT message as consistent with any of its call control states except the "null" state and the "release request" state.

NOTE: This allows the introduction of shorter call clearing procedures in the future.

5.4.3 Clearing initiated by the MS

5.4.3.1 Initiation of call clearing

Apart from the exceptions identified in section 5.4.2, the call control entity of the MS shall initiate clearing by: stopping all running call control timers, sending a DISCONNECT message; starting timer T305; and entering the "disconnect request" state.

5.4.3.2 Receipt of a DISCONNECT message from the MS.

The call control entity in the network in any state except the "null" state and the "release request" state shall, upon receipt of a DISCONNECT message:

- Stop all running call control timers;
- initiate procedures to clear the network connection and the call to the remote user;
- send a RELEASE message to its peer entity;
- start timer T308; and
- enter the "release request" state.

NOTE: The RELEASE message has only local significance and does not imply an acknowledgement of clearing from the remote user.

5.4.3.3 Receipt of a RELEASE message from the network

The call control entity of the MS in any state except the "null" state and the "release request" state, shall, upon receipt of a RELEASE message: stop all running call control timers; send a RELEASE COMPLETE message; release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.3.4 Receipt of a RELEASE COMPLETE message from the MS

A call control entity of the network in any call control state shall, upon receipt of a RELEASE COMPLETE message from its peer entity in the MS: stop all running call control timers; release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.3.5 Abnormal cases

The call control entity of the MS in the "disconnect request" state, shall upon expiry of timer T305: send a RELEASE message to the network with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message and optionally, a second cause information element with cause #102 "recovery on timer expiry", start timer T308, and enter the "release request" state.

The call control entity of the network in the "release request" state, shall, at first expiry of timer T308, retransmit the RELEASE message, start timer T308, and stay in the "release request" state. At second expiry of timer T308, the call control entity of the network shall: release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.4 Clearing initiated by the network

Apart from the exception conditions identified in section 5.4.2, the call control entity of the network shall initiate clearing by: sending a DISCONNECT message; and entering the "disconnect indication" state. The DISCONNECT message is a local invitation to clear the call.

NOTE: When the network initiates clearing by sending a RELEASE message, the procedures described in sections 5.4.3., 5.4.3.4 and 5.4.3.5 are followed.

5.4.4.1 Clearing when tones/announcements provided

When in-band tones/announcements are provided (see section 5.5.1), the call control entity of the network may initiate clearing by sending a DISCONNECT message containing progress indicator #8 "in-band information or appropriate pattern now available", starting timer T306, and entering the "disconnect indication" state.

5.4.4.1.1 Receipt of a DISCONNECT message with progress indicator #8 from the network

The call control entity of the MS in any state except the "null" state, the "disconnect indication" state, and the "release request" state, shall, upon receipt of a DISCONNECT message with progress indicator #8:

i) if an appropriate speech traffic channel is not connected, continue clearing as defined in section 5.4.4.2.1 without connecting to the in-band tone/announcement;

ii) if an appropriate speech traffic channel is connected, attach the user connection for speech if it is not yet attached and enter the "disconnect indication" state. In that state, if upper layers request the clearing of the call, the call control entity of the MS shall proceed as defined in section 5.4.4.2.1.

5.4.4.1.2 Expiry of timer T306

The call control entity of the network, having entered the "disconnect indication" state after sending a disconnect message with the progress indicator #8, shall, upon expiry of timer T306, continue clearing by sending a RELEASE message with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message; starting timer T308; and entering the "release request" state.

5.4.4.2 Clearing when tones/announcements not provided

When in-band tones and announcements are not provided, the call control entity of the network shall initiate call clearing by stopping all running call control timers, sending a DISCONNECT message without progress indicator, starting timer T305 and entering the "disconnect indication" state.

5.4.4.2.1 Receipt of a DISCONNECT message without progress indicator or with progress indicator different from #8 from the network

The call control entity of the MS in any state except the "null" state, the "disconnect indication" state, and the "release request" state, shall, upon the receipt of a DISCONNECT message without progress indicator information element or with progress indicator different from #8:

- stop all running call control timers;
- send a RELEASE message;
- start timer T308; and
- enter the "release request" state.

5.4.4.2.2 Receipt of a RELEASE message from the MS

The call control entity of the network in any state except the "null" state and the "release request" state, shall, upon receipt of a RELEASE message: stop all running call control timers; send a RELEASE COMPLETE message; release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.4.2.3 Abnormal cases

The call control entity of the network, having entered the "disconnect indication" state after sending a DISCONNECT message without progress indicator or with progress indicator different from #8, shall upon expiry of timer T305: send a RELEASE message to the MS with the cause number originally contained in the DISCONNECT message; start timer T308; and enter the "release request" state. In addition to the original clearing cause, the RELEASE message may contain a second cause information element with cause #102 "recovery on timer expiry".

5.4.4.3 Completion of clearing

A call control entity of the MS in any call control state shall, upon receipt of a RELEASE COMPLETE message from its peer entity in the network: stop all running call control timers ; release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.4.3.1 Abnormal cases

The call control entity of the MS in the "release request" state shall at first expiry of timer T308 retransmit the RELEASE message and restart timer T308. At second expiry of timer T308, the call control entity of the MS shall: release the MM connection; and return to the "null" state.

5.4.5 Clear collision

Clear collision occurs when both the MS and the network simultaneously transfer DISCONNECT messages specifying the same call.

The behaviour of the network call control entity receiving a DISCONNECT message whilst in the "disconnect indication" state is specified in section 5.4.3. The behaviour of the MS call control entity receiving a DISCONNECT message whilst in the "disconnect request" state is defined in section 5.4.4.

Clear collision can also occur when both sides simultaneously transfer RELEASE messages related to the same call. The entity receiving such a RELEASE message whilst within the "release request" state shall: stop timer T308; release the MM connection; and enter the "null" state (without sending a RELEASE COMPLETE message).

5.5 Miscellaneous procedures

5.5.1 In-band tones and announcements

When the network wants to make the MS attach the user connection (e.g. in order to provide in-band tones/announcement) before the MS has reached the "active" state of a call, the network may include a *progress indicator* IE indicating user attachment in a suitable CC message:

- Either it includes the IE in a SETUP, CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, or CONNECT message that is send during call establishment
- it sends a PROGRESS message containing the IE.

A *progress indicator* IE indicates user attachment if it specifies a progress description in the set {1, 2, 3} or in the set {6, 7, 8, ..., 20}.

On reception of a SETUP, CALL PROCEEDING, ALERTING, CONNECT, or PROGRESS message the MS shall proceed as specified elsewhere in section 5; if the *progress indicator* IE indicated user attachment and a speech mode traffic channel is appropriate for the call the MS shall in addition: attach the user connection for speech as soon as an appropriate channel in speech mode is available. (If a new order to attach the user connection is received before the attachment has been performed, the new order shall supersede the previous one.)

NOTE: This allows the use of *progress indicator* IEs independently from the channel modes appropriate for the call.

5.5.2 Call collisions

Call collisions as such cannot occur at the network. Any simultaneous mobile originating or mobile terminating calls are dealt with separately assigned and different transaction identifiers.

5.5.3 Status procedures

5.5.3.1 Status enquiry procedure

Whenever a call control entity wishes to check the call state of its peer entity, it may initiate the status enquiry procedure.

NOTE: This may, in particular, apply to procedural error conditions described in section 8.

A call control entity initiates the status enquiry procedure by sending the STATUS ENQUIRY message and starting timer T322. While timer T322 is running, the call control entity shall not send further STATUS ENQUIRY messages.

Upon receipt of a STATUS ENQUIRY message, the receiver shall respond with a STATUS message, reporting the current call state and cause value #30 "response to STATUS ENQUIRY". Receipt of the STATUS ENQUIRY shall not result in a state change relating to any protocol and connection of the receiver.

If a STATUS message is received that contains cause value #30 "response to status enquiry", timer T322 shall be stopped and further appropriate actions taken, based on the information in that STATUS message, relative to the current state of the receiver of the STATUS message. These further "appropriate actions" are implementation dependent. However, the actions prescribed in section 5.5.3.2 shall apply.

If a clearing message is received while timer T322 is running, timer T322 shall be stopped, and call clearing shall continue.

If timer T322 expires, the STATUS ENQUIRY message may be retransmitted maximally once. If T322 expires after the STATUS ENQUIRY has been transmitted the maximum number of times, clearing of the call shall be initiated with cause value #41, "temporary failure", in the first call clearing message.

5.5.3.2 Reception of a STATUS message by a CC entity

5.5.3.2.1 STATUS message with incompatible state

On receipt of a STATUS message reporting an incompatible call control state, the receiving entity shall clear the call by sending a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause # 101 "message not compatible with protocol state". The reported call control state is incompatible if the combination of call control states at the sender and receiver side cannot occur, do not match or cannot be aligned by actions of the receiver; the exact definition is implementation dependent.

5.5.3.2.2 STATUS message with compatible state

A STATUS message may be received indicating a compatible call state but containing one of the following causes:

95 "semantically incorrect message"; or
96 "invalid mandatory information"; or
97 "message type non-existent or not implemented"; or
98 "message type not compatible with protocol state"; or
99 "information element non-existent or not implemented"; or
100 "conditional IE error",

This indicates that the transmitter of the STATUS message was unable to accept some information sent by the recipient of the STATUS message. This allow the recipient to retransmit some or all of the information. Other actions are possible and are implementation dependent; they may include releasing the call.

5.5.4 Call re-establishment, MS side

This section describes the internal handling in the MS as far as call control is concerned.

5.5.4.1 Indication from the mobility management sublayer

When a MM connection is active, an indication may be given by the MM sublayer to the call control entity to announce that the current MM connection has been interrupted but might be re-established on request of call control.

5.5.4.2 Reaction of call control

Depending whether call re-establishment is allowed or not and on its actual state, call control shall decide to either request re-establishment or to release the MM connection.

a) Re-establishment not required

If the call is in the call establishment or call clearing phase, i.e. any state other than the "active" state or the "mobile originating modify" state, call control shall release the MM connection

b) Re-establishment required

If the call is in the "active" state or "mobile originating modify" state, the indication from MM that re-establishment is possible shall cause call control to request re-establishment from the MM connection, suspend any further message to be sent and await the completion of the re-establishment procedure.

5.5.4.3 Completion of re-establishment

Call Control is notified when the MM connection is re-established and shall then resume the transmission of possibly suspended messages and resume user data exchange when an appropriate channel is available.

5.5.4.4 Unsuccessful outcome

If the attempt to re-establish the connection was unsuccessful, the MM connection will be released and a release indication will be given to call control, see 4.5.1.6.

5.5.5 Call re-establishment, network side

This section describes the handling in the network as far as call control is concerned.

5.5.5.1 State alignment

After a successful call re-establishment it is a network responsibility to identify (e.g. by using the status enquiry procedure, if needed, and resolve, if possible, any call state or auxiliary state mismatch between the network and the MS.

5.5.6 Progress

At any time during the establishment or release of a call and during an active call the network may send a PROGRESS message to the MS.

On receipt of a PROGRESS message during the establishment or release of a call the MS shall stop all call control timers related to that call.

NOTE: If the PROGRESS has been received before the receipt of a CALL PROCEEDING message, the MS will not start timer T310 on receipt of a CALL PROCEEDING message, see section 5.2.1.1.3.

```
MS                      Network

              PROGRESS
        <--------------
```

Figure 5.11/GSM 04.08
Progress

5.5.7 DTMF protocol control procedure

Dual Tone Multi Frequency (DTMF) is an inband one out of four plus one out of four signalling system primarily used from terminal instruments in telecommunication networks. The support of DTMF in the network is described in GSM 03.14.

The MS shall be capable of transmitting DTMF messages if and only if the MS has the user connection for speech attached and an appropriate channel is available.

The transaction identifier used by the DTMF messages shall be that of the attached speech call.

NOTE 1: This specification means that DTMF messages can generally be sent in the active state of a call in speech transmission mode or when a traffic channel is available during setup or release and the *progress indicator* IE has been received.

NOTE 2: Since the DTMF protocol messages are sent in a store and forward mode on the signalling channels the control of the device at the far end may be delayed dependent on the load or quality of the channels.

NOTE 3: The procedures described in this paragraph support DTMF only in the direction MS to network.

5.5.7.1 Start DTMF request by the MS

A user may cause a DTMF tone to be generated e.g. by depression of a key in the MS. The relevant action is interpreted by the MS as a requirement for a DTMF digit to be sent in a START DTMF message on an established FACCH. This message contains the value of the digit to be transmitted (0, 1, ..., 9, A, B, C, D, *, #).

Only a single digit will be transferred in each START DTMF message.

5.5.7.2 Start DTMF response by the network

Upon receiving the START DTMF message the network will reconvert the received digit back into a DTMF tone which is applied toward the remote user and returns a START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE message to the MS. This acknowledgement may be used in the MS to generate an indication as a feedback for a successful transmission.

If the network cannot accept the START DTMF message a START DTMF REJECT message will be sent to the MS.

5.5.7.3 Stop DTMF request by the MS

When the user indicates that the DTMF sending should cease e.g. by releasing the key the MS will send a STOP DTMF message to the network.

5.5.7.4 Stop DTMF response by the network

Upon receiving the STOP DTMF message the network will stop sending the DTMF tone and return a STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE message to the MS.

5.5.7.5 Sequencing of subsequent start DTMF requests by the MS

The minimum length of tone generated by the network should be according to CEPT recommendation T/CS 46-02.

The minimum gap between two subsequent tones should be according to CEPT recommendation T/CS 46-02.

There is no defined maximum length to the tone, which will normally cease when a STOP DTMF message is received from the MS. However, the operator may choose to put a pre-defined time limit on the duration of tones sent.

The appropriate sequencing of DTMF control messages is shown in figures 5.8 and 5.9.

NOTE 1: The network may implement the time limit option where the DTMF tone duration is controlled by the network irrespective of the receipt of a STOP DTMF message from the MS.

NOTE 2: The transmission time of the messages over the air interface on FACCH/F or FACCH/H, see GSM 05.02, ensures that the minimum length of tones and minimum gap between tones according to T/CS 46-02 are fulfilled.

```
Mobile Station                      Network

                START DTMF
    ----------------------------------->
              START DTMF ACK
    <-----------------------------------
                 STOP DTMF
    ----------------------------------->
               STOP DTMF ACK
    <-----------------------------------
```

Figure 5.8/GSM 04.08
Single DTMF transmission

```
Mobile Station                      Network

              START DTMF (x)
    ----------------------------------->
              START DTMF ACK
    <-----------------------------------
                STOP DTMF
    ----------------------------------->
               STOP DTMF ACK
    <-----------------------------------
               START DTMF (y)
    ----------------------------------->
              START DTMF ACK
     <-----------------------------------
                    .
                    .
                    .
```

Figure 5.9/GSM 04.08
Multiple DTMF transmission

6 Support of packet services.

The circuit-switched call control procedures of section 5 apply to this case.

7 Examples of structured procedures

Section 7 is non-normative.

7.1 General

Section 7 contains examples of how the network may group together the elementary procedures (i.e. the procedures defined in sections 3 to 5) in order to provide normal service.

The layer 3 signalling at the radio interface may be divided into so-called structured procedures which consist of specific combinations of elementary procedures. In section 7.3, selected examples of structured procedures are described. A structured procedure consists of (not necessarily all) components shown in figure 7.1. These components are characterized by the purpose of their use in structured procedures and their message flow in the following sections 7.1.1 to 7.1.7.

[Paging request Immediate assignment]	RR connection establishment
[Service request and Contention resolution]	
[Authentication]	
[Ciphering mode setting]	
[Transaction phase]	
[Channel release]	RR connection release

Figure 7.1/GSM 04.08
Components of structured procedures

7.1.1 Paging request

The paging procedure is used to locate a MS to which a connection shall be established.

Upon receipt of a PAGING REQUEST message the addressed MS initiates the immediate assignment procedure.

```
Mobile Station          Network

         PAGING REQUEST
     <--------------------
```

Figure 7.2/GSM 04.08 Paging request

7.1.2 Immediate assignment

The immediate assignment procedure is always initiated by the MS. It may be triggered by a paging request or by a mobile originating service request.

The MS sends a CHANNEL REQUEST message on the Random Access Channel. The network responds with an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message which causes the MS to seize the indicated dedicated channel.

```
Mobile Station               Network

           CHANNEL REQUEST
     -------------------------->

        IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT
     <-------------------------
```

Figure 7.3/GSM 04.08 Immediate assignment

7.1.3 Service request and contention resolution

The initial service request message (a PAGING RESPONSE, LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST, IMSI DETACH, CM SERVICE REQUEST, or CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message) is sent by the MS to the network piggy-backed in the L2 SABM frames establishing the main signalling link. Its purpose is

- to provide non-confidential information relevant to the service requested for the RR and MM sublayer in the network;
- in particular to identify the user in the network without jeopardizing the confidentiality of the user's identity; this is achieved by using as mobile identity the TMSI, which was never before transmitted un-encrypted over the radio interface;
- to allow for contention resolution.
- optionally, in the CM SERVICE REQUEST message to inform the network of the priority level associated with the call.

Contention resolution provides a resolution process when more than one MS try to seize a channel allocated during the immediate assignment procedure (because they happened to use the same random reference at the same time during random access). This is achieved by the network including in a L2 UA frame the same information field as that one received in the L2 SABM frame to which the UA frame responds. By comparing the two information fields the MS can verify whether it was the originator of the L2 establishment, because the service request contains the mobile identity.

```
Mobile Station                 Network

          SABM(service request)
       -------------------------->

            UA(service request)
        <-------------------------
```

Figure 7.4/GSM 04.08 Service request and contention resolution

7.1.4 Authentication

The purpose of authentication is to validate the identity provided by the MS . It is initiated by the network. The authentication procedure also provides the MS with information from which a new ciphering key can be derived. The network decides whether or not to use authentication. This may depend on the context.

```
Mobile Station                Network

         AUTHentication REQuest
      <--------------------------
        AUTHentication  RESponse
      --------------------------->
```

Figure 7.5/GSM 04.08 Authentication

7.1.5 Ciphering mode setting

Ciphering mode setting is initiated by the network. Its purpose is to instruct the MS whether or not to use ciphering and which algorithm to use.

Where ciphering is used, this procedure synchronizes the start of ciphering at the MS and in the network.

```
Mobile Station                  Network

                CIPHer MODE CoMmanD
              <----------------------

               CIPHer MODe COMplete
             ----------------------->
```

Figure 7.6/GSM 04.08 Ciphering mode setting

7.1.6 Transaction phase

A variety of elementary procedures described in sections 3 to 5 may be performed during the transaction phase. In this section, only the channel mode modify procedure is characterized.

7.1.6.1 Channel mode modify

The channel mode modify procedure may be used when a traffic channel has been assigned e.g.:

- during the in-call modification procedure in order that the channel mode of the TCH be changed to that one requested by call control;

- during call establishment with very early assignment in order that the channel mode of the TCH be changed from signalling only to the mode requested by call control;

- during the active phase of a data call in order that the speed of the data transmission be changed.

The channel mode modify procedure is initiated by the network sending a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message and completed by the MS changing the mode of the TCH and sending back a CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message.

```
Mobile Station                         Network

              CHANNEL MODE MODIFY
     <------------------------------------

        CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE
    ------------------------------------->
```

Figure 7.7/GSM 04.08 Channel mode change

7.1.7 Channel release

Once the transaction phase has been completed, the channel is released by the channel release procedure. The data link layer is released explicitly as described in GSM 04.06. After the channel release is completed, the radio resources which were in use may be reallocated by the network.

```
Mobile Station          Network

        CHANNEL RELEASE
    <-----------------------
```

Figure 7.8/GSM 04.08 Channel release

7.2 Abnormal cases

Abnormal cases are not described in the examples of section 7. They may arise from:

a) failure at a lower layer (e.g. loss of radio connection);
b) failure of an elementary procedure;
c) errors in an elementary procedure.

7.3 Selected examples

The following examples are considered:

- location updating

- mobile originating call establishment
    a) without OACSU (early assignment)
    b) with OACSU
    c) with very early assignment

- mobile terminating call establishment
    a) without OACSU (early assignment)
    b) with OACSU

- call clearing:
    a) network initiated
    b) mobile initiated

- DTMF protocol control.

- handover:
    a) between finely synchronized cells
    b) between non-synchronized cells
    c) handover failure, where reconnection of the old channel is possible

- in-call modification

- call re-establishment

7.3.1 Location updating

The location updating procedure is always initiated by the MS e.g. when it finds itself in a different location area from the one in which it was registered before. The cases where the procedure is triggered are described in section 4.

The procedure is shown in figure 7.9/GSM 04.08. The network may decide whether to allocate a new TMSI during location updating, and this option is reflected in this example.

The MS initiates immediate assignment, service request using the LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message, and contention resolution.

The network requires authentication (this again is an option).

As the network intends to allocate a new TMSI, it should activate ciphering. The network includes the new TMSI in the LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message (it could also use the explicit TMSI reallocation procedure, see section 4). The MS sends a TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message to the network to acknowledge the receipt of the new TMSI. Upon receipt of the TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message the network initiates the channel release if no further transactions are scheduled.

```
     Mobile Station                    Network

          CHANNEL REQUEST                          RR connection
     ---------------------------------------->     establishment
                                                   (MO)

          IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT
     <---------------------------------------

          LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST
     ----------------------------------------->    Service request



          AUTHENTICATION REQUEST
     <----------------------------------------     Authentication

          AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
     ----------------------------------------->

          CIPHER MODE COMMAND
     <----------------------------------------     Ciphering mode
                                                    setting
          CIPHER MODE COMPLETE
     ------------------------------------------>

          LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT
     <----------------------------------------

          TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE
     ---------------------------------------->

          CHANNEL RELEASE                           RR connection
     <----------------------------------------      release
```

Figure 7.9/GSM 04.08 Location updating: successful case

7.3.2 Mobile originating call establishment

The MS initiates immediate assignment, service request using the CM SERVICE REQUEST message, and contention resolution. The network may initiate authentication and may start the ciphering mode setting.

After sending the CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message, the MS initiates call establishment by sending the SETUP message to the network. The network answers with a CALL PROCEEDING message.

a) Non-OACSU option (early assignment)
With this option the network allocates a traffic channel to the MS before it initiates call establishment in the fixed network.

If call queuing is applied, it may cause variable delay in the traffic channel assignment.

When user alerting has been initiated at the called side, an ALERTING message is sent to the MS. The network may optionally instruct the MS to attach the user connection at this stage of the call, by means of the progress indicator information element set to the value #1 or #8(if the ringing tone will be sent by the remote end) in the ALERTING message. In that case, an alerting ringing tone has to be generated by the network.

NOTE: The speech codec is transparent for supervisory tones.

A CONNECT message and its acknowledgement CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE complete the call establishment when the called party has answered.

The mobile originating call setup with early assignment is shown in figure 7.10a/GSM 04.08.

b) OACSU option (late assignment)

The network determines when the traffic channel is to be assigned. The assignment may be performed at any time after call establishment has been initiated in the fixed network. In the following the case is considered where the network will only allocate a traffic channel after the called party has answered the call (late assignment).

As in a) an ALERTING message is sent to the MS when user alerting has been initiated at the called side. If the ringing tone is needed, it has to be generated locally at the MS as no traffic channel is allocated. When the called party has answered, the network will initiate the channel assignment procedure in order to allocate a traffic channel to the MS. If call queuing is applied, it may cause variable delay in the traffic channel assignment. Once the channel assignment has been completed the network will send a CONNECT message to the MS. The MS attaches then the user connection. The CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message will complete the call setup.

The mobile originating call setup with late assignment is shown in figure 7.10b/GSM 04.08.

c) Very early assignment

The network assigns the traffic channel at the earliest possible moment, i.e. in the immediate assignment procedure. The mode of the traffic channel is changed from signalling only to the mode necessary for the call by means of the channel mode change procedure. An appropriate moment for that change is after the network has sent the CALL PROCEEDING message, when the call is established towards the called user.

With this option, call queuing is never applied.

The further establishment of the call is as in a).

The mobile originating call setup with very early assignment is shown in figure 7.10c/GSM 04.08.

```
Mobile Station              Network

 ┌                                  ┐
         CHANNEL REQUEST                RR connection
    -------------------------->         establishment
       IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT             (MO)
    <-------------------------
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
       CM SERVICE REQUEST
    -------------------------->         Service request
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
      AUTHENTICATION REQUEST            Authentication
    <--------------------------
      AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
    --------------------------->
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
       CIPHER MODE COMMAND
    <--------------------------         Ciphering
       CIPHER MODE COMPLETE             mode setting
    --------------------------->
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
             SETUP
    --------------------------->        Call initiation
         CALL PROCEEDING
    <--------------------------
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
        ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
    <---------------------------        Assignment of
        ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE             a traffic
    --------------------------->        channel
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
             ALERTING
    <---------------------------        User alerting
 └                                  ┘
 ┌                                  ┐
             CONNECT
    <---------------------------        Call accepted
        CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
    --------------------------->
 └                                  ┘
```

Figure 7.10a/GSM 04.08
Mobile originating call establishment without OACSU (early assignment)

```
Mobile Station            Network

          CHANNEL REQUEST
     -------------------------->      RR connection
        IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT          establishment
     <-------------------------       (MO)

                                      Service indication
         CM SERVICE REQUEST
     -------------------------->


       AUTHENTICATION REQUEST         Authentication
     <--------------------------
       AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
     --------------------------->

         CIPHER MODE COMMAND
     <--------------------------      Ciphering
         CIPHER MODE COMPLETE         mode setting
     --------------------------->

                SETUP
     --------------------------->     Call initiation
          CALL PROCEEDING
     <--------------------------

              ALERTING
     <---------------------------     User alerting

         ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
     <--------------------------      Assignment of
         ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE          a traffic
     --------------------------->     channel

               CONNECT
     <---------------------------     Call accepted
         CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
     --------------------------->
```

Figure 7.10b/GSM 04.08
Mobile originating call establishment with OACSU (late assignment)

```
Mobile Station              Network

        CHANNEL REQUEST                 RR connection
   -------------------------->          establishment
     IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT(TCH)          (MO)
   <--------------------------

     CM SERVICE REQUEST
   -------------------------->          Service request

     AUTHentication REQuest             Authentication
   <---------------------------
     AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
   --------------------------->

       CIPHER MODE COMMAND
   <---------------------------         Ciphering
      CIPHer MODe COMplete              mode setting
   ---------------------------->

             SETUP
   --------------------------->         Call initiation
        CALL PROCeeding
   <---------------------------

      CHANNEL MODE MODIFY
   <----------------------------        Transmission
 CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE        mode
   ---------------------------->        change

            ALERTING
   <-----------------------------       User alerting

        CONNect
   <----------------------------        Call accepted
      CONNect ACKnowledge
   --------------------------->
```

Figure 7.10c/GSM 04.08
Mobile originating call establishment with very early assignment

7.3.3 Mobile terminating call establishment

Mobile terminating call establishment is initiated by the network sending a PAGING REQUEST message (see figure 7.11a/GSM 04.08). Upon receiving this message the MS initiates the immediate assignment procedure and responds to the network by sending the PAGING RESPONSE message within a layer 2 SABM frame. The network returns a layer 2 UA frame containing the same information field as was sent in the SABM frame.

Authentication and ciphering are treated by the network in the same way as defined for the mobile originating call establishment (section 7.3.2). After ciphering has been started, the network sends a SETUP message to the MS. The capability of the MS (at that time) to accept the call is confirmed when the MS returns a CALL CONFIRMED message to the network.

a) Non-OACSU option (early assignment)

With this option the network initiates the assignment of a traffic channel upon receiving the CALL CONFIRMED message.

The signal IE is not included in the SETUP message, therefore user alerting is initiated only after a traffic channel has been allocated. An ALERTING message will be sent to the network.

When the called user answers, the MS sends a CONNECT message to the network. Upon receiving the CONNECT message the network completes the through connection of the communication path and sends a CONNECT ACK message to the MS.

b) OACSU option (late assignment)

In that option, the signalling IE is included in the SETUP message. Consequently, user alerting is initiated as soon as the MS has accepted the call.

The network determines when the traffic channel is to be assigned. The assignment may be performed at any time after user alerting has been initiated. In the following the case is considered where the network will only allocate a traffic channel to the MS after having received the CONNECT message sent from the MS (see figure 7.11b).

Upon receiving the ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message from the MS, the network completes the through connection of the communication path and sends a CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message to the MS.

```
Mobile Station                Network

          PAGING  REQUEST
     <--------------------------
          CHANNEL REQUEST              RR connection
     -------------------------->       establishment
       IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT            (MT)
     <-------------------------

          PAGING RESPONSE
     -------------------------->       Service request

      AUTHENTICATION REQUEST           Authentication
     <--------------------------
      AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
     --------------------------->

       CIPHer MODe COMMAND
     <--------------------------       Ciphering
       CIPHER MODE COMPLETE            mode setting
     --------------------------->

               SETUP
     <---------------------------      Call initiation
          CALL CONFIRMED
     --------------------------->

        ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
     <---------------------------      Assignment of
        ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE            a traffic
     --------------------------->      channel

             ALERTING
      -------------------------->      User alerting
                                       information

             CONNECT
     --------------------------->      Call accepted
        CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
     <---------------------------
```

Figure 7.11a/GSM 04.08 - Mobile terminating call establishment without OACSU (early assignment)

```
Mobile Station               Network

        PAGING  REQUEST
    <--------------------------
        CHANNEL REQUEST              RR connection
    -------------------------->      establishment
      IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT           (MT)
    <-------------------------

        PAGING RESPONSE
    -------------------------->      Service request

      AUTHENTICATION REQUEST         Authentication
    <--------------------------
      AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
    --------------------------->

       CIPHer MODe COMMAND
    <--------------------------      Ciphering
       CIPHER MODE COMPLETE          mode setting
    --------------------------->

             SETUP
    <---------------------------     Call initiation
         CALL CONFIRMED
    --------------------------->

            ALERTING
     -------------------------->     User alerting
                                     information
            CONNECT
     -------------------------->

       ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
    <---------------------------     Assignment of
       ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE           a traffic
    --------------------------->     channel

       CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
    <---------------------------
```

Figure 7.11b/GSM 04.08 - Mobile terminating call establishment with OACSU (late assignment)

7.3.4 Call clearing

a) initiated by the network

The network initiates the clearing of a call by sending a DISCONNECT message to the MS (see also section 5.4.4).

Upon receiving the DISCONNECT message from the network the MS sends a RELEASE message to the network.

Upon receiving the RELEASE message from the MS, the network sends a RELEASE COMPLETE to the MS and, if the traffic channel is longer needed (e.g. last activity on the traffic channel), performs the channel release procedure as described in section 7.1.7.

Upon receiving the RELEASE COMPLETE message and if the cleared call was the last activity on the traffic channel, the MS waits for the release of the channel which is always initiated by the network.

Call clearing initiated by the network is shown in figure 7.12a.

b) initiated by the MS

The MS initiates the clearing of a call by sending a DISCONNECT message to the network (see also section 5.4.3).

Upon receiving the DISCONNECT message from the MS the network sends a RELEASE message to the MS.

Upon receiving the RELEASE message from the network, the MS sends a RELEASE COMPLETE to the network, which, if the traffic channel is no longer needed (e.g. last activity on the traffic channel), performs the channel release procedure as described in section 7.1.6.

Call clearing initiated by the MS is shown in figure 7.12b.

```
Mobile Station           Network

        DISCONNECT
 <------------------------     Call clearing
       RELEASE
  ----------------------->
     RELEASE COMPLETE
  <-----------------------

     CHANNEL RELEASE           RR connection
 <------------------------     release
```

a) Call clearing initiated by the network

```
Mobile Station           Network

        DISCONNECT
 ----------------------->      Call clearing
       RELEASE
 <------------------------
     RELEASE COMPLETE
  ----------------------->

     CHANNEL RELEASE           RR connection
 <------------------------     release
```

b) Call clearing initiated by the MS

Figure 7.12/GSM 04.08
Call clearing

7.3.5 DTMF protocol control

Figure 7.13 shows the structured procedure for DTMF protocol control.

```
Mobile Station                Network

                                    active call

              .

         START DTMF                 DTMF generation
 ------------------------------>    started
       START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
 <-----------------------------

         STOP DTMF                  DTMF generation stopped
 ------------------------------->
     STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
 <-------------------------------
                :
                :
                                     active call
```

Figure 7.13/GSM 04.08 DTMF protocol control

7.3.6 Handover

Figure 7.14 shows the structured procedure for handover to a finely synchronized cell, successful case.

Figure 7.15 shows the structured procedure for handover to a non-synchronized cell, successful case.

Figure 7.16 shows the structured procedure for handover failure, and reconnection to the old traffic channel.

```
  Mobile Station          Network

 ┌                          ┐
 |                          |  RR connection established
 └                          ┘
 ┌                          ┐  handover
 |    HANDOVER COMMAND      |      old channel,
 | <-------------------------|      old cell
-|- - - - - - - - - - - - - -|-- - - - - - - - - -
 |    HANDOVER ACCESS       |      new channel,
 |  ------------------------>      new cell
 |                          |
 |    HANDOVER ACCESS       |
 |  ------------------------>
 |                          |
 |    HANDOVER ACCESS       |
 |  ------------------------>
 |                          |
 |    HANDOVER ACCESS       |
 |  ------------------------>
 |                          |
 |    HANDOVER COMPLETE     |
 |  ------------------------>
 └                          ┘
```

Figure 7.14/GSM 04.08
Handover to a finely synchronized cell, successful case

```
  Mobile Station        Network

 ┌                          ┐
 │                          │  RR connection established
 └                          ┘
 ┌                          ┐  handover
 │    HANDOVER COMMAND      │      old channel,
 │ <------------------------│      old cell
-│- - - - - - - - - - - - - │-- - - - - - - - - -
 │    HANDOVER ACCESS       │      new channel,
 │  ------------------------>      new cell
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 │    HANDOVER ACCESS       │      new channel,
 │  ------------------------>      new cell
 │                          │
 │   PHYSICAL INFORMATION   │
 │ <-----------------------  │
 │    HANDOVER COMPLETE     │
 │  ------------------------>
 └                          ┘
 ┌                          ┐
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 └                          ┘
```

Figure 7.15/GSM 04.08
Handover to a non-synchronized cell, successful case

```
  Mobile Station        Network

 ┌                          ┐
 │                          │  RR connection established
 └                          ┘
 ┌                          ┐  handover
 │   HANDOVER COMMAND       │     old channel,
 │ <------------------------│     old cell
-│- - - - - - - - - - - - - │- - - - - - - -
 │     T3124 expiry or      │     new channel,
 │   lower layer failure    │     new cell
-│- - - - - - - - - - - - - │- - - - - - - - -
 │   HANDOVER FAILURE       │     old channel,
 │  ------------------------>     old cell
 └                          ┘
 ┌                          ┐
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 │            .             │
 └                          ┘
```

Figure 7.16/GSM 04.08
Handover failure, reconnection to the old traffic channel

7.3.7 In-call modification

Figure 7.17/GSM 04.08 shows the structured procedure for in-call modification.

```
 Mobile Station        Network

                                        active call

              .

             MODIFY
 ------------------------------->        in-call modification
                                         e.g. from speech
                                         to data

                                        channel
                                        mode modify


      MODIFY COMPLETE
 <------------------------------


                                        active call
```

Figure 7.17/GSM 04.08
In-call modification

7.3.8 Call re-establishment

Figure 7.18/GSM 04.08 shows the structured procedure for call re-establishment.

```
 Mobile Station           Network

┌                                 ┐  active call
└                                 ┘
--------------------------------------  radio link failure
┌       CHANNEL REQUEST           ┐  RR connection
    -------------------------->      establishment
      IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT           (MO)
    <-------------------------
└                                 ┘
┌   CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST    ┐
    -------------------------->      Service request
└                                 ┘
┌     CIPHer MODe COMMAND         ┐
    <--------------------------      Ciphering
      CIPHER MODE COMPLETE           mode setting
    -------------------------->
└                                 ┘
┌     ASSIGNMENT COMMAND          ┐
    <--------------------------      assignment of
      ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE            a traffic channel
    -------------------------->
└                                 ┘
┌                                 ┐  active call
└                                 ┘
```

Figure 7.18/GSM 04.08
Call re-establishment

8 Handling of unknown, unforeseen, and erroneous protocol data

8.1 General

The procedures specified in GSM 04.08 and call-related supplementary service handling in GSM 04.10 apply to those messages which pass the checks described in this section.

This section also specifies procedures for the handling of unknown, unforeseen, and erroneous protocol data by the receiving entity. These procedures are called "error handling procedures", but in addition to providing recovery mechanisms for error situations they define a compatibility mechanism for future extensions of the protocols.

Error handling concerning the value part of the Facility IE and of the SS Version Indicator IE are not in the scope of this technical specification. It is defined in GSM 04.10 and the GSM 04.8x series.

Subsections 8.1 to 8.8 shall be applied in order of precedence.

Most error handling procedures are mandatory for the MS.

Detailed error handling procedures in the network are implementation dependent and may vary from PLMN to PLMN. However, when extensions of this protocol are developed, networks will be assumed to have the error handling that is indicated in this section as mandatory ("shall") and that is indicated as strongly recommended ("should"). Sections 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5 and 8.7.2 do not apply to the error handling in the network applied to the receipt of initial layer 3 message: If the network diagnoses an error described in one of these sections in the initial layer 3 message received from the MS, it shall either:

- try to recognize the classmark and then take further implementation dependent actions; or
- release the RR-connection.

Also, the error handling of the network is only considered as mandatory or strongly recommended when certain thresholds for errors are not reached during a dedicated connection.

In this section the following terminology is used:

- An IE is defined to be syntactically incorrect in a message if it contains at least one value defined as "reserved" in section 10, or if its value part violates rules of section 10. However it is not a syntactical error that a type 4 IE specifies in its length indicator a greater length than defined in section 10.

- A message is defined to have semantically incorrect contents if it contains information which, possibly dependant on the state of the receiver, is in contradiction to the resources of the receiver and/or to the procedural part (i.e. sections 3, 4, 5) of GSM 04.08, GSM 04.10, or relevant GSM 04.8X series.

8.2 Message too short

When a message is received that is too short to contain a complete message type information element, that message shall be ignored, cf. GSM 04.07.

8.3 Unknown or unforeseen transaction identifier

The MS and network shall ignore a call control message received with TI value "111". For a call control message received with TI different from "111", the following procedures shall apply:

a) Whenever any call control message except EMERGENCY SETUP, SETUP or RELEASE COMPLETE is received specifying a transaction identifier which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, the receiving entity shall send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause #81 "invalid transaction identifier value" using the received transaction identifier value and remain in the Null state.

b) When a RELEASE COMPLETE message is received specifying a transaction identifier which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, the MM connection associated with that transaction identifier shall be released.

c) When an EMERGENCY SETUP message or a SETUP message is received specifying a transaction identifier which is not recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, and with a transaction identifier flag incorrectly set to "1", this message shall be ignored.

d) When a SETUP message is received by the MS specifying a transaction identifier which is recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, this SETUP message shall be ignored.

e) When an EMERGENCY SETUP message or a SETUP message is received by the network specifying a transaction identifier which is recognized as relating to an active call or to a call in progress, this message need not be treated and the network may perform other actions.

8.4 Unknown or unforeseen message type

If a MS receives a message with message type not defined for the PD or not implemented by the receiver in unacknowledged mode, it shall ignore the message.

If a MS receives a message with message type not defined for the PD or not implemented by the receiver in acknowledged mode, it shall return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause # 97 "message type non-existent or not implemented".

If the network receives an RR message or MM message with message type not defined for the PD or not implemented by the receiver in a protocol state where reception of an unsolicited message with the given PD from the MS is not foreseen in the protocol, the network actions are implementation dependent. Otherwise, if the network receives a message with message type not defined for the PD or not implemented by the receiver, it shall ignore the message except that it should return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause #97 "message type non-existent or not implemented".

NOTE: A message type not defined for the PD in the given direction is regarded by the receiver as a message type not defined for the PD, see GSM 04.07.

If the MS receives a message not compatible with the protocol state, the MS shall ignore the message except for the fact that, if an RR connection exists, it returns a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause #98 "Message type not compatible with protocol state".

If the network receives a message not compatible with the protocol state, the network actions are implementation dependent.

8.5 Non-semantical mandatory information element errors

When on receipt of a message,

- an "imperative message part" error or
- a "missing mandatory IE" error

is diagnosed or when a message containing:

- a syntactically incorrect mandatory IE or
- an IE unknown in the message, but encoded as "comprehension required" (see section 10.5) or
- an out of sequence IE encoded as "comprehension required" (see section 10.5),

is received,

- the MS shall proceed as follows:

  When the message is not one of the messages listed in sections 8.5.1, 8.5.2, and 8.5.3, the MS shall ignore the message except for the fact that, if an RR connection exists, it shall return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause # 96 "invalid mandatory information".

- the network shall proceed as follows:

  When the message is not one of the message listed in section 8.5.3 b), c) or e), the network shall either

  - try to treat the message (the exact further actions are implementation dependent), or
  - ignore the message except that it should return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause # 96 "invalid mandatory information".

8.5.1 Radio resource management

For the MS the following procedures shall apply:

a) If the message is a CHANNEL RELEASE message, the actions taken shall be the same as specified in 3.5 "RR connection release".

b) If the message is a PARTIAL RELEASE message, the reactions of the MS are for further study.

8.5.2 Mobility management

No exceptional cases are described for mobility management messages.

8.5.3 Call control

a) If the message is a SETUP, EMERGENCY SETUP or a RELEASE message, a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause # 96 "invalid mandatory information" shall be returned.

b) If the message is a DISCONNECT message, a RELEASE message shall be returned with cause value # 96 "invalid mandatory information" and section 5.4. "call clearing" applies as normal.

c) If the message is a RELEASE COMPLETE message, it shall be treated as a normal RELEASE COMPLETE message.

d) If the message is a HOLD REJECT or RETRIEVE REJECT message, it shall be treated as a normal HOLD REJECT or RETRIEVE REJECT message.

e) If the message is a STATUS message and received by the network, a RELEASE COMPLETE message may be returned with cause value # 96 "invalid mandatory information".

8.6 Unknown and unforeseen IEs in the non-imperative message part

8.6.1 IEIs unknown in the message

The MS shall ignore all IEs unknown in a message which are not encoded as "comprehension required".

The network shall take the same approach.

8.6.2 Out of sequence IEs

The MS shall ignore all out of sequence IEs in a message which are not encoded as "comprehension required".

The network should take the same approach.

8.6.3 Repeated IEs

If an information element with format T, TV, or TLV is repeated in a message in which repetition of the information element is not specified in section 9 of this technical specification, only the contents of the information element appearing first shall be handled and all subsequent repetitions of the information element shall be ignored. When repetition of information elements is specified, only the contents of specified repeated information elements shall be handled. If the limit on repetition of information elements is exceeded, the contents of information elements appearing first up to the limit of repetitions shall be handled and all subsequent repetitions of the information element shall be ignored.

The network should follow the same procedures.

8.7 Non-imperative message part errors

This category includes:

- syntactically incorrect optional IEs;
- conditional IE errors.

8.7.1 Syntactically incorrect optional IEs

The MS shall treat all optional IEs that are syntactically incorrect in a message as not present in the message.

The network shall take the same approach.

8.7.2 Conditional IE errors

When the MS upon receipt of a message diagnoses a "missing conditional IE" error or an "unexpected conditional IE" error or when it receives a message containing at least one syntactically incorrect conditional IE, it shall ignore the message except for the fact that, if an RR connection exists, it shall return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS, or MM STATUS depending on the PD) with cause value # 100 "conditional IE error".

When the network receives a message and diagnose a "missing conditional IE" error or an "unexpected conditional IE" error or when it receives a message containing at least one syntactically incorrect conditional IE, the network shall either

- try to treat the message (the exact further actions are implementation dependent), or
- ignore the message except that it should return a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS or MM STATUS depending on the protocol discriminator) with cause # 100 "conditional IE error".

8.8 Messages with semantically incorrect contents

When a message with semantically incorrect contents is received, the foreseen reactions of the procedural part of GSM 04.08 (i.e. of sections 3, 4, 5) are performed. If however no such reactions are specified, the MS shall ignore the message except for the fact that, if an RR connection exists, it returns a status message (STATUS, RR STATUS, or MM STATUS depending on the PD) with cause value # 95 "semantically incorrect message".

The network should follow the same procedure except that a status message is not normally transmitted.

Semantic checking of the Facility information element value part (defined in GSM 04.80) is the subject of the technical specifications GSM 04.10 and the GSM 04.8x series.

9 Message functional definitions and contents

This section defines the structure of the messages of those layer 3 protocols defined in GSM 04.08. These are standard L3 messages as defined in GSM 04.07 with the exception of those sent on the SCH, RACH, and the HANDOVER ACCESS message.

Each definition given in the present section includes:

a) a brief description of the message direction and use, including whether the message has:

   1. Local significance, i.e. relevant only on the originating or terminating access;

   2. Access significance, i.e. relevant in the originating and terminating access, but not in the network;

   3. Dual significance, i.e. relevant in either the originating or terminating access and in the network; or

   4. Global significance, i.e. relevant in the originating and terminating access and in the network.

b) a table listing the information elements known in the message and their order of their appearance in the message. In messages for circuit-switched call control also a *shift* information element shall be considered as known even if not included in the table. All information elements that may be repeated are explicitly indicated. (V and LV formatted IEs, which compose the imperative part of the message, occur before T, TV, and TLV formatted IEs which compose the non-imperative part of the message, cf. GSM 04.07.) In a (maximal) sequence of consecutive information elements with half octet length, the first information element with half octet length occupies bits 1 to 4 of octet N, the second bits 5 to 8 of octet N, the third bits 1 to 4 of octet N+1 etc. Such a sequence always has an even number of elements.

   For each information element the table indicates:

   1. the information element identifier, in hexadecimal notation, if the IE has format T, TV, or TLV. Usually, there is a default IEI for an information element type; default IEIs of different IE types of the same protocol are different. If the IEI has half octet length, it is specified by a notation representing the IEI as a hexadecimal digit followed by a "-" (example: B-).

   2. the name of the information element (which may give an idea of the semantics of the element). The name of the information element (usually written in italics) followed by "IE" or "information element" is used in GSM 04.08 as reference to the information element within a message.

   3. the name of the type of the information element (which indicates the coding of the value part of the IE), and generally, the referenced subsection of section 10 of GSM 04.08 describing the value part of the information element.

   4. the presence requirement indication (M, C, or O) for the IE as defined in GSM 04.07.

   5. The format of the information element (T, V, TV, LV, TLV) as defined in GSM 04.07.

   6. The length of the information element (or permissible range of lengths), in octets, in the message, where "?" means that the maximum length of the IE is only constrained by link layer protocol, and in the case of the Facility IE by possible further conditions specified in GSM 04.10. This indication is non-normative.

c) subsections specifying, where appropriate, conditions for IEs with presence requirement C or O in the relevant message which together with other conditions specified in GSM 04.08 define when the information elements shall be included or not, what non-presence of such IEs means, and - for IEs with presence requirement C - the static conditions for presence and/or non-presence of the IEs (cf. GSM 04.07).

9.1 Messages for Radio Resources management

Table 9.1/GSM 04.08 summarizes the messages for Radio Resources management.

TABLE 9.1/GSM 04.08: Messages for Radio Resources management

Channel establishment messages:	Reference
ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT	9.1.1
IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT	9.1.18
IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED	9.1.19
IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT	9.1.20
Ciphering messages:	Reference
CIPHERING MODE COMMAND	9.1.9
CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE	9.1.10
Handover messages:	Reference
ASSIGNMENT COMMAND	9.1.2
ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE	9.1.3
ASSIGNMENT FAILURE	9.1.4
HANDOVER ACCESS	9.1.14
HANDOVER COMMAND	9.1.15
HANDOVER COMPLETE	9.1.16
HANDOVER FAILURE	9.1.17
PHYSICAL INFORMATION	9.1.28
Channel release messages:	Reference
CHANNEL RELEASE	9.1.7
PARTIAL RELEASE	9.1.26
PARTIAL RELEASE COMPLETE	9.1.27
Paging messages:	Reference
PAGING REQUEST TYPE 1	9.1.22
PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2	9.1.23
PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3	9.1.24
PAGING RESPONSE	9.1.25

TABLE 9.1/GSM 04.08: Messages for Radio Resources management (continued)

System information messages:	Reference
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 1	9.1.31
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2	9.1.32
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis	9.1.33
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2ter	9.1.34
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3	9.1.35
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 4	9.1.36
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5	9.1.37
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis	9.1.38
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5ter	9.1.39
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6	9.1.40
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 7	9.1.41
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 8	9.1.42
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9	9.1.43
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10	9.1.44
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10bis	9.1.45
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11	9.1.46
SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12	9.1.47
Specific messages for VBS/VGCS:	
NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1	9.1.A1
NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 2	9.1.A2
NOTIFICATION/FACCH	9.1.A3
NOTIFICATION/SACCH	9.1.A4
UPLINK BUSY	9.1.A5
UPLINK FREE	9.1.A6
UPLINK RELEASE	9.1.A7
UPLINK ACCESS	9.1.A8
VGCS UPLINK GRANT	9.1.A9
TALKER INDICATION	9.1.A10
NOTIFICATION RESPONSE	9.1.A11
Miscellaneous messages:	Reference
CHANNEL MODE MODIFY	9.1.5
CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE	9.1.6
CHANNEL REQUEST	9.1.8
CLASSMARK CHANGE	9.1.11
CLASSMARK ENQUIRY	9.1.12
FREQUENCY REDEFINITION	9.1.13
MEASUREMENT REPORT	9.1.21
SYNCHRONIZATION CHANNEL INFORMATION	9.1.30
RR STATUS	9.1.29

9.1.1 Additional assignment

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to allocate an additional dedicated channel while keeping the previously allocated channels. See table 9.2/GSM 04.08.

Message type: ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.2/GSM 04.08: ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Additional Assignment Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
72	Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-10
7C	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3

9.1.1.1 Mobile Allocation

This information element shall appear if the *Channel Description* information element indicates frequency hopping.

If the *Channel Description* IE does not indicate frequency hopping and the information element is present it shall be considered as an IE unnecessary in the message.

9.1.1.2 Starting Time

This information element appears in particular if e.g., a change of frequency is planned.

9.1.2 Assignment command

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to change the channel configuration to another independent dedicated channel configuration, when no timing adjustment is needed. See table 9.3/GSM 04.08

Message type: ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.3/GSM 04.08: ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Assignment command Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Description of the First Channel, after time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Power Command	Power Command 10.5.2.28	M	V	1
05	Frequency List, after time	Frequency List 10.5.2.13	C	TLV	4-132
62	Cell Channel Description	Cell Channel Description 10.5.2.1b	O	TV	17
63	Mode of the First Channel	Channel Mode 10.5.2.6	O	TV	2
64	Description of the Second Channel, after time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
66	Mode of the Second Channel	Channel Mode 2 10.5.2.7	O	TV	2
72	Mobile Allocation, after time	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-10
7C	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3
19	Frequency List, before time	Frequency List 10.5.2.13	C	TLV	4-132
1C	Description of the First Channel, before time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4

Table 9.3/GSM 04.08 (continued): ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message content

1D	Description of the Second Channel, before time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
1E	Frequency channel sequence before time	Frequency channel sequence 10.5.2.12	C	TV	10
21	Mobile Allocation, before time	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-10
9-	Cipher Mode Setting	Cipher Mode Setting 10.5.2.9	O	TV	1
??	VGCS target mode Indication	VGCS target mode Indication 10.5.2.26f	O	T	2

9.1.2.1 Mode of the First Channel

If this information element is not present the channel mode of the previously allocated channel is assumed.

9.1.2.2 Description of the Second Channel

These information elements appear in the case of an assignment occurring if the MS carries two connections (on two dedicated channels, e.g. TCH/H + TCH/H).

The connection using the channel previously defined in the *Description of the First Channel* IEs of an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND or HANDOVER COMMAND message shall use the channel defined in the *Description of the First Channel* IEs of the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message defining the new configuration.

The channel described in the *Description of the First Channel* IEs carries the main DCCH. The SACCH used is the one associated with that channel.

9.1.2.3 Mode of the Second Channel

If no *Description of the Second Channel* IE is present but the information element is present it shall be considered as an IE unnecessary in the message.

This information element appears at least when the channel mode is changed for the channel defined in the second channel description information elements.

9.1.2.4 Mobile Allocation and Frequency List, after the starting time

If at least one of the channel descriptions for the starting time indicates frequency hopping, one and only one of the following information elements shall be present and apply to all assigned channels

- *Mobile Allocation, after time*
- *Frequency List, after time*.

If neither of the Channel Description IEs for after time indicate frequency hopping, if decoding of Channel Description IEs for before time does not require a frequency list for after time (see next section), and one or both of the two information elements are present they shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

9.1.2.5 Starting Time

The *starting time* information element is included when the network wants the MS to change the frequency parameters of the channels more or less at the moment a change of channel occurs. In this case a number of information elements may be included to give the frequency parameters to be used before the starting time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and none of the information elements referring to before the starting time are present, the MS waits and accesses the channels at the indicated time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and at least one of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, the MS does not wait for the indicated time and accesses the channel using the frequency parameters for before the starting time.

If the *starting time* information element is not present and at some of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, these information elements shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

If the *description of the first channel, before time* IE is not present, the channel description to apply for before the time, if needed, is given by the *description of the first channel, after time* IE.

If the *description of the second channel, after time* IE is present, the *description of the second channel, before time* IE not present, and a description of the configuration for before the time needed, the channel configuration before the starting time is nevertheless of two traffic channels, and the channel description to apply to the second channel before the starting time is given by the *description of the second channel, after time* IE.

If the *starting time* IE is present and at least one of the channel descriptions for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, one and only one of the following information elements may be present and applies before the starting time to all assigned channels

- *Mobile Allocation, before time* IE;
- *Frequency list, before time* IE;
- *Frequency channel sequence, before time* IE.

If the *starting time* IE is present and at least one of the channel descriptions for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, and none of the above mentioned IE is present, a frequency list for after the starting time must be present (see 9.1.2.4), and this list applies also for the channels before the starting time.

9.1.2.6 Reference cell frequency list

If any of the *mobile allocation* information elements is present, then the network must ensure that either the MS has received in a previous message the proper reference cell frequency list (CA), or that the *cell channel description* IE is present.

If the *cell channel description* IE is present, it is used to decode the *mobile allocation* IEs in the message, as well as in later messages until reception of a new reference cell frequency list or the cell is left.

9.1.2.7 Cell Channel Description

If present, this information element shall be used to decode the *Mobile Allocation* IE in the same message and in subsequent messages.

9.1.2.8 Cipher Mode Setting

This information element appears when the ciphering mode is changed after the MS has switched to the assigned channel.

If this information element is omitted, the mode of ciphering is not changed after the MS has switched to the assigned channel.

9.1.2.9 VGCS target mode Indication

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:

This information element is identified as "comprehension required".

This IE indicates which mode is to be used on the new channel (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the mode shall be the same as on the previous channel.

The IE also indicates the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as on the previous channel.

NOTE: The MS shall not treat it as a syntactical error if this IE is present and the channel mode is not speech.

9.1.3 Assignment complete

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS has established the main signalling link successfully. See table 9.4/GSM 04.08.

Message type: ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.4/GSM 04.08: ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Assignment Complete Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1

9.1.4 Assignment failure

This message is sent on the main DCCH on the old channel from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS has failed to seize the new channel. See table 9.5/GSM 04.08

Message type: ASSIGNMENT FAILURE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.5/GSM 04.08: ASSIGNMENT FAILURE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Assignment Failure Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1

9.1.5 Channel mode modify

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to request the setting of the mode for the indicated channel. See table 9.6/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CHANNEL MODE MODIFY
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.6/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL MODE MODIFY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Channel Mode Modify Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Channel Mode	Channel Mode 10.5.2.6	M	V	1
??	VGCS target mode Indication	VGCS target mode Indication 10.5.2.26f	O	T	2

9.1.5.1 Channel Description

This is sufficient to identify the channel in the case of a TCH/H + TCH/H configuration.

9.1.5.2 VGCS target mode Indication

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:

This information element is identified as "comprehension required"

This IE indicates which RR mode is to be used with the new channel mode (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the RR mode shall be the same as with the previous channel mode.

The IE also indicates the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as with the previous channel mode.

NOTE: The MS shall not treat it as a syntactical error if this IE is present and the channel mode is not speech.

9.1.6 Channel mode modify acknowledge

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the MS to the network to indicate the successful or unsuccessful execution of a channel mode modify request. See table 9.7/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.7/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Channel Mode Modify Acknowledge Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Channel Mode	Channel Mode 10.5.2.6	M	V	1

9.1.7 Channel release

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the network to the MS to initiate deactivation of the dedicated channel used. See table 9.8/GSM 04.08

Message type: CHANNEL RELEASE
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.8/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL RELEASE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Channel Release Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1
73	BA Range	BA Range 10.5.2.1	O	TLV	6 - ?
??	Group Channel Description	Group Channel Description 10.5.2.26i	O	TLV	4-13
??	Group Cipher Key Number	Group Cipher Key Number 10.5.1.10	C	TV	1 1/2

9.1.7.1 Channel description and mobile allocation

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

If a CHANNEL RELEASE is send to a MS which is in dedicated mode and which is involved in a voice group call or has responded to a notification to a voice group call or voice broadcast call, a group channel description may be included, describing the voice group call channel or voice broadcast channel to which the MS shall go after the channel release procedure.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this information element and perform a normal channel release.

9.1.7.2 Group Cipher Key Number

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

This IE may be present if the Group channel description IE is provided. The presence of this IE indicates that the MS shall use the Group Cipher Key indicated by the Group Cipher Key Number for deciphering on the VGCS or VBS channel. If this IE is not present, no ciphering is applied on the VGCS or VBS channel.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this information element.

9.1.8 Channel request

This message is sent in random mode on the RACH. It does not follow the basic format. The possible formats are presented directly below, without reference to information fields. The order of bit transmission is defined in GSM 04.04.

The message is only one octet long, coded as shown in figure 9.1/GSM 4.08 and table 9.9/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
ESTABLISHMENT CAUSE						RANDOM REFERENCE		octet 1

FIGURE 9.1/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL REQUEST message content

ESTABLISHMENT CAUSE (octet 1)
This information field indicates the reason for requesting the establishment of a connection. This field has a variable length (from 3 bits up to 6 bits).

RANDOM REFERENCE (octet 1)
This is an unformatted field with variable length (from 5 bits down to 2 bits).

The Channel Request message is coded as follows:
(Random Reference field is filled with "x").

TABLE 9.9/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL REQUEST message content

MS codes bits 8 1	According to Establishment cause:	
101xxxxx	Emergency call	
110xxxxx	Call re-establishment; TCH/F was in use, or TCH/H was in use but the network does not set NECI bit to 1	
011010xx	Call re-establishment; TCH/H was in use and the network sets NECI bit to 1	
011011xx	Call re-establishment; TCH/H + TCH/H was in use and the network sets NECI bit to 1	
100xxxxx 0010xxxx 0011xxxx 0001xxxx	Answer to paging See table 9.9a/GSM 04.08	
111xxxxx	Originating call and TCH/F is needed, or originating call and the network does not set NECI bit to 1, or procedures that can be completed with a SDCCH and the network does not set NECI bit to 1.	note 1
0100xxxx	Originating speech call from dual-rate MS when TCH/H is sufficient and the network sets NECI bit to 1	
0101xxxx	Originating data call from dual-rate MS when TCH/H is sufficient and the network sets NECI bit to 1	
000xxxxx	Location updating and the network does not set NECI bit to 1	
0000xxxx	Location updating and the network sets NECI bit to 1	
0001xxxx	Other procedures which can be completed with an SDCCH and the network sets NECI bit to 1	note 1
01100xxx 0111xxxx	Reserved for future use	note 2

NOTE 1: Examples of these procedures are: IMSI detach, Short Message Service (SMS), Supplementary Service management.

NOTE 2: If such messages are received by a network, an SDCCH may be allocated.

TABLE 9.9a/GSM 04.08: CHANNEL REQUEST message (when answering to paging)

MS Capability / Paging Indication 3)	Full rate only	Dual rate	SDCCH only
Any channel	100xxxxx	100xxxxx	100xxxxx
SDCCH	0001xxxx	0001xxxx	0001xxxx
TCH/F	100xxxxx	0010xxxx	0001xxxx
TCH/H or TCH/F	100xxxxx	0011xxxx	0001xxxx

NOTE 3: The Paging Indication is provided by the Channel Needed IE (or the Channel Needed field) associated with the page which triggered the sending of the CHANNEL REQUEST message.

NOTE 4: In some cases the established connection will be used only to allow a default rejection mechanism to take place (typically the MS will send a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause #88 "incompatible destination" as an answer to the incoming SETUP message).

9.1.9 Ciphering mode command

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the network to the MS to indicate that the network has started deciphering and that enciphering and deciphering shall be started in the MS, or to indicate that ciphering will not be performed. See table 9.10/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CIPHERING MODE COMMAND
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.10/GSM 04.08: CIPHERING MODE COMMAND message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Cipher Mode Command Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Ciphering Mode Setting	Cipher Mode Setting 10.5.2.9	M	V	1/2
	Cipher Response	Cipher Response 10.5.2.10	M	V	1/2

9.1.10 Ciphering mode complete

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the MS to the network to indicate that enciphering and deciphering has been started in the MS. See table 9.11/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.11/GSM 04.08: CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Cipher Mode Complete Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
17	Mobile Equipment Identity	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TLV	3-11

9.1.10.1 Mobile Equipment Identity

This information element is included if and only if the MS shall include its IMEISV (see section 3.4.7). This information element shall only refer to IMEISV.

9.1.11 Classmark change

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the MS to the network to indicate a classmark change or as a response to a classmark enquiry. See table 9.12/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CLASSMARK CHANGE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.12/GSM 04.08: CLASSMARK CHANGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Classmark Change Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	MS Classmark	MS Classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	LV	4
20	Additional Mobile Station Classmark Information	MS Classmark 3 10.5.1.7	C	TLV	3-14

9.1.11.1 Additional MS Classmark Information

This IE shall be included if and only if the CM3 bit in the *MS Classmark* IE is set to "additional MS capabilities are described in the Classmark 3 information element".

9.1.11.2 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 2 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.1.12 Classmark enquiry

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to request classmark information. See table 9.12a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CLASSMARK ENQUIRY
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.12a/GSM 04.08: CLASSMARK ENQUIRY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Classmark Enquiry Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1

9.1.13 Frequency redefinition

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the network to the MS to indicate that the frequencies and the hopping sequence of the allocated channels shall be changed.See table 9.13/GSM 04.08

Message type: FREQUENCY REDEFINITION
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.13/GSM 04.08: FREQUENCY REDEFINITION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Frequency Redefinition Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	M	LV	1-9
	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	M	V	2
62	Cell Channel Description	Cell Channel Description 10.5.2.1b	O	TV	17

9.1.13.1 Cell Channel Description

If it does not appear, the cell channel description is assumed to be unchanged.

9.1.14 Handover access

This message is sent in random mode on the main DCCH during a handover procedure. It does not follow the basic format. The format is presented directly below without reference to information elements. The order of bit transmission is defined in GSM 04.04.

This message is only one octet long, coded as shown in figure 9.2/GSM 04.08 and table 9.14/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
handover reference								octet 1

FIGURE 9.2/GSM 04.08: HANDOVER ACCESS message content

TABLE 9.14/GSM 04.08: HANDOVER ACCESS message content

HANDOVER REFERENCE This is an unformatted 8 bit field. (also described in section 10.5.2.15)

9.1.15 Handover command

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to change the dedicated channel configuration, timing adjustment needed. See table 9.15/GSM 04.08.

Message type: HANDOVER COMMAND
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.15/GSM 04.08: HANDOVER COMMAND message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Handover Command Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cell Description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	M	V	2
	Description of the first channel, after time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Handover Reference	Handover Reference 10.5.2.15	M	V	1
	Power Command and Access type	Power Command and Access type 10.5.2.28a	M	V	1
D-	Synchronization Indication	Synchronization Indication 10.5.2.39	O	TV	1
02	Frequency Short List, after time	Frequency Short List 10.5.2.14	C	TV	10
05	Frequency List, after time	Frequency List 10.5.2.13	C	TLV	4-131
62	Cell Channel Description	Cell Channel Description 10.5.2.1b	C	TV	17
63	Mode of the First Channel	Channel Mode 10.5.2.6	O	TV	2

TABLE 9.15/GSM 04.08 (continued): HANDOVER COMMAND message content

64	Description of the Second Channel, after time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
66	Mode of the Second Channel	Channel Mode 2 10.5.2.7	O	TV	2
69	Frequency Channel Sequence, after time	Frequency Channel Sequence 10.5.2.12	C	TV	10
72	Mobile Allocation, after time	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-10
7C	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3
7B	Real Time Difference	Time Difference 10.5.2.41	C	TLV	3
7D	Timing Advance	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	C	TV	2
12	Frequency Short List, before time	Frequency Short List 10.5.2.14	C	TV	10
19	Frequency List, before time	Frequency List 10.5.2.13	C	TLV	4-131
1C	Description of the First Channel, before time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
1D	Description of the Second Channel, before time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
1E	Frequency channel sequence before time	Frequency channel sequence 10.5.2.12	C	TV	10
21	Mobile Allocation, before time	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-10
9-	Cipher Mode Setting	Cipher Mode Setting 10.5.2.9	O	TV	1
??	VGCS target mode Indication	VGCS target mode Indication 10.5.2.26f	O	TV	2

9.1.15.1 Synchronization Indication

If this information element does not appear, the assumed value is "non-synchronized".

9.1.15.2 Mode of the First Channel

If this information element is not present the channel mode of the first previously allocated channel is assumed.

9.1.15.3 Description of the Second Channel

These information element appear if the MS carries two connections (on two dedicated channels, e.g. TCH/H+TCH/H).

The connection using the channel previously defined in the *Description of the First Channel* IE of an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND or HANDOVER COMMAND message shall use the channel defined in the first channel description IE of the HANDOVER COMMAND message defining the new configuration.

The channel described in the *Description of the First Channel* IE carries the main DCCH. The SACCH used is the one associated with that channel.

9.1.15.4 Mode of the Second Channel

If the *Description of the Second Channel* IE is not present and the information element is present it shall be considered as an IE unnecessary in the message.

This element appears at least when the channel mode is changed for the channel defined in the Description of the Second Channel information element.

9.1.15.5 Frequency Channel Sequence, Frequency List, Frequency short list and Mobile Allocation, after time.

If at least one of the channel descriptions for after time indicates frequency hopping, one and only one of the following information elements shall be present:

- *Frequency Channel Sequence, after time*;
- *Frequency list, after time*;
- *Frequency Short List, after time*;
- *Mobile Allocation, after time*.

If neither of the Channel Description IEs indicate frequency hopping, if they are not required for the decoding of Channel Description IEs for before time, and if any of the four information elements are present they shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

The *Frequency Channel Sequence* information element shall not be used unless all the ARFCNs that it indicates are in the P-GSM band.

9.1.15.6 Starting Time

The *starting time* information element is included when the network wants the MS to change the frequency parameters of the channels more or less at the moment a change of channel occurs. In this case a number of information elements may be included to give the frequency parameters to be used before the starting time.

The *starting time* information element refers to the new cell time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and none of the information elements referring to before the starting time are present, the MS waits and accesses the channels at the indicated time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and at least one of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, the MS does not wait for the indicated time and accesses the channel using the frequency parameters for before the starting time.

If the *starting time* information element is not present and some of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, these information elements shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

If the *description of the first channel, before time* IE is not present, the channel description to apply for before the time, if needed, is given by the *description of the first channel, after time* IE.

If the *description of the second channel, after time* IE is present, the *description of the second channel, before time* IE not present, and a description of the configuration for before the time needed, the channel configuration before the starting time is nevertheless of two traffic channels, and the channel description to apply to the second channel before the starting time is given by the *description of the second channel, after time* IE.

If the *starting time* IE is present and at least one of the channel descriptions for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, one and only one of the following information elements may be present and applies before the starting time to all assigned channels:

- *Mobile Allocation, before time* IE;
- *Frequency Short list, before time* IE;
- *Frequency list, before time* IE;
- *Frequency channel sequence, before time* IE.

If the *starting time* IE is present and at least one of the channel descriptions for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, and none of the above mentioned IE is present, a frequency list for after the starting time must be present (see 9.1.2.4), and this list applies also for the channels before the starting time.

9.1.15.7 Reference cell frequency list

If any of the *mobile allocation* information elements is present, then the *cell channel description* IE must be present. It is used to decode the *mobile allocation* IEs in the message.

In addition, if no information elements pertaining to before the starting time is present in the message, the frequency list defined by the *cell channel description* IE is used to decode the *mobile allocation* IEs in later messages received in the new cell until reception of a new reference cell frequency list or the new cell is left.

9.1.15.8 Real Time Difference

This information element shall appear if the *Synchronization Indication* information element indicates a pseudo-synchronous handover otherwise it shall be considered as an unnecessary information element.

9.1.15.9 Timing Advance

This information element shall appear if the "synchronization indication" element indicates a presynchronized handover. If not included for a presynchronized handover, then the default value as defined in GSM 05.10 shall be used. For other types of handover it shall be considered as an unnecessary information element.

9.1.15.10 Cipher Mode Setting

If this information element is omitted, the mode of ciphering is not changed after the MS has switched to the assigned channel.

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:

The cipher mode setting IE shall not be included if a HANDOVER COMMAND message is sent on a VGCS channel or in a HANDOVER COMMAND message on a dedicated channel for a handover to a VGCS channel.

9.1.15.11 VGCS target mode indication

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking:

This information element is identified as "comprehension required".

This IE indicates which mode is to be used on the new channel (i.e. dedicated mode or group transmit mode). If this information element is not present, the mode shall be the same as on the previous channel.

The IE also indicates the group cipher key number for the group cipher key to be used on the new channel or if the new channel is non ciphered. If the information element is not present, the ciphering mode shall be the same as on the previous channel.

NOTE: The MS shall not treat it as a syntactical error if this IE is present and the channel mode is not speech.

9.1.16 Handover complete

This message is sent on the main DCCH from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS has established the main signalling link successfully. See table 9.16/GSM 04.08.

Message type: HANDOVER COMPLETE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.16/GSM 04.08: HANDOVER COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Handover Complete Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1
77	Mobile Observed Time Difference	Mobile Time Difference 10.5.2.21a	O	TLV	5

9.1.16.1 Mobile Observed Time Difference

This information element is included if and only if the Synchronization Indication IE in the HANDOVER COMMAND message requests it to be sent.

9.1.17 Handover failure

This message is sent on the main DCCH on the old channel from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS has failed to seize the new channel. See table 9.17/GSM 04.08.

Message type: HANDOVER FAILURE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.17/GSM 04.08: HANDOVER FAILURE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Handover Failure Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1

9.1.18 Immediate assignment

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to the MS in idle mode to change the channel configuration to a dedicated configuration while staying in the same cell. See table 9.18/GSM 04.08.

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *IA Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Message type: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.18/GSM 04.08: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Immediate Assignment Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Spare Half Octet	Spare Half Octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Request Reference	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Timing Advance	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	M	V	1
	Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	M	LV	1-9
7C	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3
	IA Rest Octets (frequency parameters, before time)	IA Rest Octets 10.5.2.16	M	V	0-11

9.1.18.1 Mobile Allocation

If the *Channel Description* IE does not indicate frequency hopping the length indicator shall be set to zero, and the MS shall consider the IE as an unnecessary IE.

9.1.18.2 Starting Time

This information element appears if e.g. a frequency change is in progress.

9.1.18.3 IA Rest Octets (Frequency parameters, before time)

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

If the *starting time* IE is present but not the *frequency parameters, before time* IE, the MSs must wait until the starting time before accessing the channel.

If the *starting time* IE is present and the *Channel Description* IE does not indicate frequency hopping the MS shall consider the *frequency parameters, before time* IE as unnecessary in the message and the mobile must wait until the starting time before accessing the channel.

If the *starting time* IE is not present, the MS shall consider the *frequency parameters, before time* IE as unnecessary in the message.

9.1.19 Immediate assignment extended

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to two MSs in idle mode to change their channel configurations to different dedicated configurations while they stay in the same cell. See table 9.19/GSM 04.08

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *IAX Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Message type: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.19/GSM 04.08: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Immediate Assignment Ex tended Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Spare Half Octet	Spare Half Octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	Channel Description 1	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Request Reference 1	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Timing Advance 1	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	M	V	1
	Channel Description 2	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3
	Request Reference 2	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3

TABLE 9.19/GSM 04.08 (continued): IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message content

	Timing Advance 2	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	M	V	1
	Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	M	LV	1-5
7C	Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3
	IAX Rest Octets	IAX Rest Octets 10.5.2.18	M	V	0-4

NOTE: Index 1 refers to the first MS, index 2 refers to the second MS.

9.1.19.1 Unnecessary IEs

A MS which reacts on the request reference 1 shall consider all information elements as unnecessary IEs except *for Requests Reference 1*, *Channel Description 1*, *Timing advance 1*, *Starting Time* and if *Channel Description 1* IE indicates frequency hopping mobile allocation.

A MS which reacts on the request reference 2 shall consider all information elements as unnecessary IE except *Requests Reference 2*, *Channel Description 2*, *Timing advance 2*, *Starting Time* and if *channel description 2* IE indicates frequency hopping mobile allocation.

A MS in idle mode shall consider all information elements as unnecessary IEs except for the *Page Mode* IE.

9.1.19.2 Mobile Allocation

If both channel description IE do not indicate frequency hopping, the length indicator shall be set to zero.

9.1.19.3 Starting Time

This information element appears if a frequency change is in progress. If included the starting time is common to the two referenced MSs.

9.1.19.4 Maximum message length

As the maximum length of the resulting layer 3 data cannot exceed 22 octets, it is not possible to use this message type if the total length of the value part of the *Mobile Allocation* plus, optionally, the length of the *Starting Time* IE exceeds 5 octets. In this case it is necessary to use the IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message.

9.1.19.5 IAX Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

9.1.20 Immediate assignment reject

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to up to four MSs to indicate that no channel is available for assignment. See table 9.20/GSM 04.08. This message has L2 pseudo length 19.

Message type: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.20/GSM 04.08: IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Immediate Assignment Reject Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Spare Half Octet	Spare Half Octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	Request Reference 1	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Wait Indication 1	Wait Indication 10.5.2.43	M	V	1
	Request Reference 2	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Wait Indication 2	Wait Indication 10.5.2.43	M	V	1
	Request Reference 3	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Wait Indication 3	Wait Indication 10.5.2.43	M	V	1

TABLE 9.20/GSM 04.08 (continued): IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message content

	Request Reference 4	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Wait Indication 4	Wait Indication 10.5.2.43	M	V	1
	IAR Rest Octets	IAR Rest Octets 10.5.2.17	M	V	3

NOTE: Index 1 refers to the first MS, index 2 refers to the second MS and so on.

9.1.20.1 Use of the indexes

A request reference information element and the following wait indication information element refer to the same MS. So it is possible to reject up to four channel requests with this message.

9.1.20.2 Filling of the message

If necessary the request reference information element and the wait indication information element should be duplicated to fill the message.

9.1.21 Measurement report

This message is sent on the SACCH by the MS to the network to report measurement results about the dedicated channel and about neighbour cells. See table 9.21/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MEASUREMENT REPORT
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.21/GSM 04.08: MEASUREMENT REPORT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Measurement Report Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Measurement Results	Measurement Results 10.5.2.20	M	V	16

9.1.22 Paging request type 1

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to up to two MSs to trigger channel access by these. The MSs are identified by their TMSI or IMSI. See table 9.22/GSM 04.08.

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *P1 Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Message type: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 1
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.22/GSM 04.08: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 1 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Paging Request Type 1 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Channels Needed for Mobiles 1 and 2	Channel Needed 10.5.2.8	M	V	1/2
	Mobile Identity 1	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9
17	Mobile Identity 2	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TLV	3-10
	P1 Rest Octets	P1 Rest Octets 10.5.2.23	M	V	0-17

9.1.22.1 Unnecessary IE

A MS in idle mode shall consider all information elements as unnecessary IEs except for the *Page Mode* IE.

9.1.22.2 Channels needed for Mobiles 1 and 2

The first CHANNEL field of *Channel Needed* IE is associated with *Mobile Identity 1*. The second CHANNEL field of *Channel Needed* IE is associated with *Mobile Identity 2*.

9.1.22.3 Mobile Identities

The *Mobile Identity 1 and 2* IEs shall not refer to IMEI.

9.1.22.4 P1 Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

9.1.23 Paging request type 2

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to two or three MSs to trigger channel access by these. Two of the MSs are identified by their TMSI while the third is identified by its TMSI or IMSI. See table 9.23/GSM 04.08.

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *P2 Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Message type: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.23/GSM 04.08.: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Paging Request Type 2 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Channels Needed for Mobiles 1 and 2	Channel Needed 10.5.2.8	M	V	1/2
	Mobile Identity 1	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
	Mobile Identity 2	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
17	Mobile Identity 3	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TLV	3-10
	P2 Rest Octets	P2 Rest Octets 10.5.2.24	M	V	1-11

9.1.23.1 Channels needed for Mobiles 1 and 2

The first CHANNEL field of Channel Needed IE is associated with Mobile Identity 1. The second CHANNEL field of *Channel Needed* IE is associated with *Mobile Identity 2*.

9.1.23.2 Mobile Identity 3

The *Mobile Identity 3* information element shall not refer to IMEI.

9.1.23.3 P2 Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

This IE contains the channel needed indication related to the paging of *Mobile Identity 3*.

9.1.24 Paging request type 3

This message is sent on the CCCH by the network to four MSs to trigger channel access by these. The MSs are identified by their TMSIs. See table 9.24/GSM 04.08. This message has a L2 Pseudo Length of 19.

Message type: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.24/GSM 04.08: PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Paging Request Type 3 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Page Mode	Page Mode 10.5.2.26	M	V	1/2
	Channels Needed for Mobiles 1 and 2	Channel Needed 10.5.2.8	M	V	1/2
	Mobile Identity 1	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
	Mobile Identity 2	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
	Mobile Identity 3	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
	Mobile Identity 4	TMSI 10.5.2.42	M	V	4
	P3 Rest Octets	P3 Rest Octets 10.5.2.25	M	V	3

9.1.24.1 Channels needed for Mobiles 1 and 2

The first CHANNEL field of *Channel Needed* IE is associated with *Mobile Identity 1*. The second CHANNEL field of *Channel Needed* IE is associated with *Mobile Identity 2*.

9.1.24.2 P3 Rest Octets

This IE contains the channel needed indication related to the paging of *Mobile Identity 3 and 4*.

9.1.25 Paging response

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the MS to the network in connection with establishment of the main signalling link as a response to the paging request message. See table 9.25/GSM 04.08.

Message type: PAGING RESPONSE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.25/GSM 04.08: PAGING RESPONSE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Paging Response Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Ciphering Key Sequence Number	Ciphering Key Sequence Number 10.5.1.2	M	V	1/2
	Spare Half Octet	Spare Half Octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	MS Classmark	MS Classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	LV	4
	Mobile Identity	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9

9.1.25.1 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 2 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.1.26 Partial release

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to deactivate part of the dedicated channels in use. See table 9.26/GSM 04.08.

Message type: PARTIAL RELEASE
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.26/GSM 04.08: PARTIAL RELEASE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Partial Release Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	M	V	3

9.1.26.1 Channel Description

This information element describes the channel to be released.

9.1.27 Partial release complete

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the MS to the network to indicate that a part of the dedicated channels has been deactivated. See table 9.27/GSM 04.08.

Message type: PARTIAL RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.27/GSM 04.08: PARTIAL RELEASE COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Partial release Complete Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1

9.1.28 Physical information

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the network to the MS to stop the sending of access bursts from the MS. See table 9.28/GSM 04.08.

Message type: PHYSICAL INFORMATION
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.28/GSM 04.08: PHYSICAL INFORMATION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Physical Information Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Timing Advance	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	M	V	1

9.1.29 RR Status

This message is sent by the MS or the network at any time to report certain error conditions as described in section 8. See table 9.28a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: RR STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

TABLE 9.28a/GSM 04.08: RR STATUS message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	RR Status Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1

9.1.30 Synchronization channel information

This message is sent on the SCH, which is one of the broadcast channels (ref. GSM 05.02 section 3.3.2). Its purpose is to support the synchronization of a MS to a BSS. It does not follow the basic format. Its length is 25 bits. The order of bit transmission is defined in . GSM 04.04. See figure 9.3/GSM 04.08 and table 9.29/GSM 04.08.

Message type: SYNCHRONIZATION CHANNEL INFORMATION
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">BSIC</td><td colspan="2">T1 (high)</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">T1 (middle)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>T1
(low)</td><td colspan="5">T2</td><td colspan="2">T3'
(high)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7"></td><td>T3'
(low)</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 9.3/GSM 04.08: Frame synchronization information element

TABLE 9.29/GSM 04.08: Synchronization channel information message contents

BSIC, the base station identity code of the base station T1, T2 and T3', the 3 parts of the reduced TDMA frame number (RFN) as specified in TS. GSM 05.02 section 3.3.2.

9.1.31 System information Type 1

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network to all MSs within the cell giving information of control of the RACH and of the cell allocation. See table 9.30/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. This message has a L2 Pseudo Length of 21.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 1
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.30/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 1 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 pseudo length	L2 pseudo length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 1 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cell Channel Description	Cell Channel Description 10.5.2.1b	M	V	16
	RACH Control Parameter	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3
	SI 1 Rest Octets	SI 1 Rest Octets 10.5.2.32	M	V	1

9.1.32 System information type 2

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network to all MSs within the cell giving information of control of the RACH and of the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.31/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. This message has a L2 Pseudo Length of 22.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.31/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 2 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	BCCH Frequency List	Neighbour Cell Description 10.5.2.22	M	V	16
	NCC Permitted	NCC permitted 10.5.2.27	M	V	1
	RACH Control Parameter	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3

9.1.33 System information type 2bis

This message is sent optionally on the BCCH by the network to all MSs within the cell giving information on control of the RACH and of the extension of the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.31a/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02.

A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may ignore this message, see section 3.2.2.1.

This message has a L2 pseudo length of 21.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.31a/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 2bis Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Extended BCCH Frequency List	Neighbour Cell Description 10.5.2.22	M	V	16
	RACH Control Parameters	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3
	SI 2bis Rest Octets	SI 2bis Rest Octets 10.5.2.33	M	V	1

9.1.34 System information type 2ter

This message is sent optionally on the BCCH by the network to all MSs within the cell giving information on the extension of the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.31b/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02.

A MS that supports either:

only the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05), or
only the DCS 1800 band (cf. GSM 05.05)

may ignore this message, see section 3.2.2.1.

This message has a L2 pseudo length of 18.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2ter
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.31b/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2ter message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 2ter Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Extended BCCH Frequency List	Neighbour Cell Description 2 10.5.2.22b	M	V	16
	SI 2ter Rest Octets	SI 2ter Rest Octets 10.5.2.33a	M	V	4

9.1.35 System information type 3

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network giving information of control on the RACH, the location area identification, the cell identity and various other information about the cell. See table 9.32/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. This message has a L2 Pseudo Length of 18.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.32/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 3 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cell Identity	Cell Identity 10.5.1.1	M	V	2
	Location Area Identification	Location Area Identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
	Control Channel Description	Control Channel description 10.5.2.11	M	V	3
	Cell Options	Cell Options (BCCH) 10.5.2.3	M	V	1
	Cell Selection Parameters	Cell Selection Parameters 10.5.2.4	M	V	2
	RACH Control Parameters	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3
	SI 3 Rest Octets	SI 3 Rest Octets 10.5.2.34	M	V	4

9.1.36 System information type 4

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network giving information on control of the RACH, the location area identification, the cell identity and various other information about the cell. See table 9.33/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *SI 4 Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 4
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.33/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 4 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 4 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Location Area Identification	Location Area Identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
	Cell Selection Parameters	Cell Selection Parameters 10.5.2.4	M	V	2
	RACH Control Parameters	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3
64	CBCH Channel Description	Channel description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
72	CBCH Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	TLV	3-6
	SI 4 Rest Octets	SI 4 Rest Octets 10.5.2.35	M	V	0-10

9.1.36.1 CBCH Channel description

This information element is present if SMSCB is active in the cell and indicates (together with the *CBCH Mobile Allocation* IE) where to find the CBCH.

9.1.36.2 CBCH Mobile Allocation

If the *CBCH Channel Description* Information Element indicates frequency hopping, the *CBCH Mobile Allocation* IE shall be present. If the *CBCH Channel Description* does not indicate frequency hopping, the *CBCH Mobile Allocation* IE shall be considered as an unnecessary IE in the message.

9.1.36.3 SI 4 Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 pseudo length of the message equals 22.

9.1.37 System information type 5

This message is sent on the SACCH by the network to MSs within the cell giving information on the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.34/GSM 04.08.

When received this information shall be used as the list of BCCH frequencies of the neighbouring cells to be reported on. Any change in the neighbour cells description must overwrite any old data held by the MS. The MS must analyse all correctly received system information type 5 messages.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.34/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 5 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	BCCH Frequency List	Neighbour Cell Description 10.5.2.22	M	V	16

9.1.38 System information type 5bis

This message is sent optionally on the SACCH by the network to MSs within the cell giving information on the extension of the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.34a/GSM 04.08.

A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may ignore this message, see section 3.2.2.1.

When received (and not ignored) this information must be used as the list of neighbouring cells to be reported on. Any change in the neighbour cells description must overwrite any old data held by the MS. The MS must, with the exception stated above, analyse all correctly received system information type 5 messages.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.34a/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 5 bis Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Extension of the BCCH Frequency List Description	Neighbour Cell Description 10.5.2.22	M	V	16

9.1.39 System information type 5ter

This message is sent optionally on the SACCH by the network to MSs within the cell giving information on the extension of the BCCH allocation in the neighbour cells. See table 9.34b/GSM 04.08.

A MS that supports either:

only the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05), or
only the DCS 1800 band (cf. GSM 05.05)

may ignore this message, see section 3.2.2.1.

When received (and not ignored) this information must be used as part of the list of neighbouring cells to be reported on. Any change in the neighbour cells description must overwrite this part of any old data held by the MS. The MS shall, with the exception stated above, analyse all correctly received system information type 5ter messages.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5ter
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.34b/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5ter message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 5ter Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Extended BCCH Frequency List	Neighbour Cell Description 2 10.5.2.22b	M	V	16

9.1.40 System information type 6

This message is sent on the SACCH by the network to MSs within the cell giving information of location area identification, of cell identity and various other information. See table 9.35/GSM 04.08. If received correctly by the MS this message is treated as in Sections 9.1.40.1 to 9.1.40.4.

The message shall not exceed a maximum length of 18 octets.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.35/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 6 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cell Identity	Cell Identity 10.5.1.1	M	V	2
	Location Area Identification	Location Area Identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
	Cell Options	Cell Options (SACCH) 10.5.2.3	M	V	1
	NCC Permitted	NCC Permitted 10.5.2.27	M	V	1
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2

9.1.40.1 Cell Identity

Not used by MS.

9.1.40.2 Location Area Identification

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

If a new Location Area Identification is identified, an indication shall be given to the upper layer together with the new identification.

9.1.40.3 Cell Options

When correctly received, this information shall be used as the current Cell Options information. Any change in the Cell Options shall overwrite any old Cell Options data held by the MS.

9.1.40.4 NCC permitted

As for BCCH Frequency List in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5.

9.1.40.5 Group or broadcast call reference

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

This information element may be used to notify the MS of the existence of a VBS or VGCS call with the corresponding broadcast or group call reference, respectively, in the actual cell.

This information element shall only be included in the message if sent on the SACCH of a VBS or VGCS downlink or on the SACCH of a point-to-point channel when the MS classmark indicates a VBS or VGCS capability.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this information element.

9.1.40.6 PCH information

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

This information element may be used to inform MSs that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

A SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6 message shall only include PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2.

These information elements shall only be included in the message if sent on the SACCH of a VBS or VGCS downlink.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this information element.

9.1.40.7 Composition if the optional information elements on the SACCH of a VGCS or VBS downlink

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

A SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6 message sent on the SACCH of a VBS or VGCS downlink may include compositions of the optional information elements as defined in the following.

- 1 group or broadcast call reference;
- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1;
- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2.

9.1.41 System information type 7

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network giving information about cell reselection parameters to be used in that cell. See table 9.36/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. The L2 pseudo length of this message has the value 1.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 7
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.36/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 7 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 pseudo length	L2 pseudo length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 7 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	SI 7 Rest Octets	SI 7 Rest Octets 10.5.2.36	M	V	20

9.1.42 System information type 8

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network giving information about cell reselection parameters to be used in that cell. See table 9.37/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see GSM 05.02. The L2 Pseudo Length of this message has the value 1.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 8
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 8 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 8 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	SI 8 Rest Octets	SI 8 Rest Octets 10.5.2.37	M	V	20

9.1.43 System information Type 9

This message is sent on the BCCH by the network to all MSs within the cell giving information of the scheduling of information on the BCCH. See table 9.37a/GSM 04.08. Special requirements for the transmission of this message apply, see subclause 3.2.2.1 and GSM 05.02. This message has a L2 Pseudo Length of 1.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37a/GSM 04.08: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 pseudo length	L2 pseudo length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	System Information Type 9 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RACH Control Parameter	RACH Control Parameters 10.5.2.29	M	V	3
	SI 9 Rest Octets	SI 9 Rest Octets 10.5.2.37a	M	V	17

9.1.44 System information type 10

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

This message is sent optionally on the SACCH of a VGCS or VBS downlink by the network in unacknowledged mode to all MSs receiving that downlink within the cell giving information of the BCCH in the neighbour cells which belong to the group call area. See table 9.37b/GSM 04.08.

The message shall not exceed a maximum length of 18 octets.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37b/GSM 04.08 SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	System Information Type 10 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
??	BCCH Frequency and BSIC List	Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description 10.5.2.22a	O	V	16
??	Cell description 1	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Cell description 2	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Cell description 3	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Cell description 4	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Cell description 5	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	V	4 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2

9.1.44.1 Representation of the information on the BCCHs

The information may be provided either by use of an Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description list or, alternatively, by an absolute description in form of cell descriptions.

If the information is given in form of cell descriptions, only five cell descriptions will be included in one message due to the length limitations, although there may be more neighbour cells.

9.1.44.2 Group or broadcast call reference

This information element may be used to notify the MS of the existence of a VBS or VGCS call with the corresponding broadcast or group call reference, respectively, in the actual cell.

9.1.44.3 PCH information

This information element may be used to inform the MS that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

A SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10 message shall only include PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2.

9.1.44.4 Composition of the optional information elements

If a SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10 message sent on the SACCH of a VBS or VGCS downlink includes the information on the neighbour cells BCCHs in form of cell descriptions and there is place for additional information elements in the message, the message may include compositions of optional information elements as defined in the following.

- 1 TV type group or broadcast call reference plus optionally additional V type group or broadcast call references;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1 messages;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2 messages.

9.1.45 System information type 10bis

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening and VBS listening:

This message is sent optionally on the SACCH of a VGCS or VBS downlink by the network in unacknowledged mode to all MSs receiving that downlink within the cell giving information on the extension of the BCCH in the neighbour cells which belong to the group call area. See table 9.37c/GSM 04.08.

A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may ignore this message, see section 3.2.2.1.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10bis

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37c/GSM 04.08 SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10bis message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	System Information Type 10bis Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	BCCH Frequency and BSIC List	Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description 10.5.2.22a	M	V	16

9.1.46 System information type 11

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

This message is sent as a network option on the SACCH of a VGCS or VBS downlink by the network in unacknowledged mode to all MSs receiving that downlink within the cell giving descriptions of voice group call or broadcast call channels in neighbour cells which belong to the group call area or, alternatively, on the position of the NCH block in those cells on which the notification for that call is present. See table 9.37d/GSM 04.08. The message shall not exceed a maximum length of 18 octets.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37d/GSM 04.08 SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	System Information Type 11 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	1. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	M	V	2
??	1. VBS/VGCS Channel descript., after time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
??	1. Frequency List, after time	Frequency Short List 10.5.2.14	C	TV	10
??	1. Frequency List, after time	Frequency Short List 2 10.5.2.14a	C	TV	8
??	1. Starting Time	Starting Time 10.5.2.38	O	TV	3
??	1. Frequency List, before time	Frequency Short List 2 10.5.2.14a	C	TV	8
??	1. VBS/VGCS Channel descript., before time	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
??	1. NCH position	NCH position 10.5.2.26c	O	TV	1 1/2
??	2. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	O	V	2
??	2. VBS/VGCS Channel description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	V	3
??	2. NCH position	NCH position 10.5.2.26c	O	TV	1 1/2
??	3. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	O	V	2
??	3. VBS/VGCS Channel description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	V	3
??	3. NCH position	NCH position 10.5.2.26c	O	TV	1 1/2
??	4. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	O	V	2
??	4. VBS/VGCS Channel description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	V	3
??	4. NCH position	NCH position 10.5.2.26c	O	TV	1 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	V	4 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2

9.1.46.1 VBS/VGCS Channel description and NCH position

Information may be provided either on the VBS/VGCS Channel in the related cell (possibly together with information on frequency hopping) or, alternatively, on the NCH position.

If the NCH position is present, the MS has to read the NCH in the related cell to obtain information on the VBS/VGCS Channel in that cell.

If information on frequency hopping is given for a VBS/VGCS channel, only one cell description will be included in one message due to the length limitations, although there may be more neighbour cells.

9.1.46.2 Frequency list.

If the channel description for after time indicates frequency hopping, one and only one of the following information elements shall be present:

- *Frequency Short List, after time*;
- *Frequency Short List 2, after time*;

If the Channel Description IE does not indicate frequency hopping, if they are not required for the decoding of the Channel Description IE for before time, and if any of the two information elements are present they shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

9.1.46.3 Starting Time

The *starting time* information element is included when the network wants the MS to change the frequency parameters of the channels more or less at the moment a change of channel occurs. In this case a number of information elements may be included to give the frequency parameters to be used before the starting time.

The *starting time* information element refers to the new cell time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and none of the information elements referring to before the starting time are present, the MS waits and changes to the channels at the indicated time.

If the *starting time* information element is present and at least one of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, the MS does not wait for the indicated time and changes to the channel using the frequency parameters for before the starting time.

If the *starting time* information element is not present and some of the information elements referring to before the starting time is present, these information elements shall be considered as IEs unnecessary in the message.

If the *VBS/VGCS channel description, before time* IE is not present, the channel description to apply for before the time, if needed, is given by the *VBS/VGCS channel description, after time* IE.

If the *starting time* IE is present and the channel descriptions for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, the following information elements may be present and applies before the starting time to all assigned channels:

- Frequency Short list 2, before time IE;

If the *starting time* IE is present and the channel description for before the starting time indicates frequency hopping, and the above mentioned IE is not present, a frequency list for after the starting time must be present, and this list applies also for the channels before the starting time.

9.1.46.4 Group or broadcast call reference

This information element may be used to notify the MS of the existence of a VBS or VGCS call with the corresponding broadcast or group call reference, respectively, in the actual cell.

9.1.46.5 PCH information

This information element may be used to inform the MS that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

A SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11 message shall only include PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2.

9.1.46.6 Composition of the optional information elements

The SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11 message sent on the SACCH of a VBS or VGCS downlink includes the description of the voice group call or voice broadcast call channels in the neighbouring cells which belong to the service area or, alternatively, on the position of the NCH block in those cells on which the notification for that call is present. If, providing this information, the message does not exceed a maximum length of 18 octets, the message may include in addition compositions of optional information elements as defined in the following:

- 1 TV type group or broadcast call reference plus optionally additional V type group or broadcast call references;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1 messages;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2 messages.

9.1.47 System information type 12

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

This message is sent as a network option on the SACCH of a VGCS or VBS downlink by the network in unacknowledged mode to all MSs receiving that downlink within the cell giving descriptions of the neighbour cell parameters used for cell reselection calculations. See table 9.37e/GSM 04.08.

Message type: SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37e/GSM 04.08 SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12 message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	System Information Type 12 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	1. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	M	V	2
	1. Cell Reselection Parameters	Cell Reselection Parameters 10.5.2.26j	M	V	4
??	2. Cell description	Cell description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	2. Cell Reselection Parameters	Cell Reselection Parameters 10.5.2.26j	C	V	4

9.1.47.1 Cell description and cell reselection parameters.

If a second cell description is included, also the related cell reselection parameters shall be included.

The message length allows that informations on two cells may be given as a maximum. However, more cells may be of interest for the cell reselection process and provided in further SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12 messages.

9.1.A1 Notification/NCH Type 1

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

This message is sent on the NCH by the network to notify MSs of VBS or VGCS calls in the current cell. The VBS or VGCS calls are identified by their broadcast call reference or group call reference, respectively. For each reference, the corresponding VBS or VGCS call channel may be indicated. See table 9.37f/GSM 04.08.

Notification/NCH TYPE 1 messages for VBS or VGCS calls are differentiated by a flag in the call reference.

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *NT/N Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this message.

Message type: NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37f/GSM 04.08 NOTIFICATION/NCH message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Notification/NCH Type 1 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Group or broadcast call reference 1	Call reference 10.5.1.9	M	V	4 1/2
??	Group Channel Description 1	Group Channel Description 10.5.2.26i	O	TLV	4-13
??	Group or broadcast call reference 2	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group Channel Description 2	Group Channel Description 10.5.2.26i	O	TLV	4-13
??	Group or broadcast call reference 3	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	V	5 1/2
??	NT/N1 Rest Octets	NT/N1 Rest Octets 10.5.2.26d	M	V	1-16

9.1.A1.1 Group Channel Description

The *group channel description* IE is only given with a notification for a related *group or broadcast call reference*, if the MS is allowed to join the respective channel immediately without sending a NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message to the network (see section 3.8).

If *group channel description* IEs are present, only one or two voice group calls can be notified due to the length limitations.

If no *group channel description* IE is present, up to three voice group calls can be notified in one message.

9.1.A1.2 NT/N1 Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

9.1.A2 Notification/NCH Type 2

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

This message is sent on the NCH by the network to notify MSs on VBS or VGCS calls in cells different from the current cell. The VBS or VGCS calls are identified by their broadcast call reference or group call reference, respectively. For each call reference, one or more than one cell description is indicated. See table 9.37g/GSM 04.08.

Notification/NCH TYPE 2 messages for VBS or VGCS calls are differentiated by a flag in the call reference.

The L2 pseudo length of this message is the sum of lengths of all information elements present in the message except the *NT/N Rest Octets* and *L2 Pseudo Length* information elements.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this message.

Message type: NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 2

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37g/GSM 04.08 NOTIFICATION/NCH message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	L2 Pseudo Length	L2 Pseudo Length 10.5.2.19	M	V	1
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Notification/NCH Type 2 Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Group or broadcast call reference 1	Call reference 10.5.1.9	M	V	4 1/2
	1.1. Cell Description	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	M	V	2
??	1.2. Cell Description	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	Group or broadcast call reference 2	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	V	5 1/2
??	2.1 Cell Description	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	C	V	2
??	2.2 Cell Description	Cell Description 10.5.2.2	O	TV	3
??	NT/N2 Rest Octets	NT/N2 Rest Octets 10.5.2.26e	M	V	1-14

9.1.A2.1 Cell Description

To each group or broadcast call reference, a not numbered list of different cells may be related, consisting of one TV type cell description plus optionally additional V type cell descriptions.

Cell descriptions shall be provided together with a group or broadcast call reference if there is no related VGCS or VBS channel existing in the cell where the notification is given.

9.1.A2.2 NT/N2 Rest Octets

The sum of the length of this IE and the L2 Pseudo Length of the message equals 22.

9.1.A3 Notification/FACCH

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

This message is sent on the main DCCH, SAPI=0, in unacknowledged mode by the network to notify the MSs in dedicated mode or in on-going voice broadcast calls or voice group calls on other voice broadcast calls or voice group calls in that cell.

Notification/FACCH messages for VBS or VGCS calls are differentiated by a flag in the call reference.

The message shall not exceed a maximum length of 20 octets.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this message.

See table 9.37h/GSM 04.08.

Message type: NOTIFICATION/FACCH

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37h/GSM 04.08 NOTIFICATION/FACCH message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Notification/FACCH Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Group or broadcast call reference 1	Call reference 10.5.1.9	M	V	4 1/2
??	Channel Description	Channel Description 10.5.2.5	O	TV	4
??	Frequency List	Frequency Short List 2 10.5.2.14	C	TV	8
??	Mobile Allocation	Mobile Allocation 10.5.2.21	C	LV	1-9
??	Group or broadcast call reference 2	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference 3	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TV	3-10
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	V	2-9

9.1.A3.1 VBS/VGCS Channel description

Information may be provided on the VBS/VGCS Channel (possibly together with information on frequency hopping) of the notified call in the cell which enables the MS to join the respective channel immediately without reading the NCH.

If the channel description is given for a VBS/VGCS channel, only one call can be notified in one message due to the length limitations.

If no channel description is given for a VBS/VGCS channel, up to three calls can be notified in one message.

9.1.A3.2 PCH information

This information element may be used to inform the MS in an on-going voice group call or voice broadcast call that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

9.1.A3.3 Paging Information

This information element may be used to inform the MS in dedicated mode or in an on-going voice group call or voice broadcast call that the corresponding mobile identity is paged in that cell.

9.1.A3.4 Composition of the optional information elements

The NOTIFICATION/FACCH message provides notifications to MSs in on-going voice broadcast calls or voice group calls on other voice broadcast calls or voice group calls in that cell. If, providing this information on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink, the message does not exceed a maximum length of 20 octets, the message on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink may include in addition compositions of optional information elements as defined in the following:

- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1 messages;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2 messages;

- 1 TV type paging information plus optionally additional V type paging informations.

A NOTIFICATION/FACCH message sent on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink shall only include PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2 or paging informations.

9.1.A4 Notification/SACCH

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening.

This message is sent optionally on the SACCH in unacknowledged mode by the network to notify MSs in dedicated mode or in on-going voice broadcast calls or voice group calls on other voice broadcast calls or voice group calls in that cell.

Notification/SACCH messages for VBS or VGCS calls are differentiated by a flag in the call reference.

Mobile stations not supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening shall ignore this message.

See table 9.37i/GSM 04.08.

Message type: NOTIFICATION/SACCH

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37i/GSM 04.08 NOTIFICATION/SACCH message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	Notification/SACCH Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Group or broadcast call reference 1	Call reference 10.5.1.9	M	V	4 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference 2	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference 3	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TV	3-10
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	V	2-9

9.1.A4.1 PCH information

This information element may be used to inform the MS in an on-going voice group call or voice broadcast call that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

9.1.A4.2 Paging Information

This information element may be used to inform the MS in an on-going voice group call or voice broadcast call that the corresponding mobile identity is paged in that cell.

9.1.A4.3 Composition of the optional information elements

The NOTIFICATION/SACCH message provides notifications to MSs in on-going voice broadcast calls or voice group calls on other voice broadcast calls or voice group calls in that cell. If, providing this information on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink, the message does not exceed a maximum length of 20 octets, the message on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink may include in addition compositions of optional information elements as defined in the following:

- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1 messages;

- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2 messages;

- 1 TV type paging information plus optionally additional V type paging informations.

A NOTIFICATION/SACCH message sent on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink shall only include PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2 or paging informations.

9.1.A5 Uplink busy

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is broadcasted on the voice group call channel on the main DCCH, SAPI=0, by the network in unacknowledged mode to inform the MS of the uplink status of the voice group call channel. See table 9.37j/GSM 04.08.

Message type: UPLINK BUSY

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37j/GSM 04.08 UPLINK BUSY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Uplink busy Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1

9.1.A6 Uplink free

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is broadcast on the main DCCH, SAPI=0, in unacknowledged mode by the network to inform the MS of the uplink status of the voice group call channel. See table 9.37k/GSM 04.08.

Message type: UPLINK FREE

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37k/GSM 04.08 UPLINK FREE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Uplink Free Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	UIC	UIC 10.5.2.26h	C	TV	2
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	TV	5 1/2
??	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	O	V	4 1/2
??	Uplink access request indication	Uplink access request 10.5.2.26g	O	T	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	TV	2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 1 10.5.2.26a	O	V	1
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	TV	2 1/2
??	PCH Information	PCH Information Type 2 10.5.2.26b	O	V	1 1/2
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	TV	3-10
??	Paging Information	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	O	V	2-9

9.1.A6.1 UIC

The Uplink Identity Code may be provided in the UPLINK FREE message which shall then be used by the MS shall for the coding of the UPLINK ACCESS messages.

9.1.A6.2 Uplink access request indication

This information element may be used to request the MS to perform an uplink reply procedure.

9.1.A6.3 Group or broadcast call reference

This information element may be used to notify the MS of the existence of a VBS or VGCS call with the corresponding broadcast or group call reference, respectively, in the actual cell.

9.1.A6.4 PCH information

This information element may be used to inform the MS that a new paging message, possibly with the indicated priority, is available on the indicated paging subchannel (PCH information type 1) or paging subgroup (PCH information type 2).

9.1.A6.5 Paging Information

This information element may be used to inform the MS that the corresponding mobile identity is paged in that cell.

9.1.A6.6 Composition of the optional information elements

The UPLINK FREE message informs the MS of the uplink status of the voice group call channel. If, providing this information, the message does not exceed a maximum length of 20 octets, the message may include in addition compositions of optional information elements as defined in the following:

- 1 TV type group or broadcast call reference plus optionally additional V type group or broadcast call references;
- 1 TV type PCH information type 1 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 1 messages;
- 1 TV type PCH information type 2 plus optionally additional V type PCH information type 2 messages;
- 1 TV type paging information plus optionally additional V type paging informations.

A UPLINK FREE message sent on the VBS/VGCS channel downlink shall only include group or broadcast call references or PCH information messages of either type 1 or 2 or paging informations.

A UPLINK FREE message may include only PCH information messages of type 1 or 2 or paging informations.

9.1.A7 Uplink release

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is sent on the uplink of the voice group call channel to initiate a deactivation of the group transmit mode and to set the uplink free or on the downlink of the voice group call channel in order to reject an uplink access which was already granted by the network. See table 9.37l/GSM 04.08

Message type: UPLINK RELEASE

Significance: local

Direction: both

TABLE 9.37l/GSM 04.08 UPLINK RELEASE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Uplink Release Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	RR Cause	RR Cause 10.5.2.31	M	V	1

9.1.A8 Uplink access

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is sent in random mode on the voice group call channel uplink. It does not follow the basic format. The possible formats are presented directly below, without reference to information fields. The order of bit transmission is defined in GSM 04.04.

The message is only one octet long, coded as shown in figure 9.4/GSM 04.08 and table 9.37m/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
ESTABLISHMENT CAUSE			RANDOM REFERENCE					octet1

FIGURE 9.4/GSM 04.08 UPLINK ACCESS message content

ESTABLISHMENT CAUSE (octet 1)

This information field indicates the reason for requesting the establishment of a connection. This field has a variable length (from 3 bits up to 8 bits).

RANDOM REFERENCE (octet 1)

This is an unformatted field with variable length (from 5 bits down to 0 bits).

The Channel Request message is coded as follows:

(Random Reference field is filled with "x").

TABLE 9.37m/GSM 04.08 UPLINK ACCESS message content

Message 8 1	Meaning of Establishment Cause
110xxxxx	Subsequent talker uplink request
00100101	Reply on uplink access request
other values	reserved for future use

9.1.A9 VGCS uplink grant

The understanding of this message is only required for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is sent in unacknowledged mode on the main signalling channel by the network to the MS to stop the sending of access bursts from the MS and to change the channel configuration to a dedicated configuration. See table 9.37n/GSM 04.08.

Message type: VGCS UPLINK GRANT

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.37n/GSM 04.08 VGCS UPLINK GRANT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	VGCS Uplink Grant Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	Request Reference	Request Reference 10.5.2.30	M	V	3
	Timing Advance	Timing Advance 10.5.2.40	M	V	1

9.1.A10 Talker indication

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS talking.

This message is sent on the main DCCH by the MS to the network to give the talker information when a new layer 2 connection is established on a VGCS channel after an uplink access. See table 9.37o/GSM 04.08.

Message type: TALKER INDICATION

Significance: dual

Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.37o/GSM 04.08 TALKER INDICATION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	length
	RR management Protocol Discriminator	Protocol Discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Talker Indication Message Type	Message Type 10.4	M	V	1
	MS Classmark	MS Classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	V	5
	Mobile Identity	Mobile Identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9

9.1.A11 Notification response

Only applicable for MSs supporting VGCS listening or VBS listening:

This message is sent by the MS to the network to respond on a notification for a voice group call or voice broadcast call. See table 9.37p/GSM 04.08.

Message type: NOTIFICATION RESPONSE

Significance: dual

Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.37p/GSM 04.08 NOTIFICATION RESPONSE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Notification response message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Mobile station classmark	Mobile station classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	LV	4
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9
	Group or broadcast call reference	Call reference 10.5.1.9	M	V	4 1/2

9.2 Messages for mobility management

Table 9.38/GSM 04.08 summarizes the messages for mobility management.

TABLE 9.38/GSM 04.08: Messages for mobility management

Registration messages:	Reference
IMSI DETACH INDICATION	9.2.12
LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT	9.2.13
LOCATION UPDATING REJECT	9.2.14
LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST	9.2.15
Security messages:	Reference
AUTHENTICATION REJECT	9.2.1
AUTHENTICATION REQUEST	9.2.2
AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE	9.2.3
IDENTITY REQUEST	9.2.10
IDENTITY RESPONSE	9.2.11
TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND	9.2.17
TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE	9.2.18
Connection management messages:	Reference
CM SERVICE ACCEPT	9.2.5
CM SERVICE REJECT	9.2.6
CM SERVICE ABORT	9.2.7
CM SERVICE REQUEST	9.2.9
CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST	9.2.4
ABORT	9.2.8
Miscellaneous message:	Reference
MM INFORMATION	9.2.15a
MM STATUS	9.2.16

9.2.1 Authentication reject

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that authentication has failed (and that the receiving MS shall abort all activities). See table 9.39/GSM 04.08.

Message type: AUTHENTICATION REJECT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.39/GSM 04.08: AUTHENTICATION REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Authentication Reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.2.2 Authentication request

This message is sent by the network to the MS to initiate authentication of the MS identity. See table 9.40/GSM 04.08.

Message type: AUTHENTICATION REQUEST
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.40/GSM 04.08: AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Authentication Request message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Ciphering key sequence number	Ciphering key sequence number 10.5.1.2	M	V	1/2
	Spare half octet	Spare half octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	Authentication parameter RAND	Auth. parameter RAND 10.5.3.1	M	V	16

9.2.3 Authentication response

This message is sent by the MS to the network to deliver a calculated response to the network. See table 9.41/GSM 04.08.

Message type: AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.41/GSM 04.08: AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Authentication Response message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Authentication parameter SRES	Auth. parameter SRES 10.5.3.2	M	V	4

9.2.4 CM Re-establishment request

This message is sent by the MS to the network to request re-establishment of a connection if the previous one has failed. See table 9.42/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CM RE-ESTABLISHMENT REQUEST
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.42/GSM 04.08: CM RE-ESTABLISHMENT REQUEST message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	CM Re-Establishment Request message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Ciphering key sequence number	Ciphering key sequence number 10.5.1.2	M	V	1/2
	Spare half octet	Spare half octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
	Mobile station classmark	Mobile station classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	LV	4
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9
13	Location area identification	Location area identification 10.5.1.3	C	TV	6

9.2.4.1 Location area identification

The *location area identification* information element shall appear when a TMSI is used as mobile identity, to render that mobile identity non-ambiguous. This is the LAI stored in the SIM.

9.2.4.2 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 2 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.2.5 CM service accept

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that the requested service has been accepted. See table 9.43/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CM SERVICE ACCEPT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.43/GSM 04.08: CM SERVICE ACCEPT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	CM Service Accept message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.2.6 CM service reject

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that the requested service cannot be provided. See table 9.44/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CM SERVICE REJECT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.44/GSM 04.08: CM SERVICE REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	CM Service Reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Reject cause	Reject cause 10.5.3.6	M	V	1

9.2.7 CM service abort

This message is sent by the MS to the network to request the abortion of the first MM connection establishment in progress and the release of the RR connection. See table 9.44a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CM SERVICE ABORT
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.44a/GSM 04.08: CM SERVICE ABORT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	CM Service Abort message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.2.8 Abort

This message is sent by the network to the MS to initiate the abortion of all MM connections and to indicate the reason for the abortion. See table 9.44b/GSM 04.08.

Message type: ABORT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.44b/GSM 04.08: ABORT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Abort message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Reject cause	Reject cause 10.5.3.6	M	V	1

9.2.9 CM service request

This message is sent by the MS to the network to request a service for the connection management sublayer entities, e.g. circuit switched connection establishment, supplementary services activation, short message transfer. See table 9.45/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CM SERVICE REQUEST
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.45/GSM 04.08: CM SERVICE REQUEST message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	CM Service Request message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	CM service type	CM service type 10.5.3.3	M	V	1/2
	Ciphering key sequence number	Ciphering key sequence number 10.5.1.2	M	V	1/2
	Mobile station classmark	Mobile station classmark 2 10.5.1.6	M	LV	4
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9
1-	Priority	Priority Level 10.5.1.11	O	TV	1

9.2.9.1 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 2 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.2.9.2 Priority

May be included by MS supporting eMLPP to indicate the priority requested.

This information element is only meaningful when the CM service type is:

Mobile originating call establishment;
Emergency call establishment;
Voice group call establishment;
Voice broadcast call establishment.

9.2.10 Identity request

This message is sent by the network to the MS to request a MS to submit the specified identity to the network. See table 9.46/GSM 04.08.

Message type: IDENTITY REQUEST
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.46/GSM 04.08: IDENTITY REQUEST message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Identity Request message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Identity type	Identity type 10.5.3.4	M	V	1/2
	Spare half octet	Spare half octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2

9.2.11 Identity response

This message is sent by the MS to the network in response to an IDENTITY REQUEST message providing the requested identity. See table 9.47/GSM 04.08.

Message type: IDENTITY RESPONSE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.47/GSM 04.08: IDENTITY RESPONSE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Identity Response message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-10

9.2.12 IMSI detach indication

This message is sent by the MS to the network to set a deactivation indication in the network. See table 9.48/GSM 04.08.

Message type: IMSI DETACH INDICATION
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.48/GSM 04.08: IMSI DETACH INDICATION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	IMSI Detach Indication message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Mobile station classmark	Mobile station classmark 1 10.5.1.5	M	V	1
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9

9.2.12.1 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 1 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.2.13 Location updating accept

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that updating or IMSI attach in the network has been completed. See table 9.49/GSM 04.08.

Message type: LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.49/GSM 04.08: LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Location Updating Accept message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Location area identification	Location area identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
17	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	O	TLV	3-10
A1	Follow on proceed	Follow on proceed 10.5.3.7	O	T	1

9.2.13.1 Follow on proceed

The *follow on proceed* information element appears if the network wishes to indicate that the MS may attempt an MM connection establishment using the same RR connection.

9.2.14 Location updating reject

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that updating or IMSI attach has failed. See table 9.50/GSM 04.08.

Message type: LOCATION UPDATING REJECT
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.50/GSM 04.08: LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Location Updating Reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Reject cause	Reject cause 10.5.3.6	M	V	1

9.2.15 Location updating request

This message is sent by the MS to the network either to request update of its location file (normal updating or periodic updating) or to request IMSI attach. See table 9.51/GSM 04.08.

Message type: LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.51/GSM 04.08: LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	Location Updating Request message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Location updating type	Location updating type 10.5.3.5	M	V	1/2
	Ciphering key sequence number	Ciphering key sequence number 10.5.1.2	M	V	1/2
	Location area identification	Location area identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
	Mobile station classmark	Mobile station classmark 1 10.5.1.5	M	V	1
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9

9.2.15.1 Location area identification

The location area identification stored in the SIM is used.

9.2.15.2 MS Classmark

This IE shall include for multiband MS the Classmark 1 corresponding to the frequency band in use.

9.2.15a MM information

This message is sent by the network to the MS to provide the MS with subscriber specific information. See table 9.51a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MM INFORMATION

Significance: dual

Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.51a/GSM 04.08
MM INFORMATION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	MM Information message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
43	Full name for network	Network Name 10.5.3.5a	O	TLV	3-?
45	Short name for network	Network Name 10.5.3.5a	O	TLV	3-?
46	Network time zone	Time Zone 10.5.3.8	O	TV	2
47	Network time and time zone	Time Zone and Time 10.5.3.9	O	TV	8

9.2.15a.1 Full name for network

This IE may be sent by the network. If this IE is sent, the contents of this IE indicate the "full length name of the network" that the network wishes the MS to associate with the MCC and MNC contained in the Location Area Identification of the cell to which the MS sent its Channel Request message.

9.2.15a.2 Short name for network

This IE may be sent by the network. If this IE is sent, the contents of this IE indicate the "abbreviated name of the network" that the network wishes the MS to associate with the MCC and MNC contained in the Location Area Identification of the cell to which the MS sent its Channel Request message.

9.2.15a.3 Network time zone

This IE may be sent by the network. The MS should assume that this time zone applies to the Location Area of the cell to which the Channel Request message was sent.

9.2.15a.4 Network time zone and time

This IE may be sent by the network. The MS should assume that this time zone applies to the Location Area of the cell to which the Channel Request message was sent. The MS shall not assume that the time information is accurate.

9.2.16 MM Status

This message is sent by the MS or the network at any time to report certain error conditions listed in section 8. See table 9.51a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MM STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

TABLE 9.51a/GSM 04.08: MM STATUS message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	MM Status message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Reject cause	Reject cause 10.5.3.6	M	V	1

9.2.17 TMSI reallocation command

This message is sent by the network to the MS to reallocate or delete a TMSI. See table 9.52/GSM 04.08.

Message type: TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND
Significance: dual
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.52/GSM 04.08: TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	TMSI Reallocation Command message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Location area identification	Location area identification 10.5.1.3	M	V	5
	Mobile identity	Mobile identity 10.5.1.4	M	LV	2-9

9.2.18 TMSI reallocation complete

This message is sent by the MS to the network to indicate that reallocation or deletion of a TMSI has taken place. See table 9.53/GSM 04.08.

Message type: TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE
Significance: dual
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.53/GSM 04.08: TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	TMSI Reallocation Complete message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.2.19 MM Null

This message is sent in mobile to network direction.

This message is not used on the radio interface. When received by the network it shall be ignored.

The introduction of this message solves interworking issues.

Message type: MM NULL

TABLE 9.53a/GSM 04.08 MM NULL message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Mobility management protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Skip Indicator	Skip Indicator 10.3.1	M	V	1/2
	MM Null message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3 Messages for circuit-switched call control

Table 9.54/GSM 04.08 summarizes the messages for circuit-switched call control.

TABLE 9.54/GSM 04.08: Messages for circuit-mode connections call control.

Call establishment messages:	Reference
ALERTING	9.3.1
CALL CONFIRMED 1)	9.3.2
CALL PROCEEDING	9.3.3
CONNECT	9.3.5
CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE	9.3.6
EMERGENCY SETUP 1)	9.3.8
PROGRESS	9.3.17
SETUP	9.3.23
Call information phase messages:	Reference
MODIFY 1)	9.3.13
MODIFY COMPLETE 1)	9.3.14
MODIFY REJECT 1)	9.3.15
USER INFORMATION	9.3.31
Call clearing messages:	Reference
DISCONNECT	9.3.7
RELEASE	9.3.18
RELEASE COMPLETE	9.3.19
Messages for supplementary service control	Reference
FACILITY	9.3.9
HOLD 1)	9.3.10
HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE 1)	9.3.11
HOLD REJECT 1)	9.3.12
RETRIEVE 1)	9.3.20
RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE 1)	9.3.21
RETRIEVE REJECT 1)	9.3.22
Miscellaneous messages:	Reference
CONGESTION CONTROL	9.3.4
NOTIFY	9.3.16
START DTMF 1)	9.3.24
START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE 1)	9.3.25
START DTMF REJECT 1)	9.3.26
STATUS	9.3.27
STATUS ENQUIRY	9.3.28
STOP DTMF 1)	9.3.29
STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE 1)	9.3.30

NOTE: Not supported by Blue Book CCITT Rec. Q.931.

9.3.1 Alerting

9.3.1.1 Alerting (network to MS direction)

This message is sent by the network to the calling MS to indicate that the called user alerting has been initiated.

See table 9.55/GSM 04.08.

Message type: ALERTING
Significance: global
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.55/GSM 04.08: ALERTING message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Alerting message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
1E	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	O	TLV	4
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

9.3.1.1.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.1.1.2 Progress indicator

This information element may be included by the network:

- in order to pass information about the call in progress, e.g., in the event of interworking and/or
- to make the MS attach the user connection for speech.

9.3.1.1.3 User-user

This information element may be included by the network if the called remote user included a *user-user* information element in the ALERTING message.

9.3.1.2 Alerting (MS to network direction)

This message is sent by the called MS to the network, to indicate that the called user alerting has been initiated.

See table 9.55a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: ALERTING
Significance: global
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.55a/GSM 04.08: ALERTING message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Alerting message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

9.3.1.2.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.1.2.2 User-user

This information element may be included when the called MS wants to return information to the calling remote user.

9.3.1.2.3 SS version

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.2 Call confirmed

This message is sent by the called MS to confirm an incoming call request.

See table 9.56/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CALL CONFIRMED
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.56/GSM 04.08: CALL CONFIRMED message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Call confirmed message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
D-	Repeat Indicator	Repeat Indicator 10.5.4.22	C	TV	1
04	Bearer capability 1	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
04	Bearer capability 2	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
15	CC Capabilities	Call Control Capabilities 10.5.4.5a	O	TLV	3

9.3.2.1 Repeat indicator

The *repeat indicator* information element shall be included if *bearer capability 1* information element and *bearer capability 2* IE are both included in the message.

9.3.2.2 Bearer capability 1 and bearer capability 2

The *bearer capability 1* information element shall be included if and only if at least one of the following four cases holds:

- the MS wishes another bearer capability than that given by the *bearer capability 1* information element of the incoming SETUP message;

- the *bearer capability 1* information element is missing or not fully specified in the SETUP message;

- the *bearer capability 1* information element received in the SETUP message is accepted and the "radio channel requirement" of the MS is other than "full rate support only MS";

- the *bearer capability 1* information element received in the SETUP message indicates speech and is accepted and the MS supports other speech versions than GSM version 1.

When the *bearer capability 1* information element is followed by the *bearer capability 2* IE in the SETUP, the above rules apply to both *bearer capability* 1 IE and bearer capability 2 IE. Except those cases identified in GSM 07.01, if either *bearer capability* needs to be included, both shall be included.

Furthermore, both *bearer capability* information elements may be present if the MS wishes to reverse the order of occurrence of the *bearer capability* information elements (which is referred to in the *repeat indicator* information element, see section 10.5.4.22) in cases identified in GSM 07.01.

9.3.2.3 Cause

This information element is included if the MS is compatible but the user is busy.

9.3.2.4 CC Capabilities

This information element may be included by the MS to indicate its call control capabilities.

9.3.3 Call proceeding

This message is sent by the network to the calling MS to indicate that the requested call establishment information has been received, and no more call establishment information will be accepted.

See table 9.57/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CALL PROCEEDING
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.57/GSM 04.08: CALL PROCEEDING message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Call proceeding message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
D-	Repeat Indicator	Repeat Indicator 10.5.4.22	C	TV	1
04	Bearer capability 1	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
04	Bearer capability 2	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
1E	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	O	TLV	4
2-	Priority granted	Priority Level 10.5.1.11	O	TV	1

9.3.3.1 Repeat indicator

This information element is included if and only if *bearer capability 1* IE and *bearer capability 2 IE* are both contained in the message.

9.3.3.2 Bearer capability 1 and bearer capability 2

The *bearer capability 1* information element is included if the network has to specify at least one of the negotiable parameters described in GSM 07.01.

When the *bearer capability 1* information element is followed by the *bearer capability 2* IE in the SETUP, the above rule applies to both *bearer capability* 1 IE and *bearer capability 2* IE. Except those cases identified in GSM 07.01, if either *bearer capability* needs to be included, both shall be included.

9.3.3.3 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.3.4 Progress Indicator

This information element may be included:

- in order to pass information about the call in progress e.g. in the event of interworking and/or
- to make the MS attach the user connection for speech.

9.3.3.5 Priority granted

The priority field is provided by the network in the case that eMLPP is used and the priority assigned by the network is not the same as that requested by the MS.

9.3.4 Congestion control

This message is sent by the MS or the network to indicate the establishment or termination of flow control on the transmission of USER INFORMATION messages.

See table 9.58/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CONGESTION CONTROL
Significance: local (note)
Direction: both

TABLE 9.58/GSM 04.08: CONGESTION CONTROL message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Congestion control message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Congestion level	Congestion level 10.5.4.12	M	V	1/2
	Spare half octet	Spare half octet 10.5.1.8	M	V	1/2
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32

NOTE: This message has local significance, but may carry information of global significance.

9.3.4.1 Cause

This information element is included if the user to user information has been discarded as a result of the congestion situation.

9.3.5 Connect

9.3.5.1 Connect (network to MS direction)

This message is sent by the network to the calling MS to indicate call acceptance by the called user.

See table 9.59/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.59/GSM 04.08: CONNECT message content(network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Connect message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
1E	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	O	TLV	4
4C	Connected number	Connected number 10.5.4.13	O	TLV	3-14
4D	Connected subaddress	Connected subaddress 10.5.4.14	O	TLV	2-23
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

9.3.5.1.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.5.1.2 Progress indicator

This information element may be included by the network,

- in order to pass information about the call in progress e.g. in the event of interworking and/or
- to make the MS attach the user connection for speech.

9.3.5.1.3 User-user

This information element may be included by the network if the remote user awarded the call included a user- user information element in the CONNECT message.

9.3.5.2 Connect (MS to network direction)

This message is sent by the called MS to the network to indicate call acceptance by the called user.

See table 9.59a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.59a/GSM 04.08: CONNECT message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Connect message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
4D	Connected subaddress	Connected subaddress 10.5.4.14	O	TLV	2-23
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

9.3.5.2.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.5.2.2 User-user

This information element is included when the answering MS wants to return user information to the calling remote user.

9.3.5.2.3 SS version

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.6 Connect acknowledge

This message is sent by the network to the called MS to indicate that the MS has been awarded the call. It shall also be sent by the calling MS to the network to acknowledge the offered connection.

See table 9.60/GSM 04.08.

Message type: CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: both

TABLE 9.60/GSM 04.08: CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Connect acknowledge message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.7 Disconnect

9.3.7.1 Disconnect (network to MS direction)

This message is sent by the network to indicate that the end-to-end connection is cleared.

See table 9.61/GSM 04.08.

Message type: DISCONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.61/GSM 04.08: DISCONNECT message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Disconnect message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
1E	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	O	TLV	4
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

9.3.7.1.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services, such as the user-user service.

9.3.7.1.2 Progress indicator

This information element is included by the network to make the MS attach the user connection for speech and react in a specific way during call clearing (see section 5.4.4).

9.3.7.1.3 User-user

This information element may be included by the network when the remote user initiates call clearing and included a user-user information element in the DISCONNECT message.

9.3.7.2 Disconnect (MS to network direction)

This message is sent by the MS to request the network to clear an end-to-end connection.

See table 9.61a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: DISCONNECT
Significance: global
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.61a/GSM 04.08: DISCONNECT message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Disconnect message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

9.3.7.2.1 Facility

This information element may be used for functional operation of supplementary services, such as the user-user service.

9.3.7.2.2 User-user

This information element is included when the MS initiates call clearing and wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time.

9.3.7.2.3 SS version

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.8 Emergency setup

This message is sent from the MS to initiate emergency call establishment.

See table 9.62/GSM 04.08.

Message type: EMERGENCY SETUP
Significance: global
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.62/GSM 04.08: EMERGENCY SETUP message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Emergency setup message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
04	Bearer capability	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-9

9.3.8.1 Bearer capability

If the element is not included, the network shall by default assume speech and select full rate speech version 1. If this information element is included, it shall indicate speech, the appropriate speech version(s) and have the appropriate value of radio channel requirement field.

9.3.9 Facility

9.3.9.1 Facility (network to MS direction)

This message is sent by the network to the MS to request or acknowledge a supplementary service. The supplementary service to be invoked and its associated parameters are specified in the facility information element.

See table 9.62a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: FACILITY
Significance: local (NOTE 1)
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.62a/GSM 04.08: FACILITY message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Facility message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Facility (note 2)	Facility 10.5.4.15	M	LV	1-?

NOTE 1: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance.

NOTE 2: The *facility* information element has no upper length limit except that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message, see GSM 04.06.

9.3.9.2 Facility (MS to network direction)

This message is sent by the MS to the network to request or acknowledge a supplementary service. The supplementary service to be invoked and its associated parameters are specified in the facility information element.

See table 9.62b/GSM 04.08.

Message type: FACILITY
Significance: local (note 1)
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.62b/GSM 04.08: FACILITY message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Facility message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Facility (note 2)	Facility 10.5.4.15	M	LV	1-?
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

NOTE 1: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance.

NOTE 2: The *facility* information element has no upper length limit except that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message, see GSM 04.06.

9.3.9.2.1 SS version

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.10 Hold

This message is sent by the mobile user to request the hold function for an existing call.

See table 9.62c/GSM 04.08 for the content of the HOLD message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: HOLD
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

Table 9.62c/GSM 04.08: HOLD message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Hold message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.11 Hold Acknowledge

This message is sent by the network to indicate that the hold function has been successfully performed.

See table 9.62d/GSM 04.08 for the content of the HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

Table 9.62d/GSM 04.08: HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Hold Acknowledge message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.12 Hold Reject

This message is sent by the network to indicate the denial of a request to hold a call.

See table 9.62e/GSM 04.08 for the content of the HOLD REJECT message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: HOLD REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

Table 9.62e/GSM 04.08: HOLD REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Hold Reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31

9.3.13 Modify

This message is sent by the MS to the network or by the network to the MS to request a change in bearer capability for a call.

See table 9.63/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MODIFY
Significance: global
Direction: both

TABLE 9.63/GSM 04.08: MODIFY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Modify message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Bearer capability	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	M	LV	2-9
7C	Low layer comp.	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
7D	High layer comp.	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5
A3	Reverse call setup direction	Reverse call setup direction 10.5.4.22a	O	T	1

9.3.13.1 Low layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.13.2 High layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.13.3 Reverse call setup direction

This information element is included or omitted in the mobile to network direction according to the rules defined in section 5.3.4.3.1.

9.3.14 Modify complete

This message is sent by the MS to the network or by the network to the MS to indicate completion of a request to change bearer capability for a call.

See table 9.64/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MODIFY COMPLETE
Significance: global
Direction: both

TABLE 9.64/GSM 04.08: MODIFY COMPLETE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Modify complete message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Bearer capability	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	M	LV	2-9
7C	Low layer comp.	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
7D	High layer comp.	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5
A3	Reverse call setup direction	Reverse call setup direction 10.5.4.22a	O	T	1

9.3.14.1 Low layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.14.2 High layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.14.3 Reverse call setup direction

This information element is included or omitted according to the rules defined in section 5.3.4.3.2.

9.3.15 Modify reject

This message is sent by the MS to the network or by the network to the MS to indicate failure of a request to change the bearer capability for a call.

See table 9.65/GSM 04.08.

Message type: MODIFY REJECT
Significance: global
Direction: both

TABLE 9.65/GSM 04.08: MODIFY REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Modify reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Bearer capability	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	M	LV	2-9
	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31
7C	Low layer comp.	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
7D	High layer comp.	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5

9.3.15.1 Low layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.15.2 High layer compatibility

This information element shall be included if it was included in the initial SETUP message.

9.3.16 Notify

This message is sent either from the MS or from the network to indicate information pertaining to a call, such as user suspended.

See table 9.66/GSM 04.08.

Message type: NOTIFY
Significance: access
Direction: both

TABLE 9.66/GSM 04.08: NOTIFY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Notify message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Notification indicator	Notification indicator 10.5.4.20	M	V	1

9.3.17 Progress

This message is sent from the network to the MS to indicate the progress of a call in the event of interworking or in connection with the provision of in-band information/patterns.

See table 9.67/GSM 04.08.

Message type: PROGRESS
Significance: global
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.67/GSM 04.08: PROGRESS message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Progress message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	M	LV	3
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

9.3.17.1 User-user

This information element is included when the PROGRESS message is sent by the network when the call has been cleared by the remote user before it reached the active state to indicate that the remote user wants to pass user information at call clearing time.

9.3.18 Release

9.3.18.1 Release (network to MS direction)

This message is sent, from the network to the MS to indicate that the network intends to release the transaction identifier, and that the receiving equipment shall release the transaction identifier after sending RELEASE COMPLETE.

See table 9.68/GSM 04.08.

Message type: RELEASE
Significance: local (note)
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.68/GSM 04.08: RELEASE message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Release message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
08	Second cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

NOTE: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

9.3.18.1.1 Cause

This information element shall be included if this message is used to initiate call clearing.

9.3.18.1.2 Second cause

This information element may be included under the conditions described in section 5.4.4.2.3 "Abnormal cases" (Clearing initiated by the network).

9.3.18.1.3 Facility

This information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.18.1.4 User-user

This information element may be included in the network to MS direction, when the RELEASE message is used to initiate call clearing, in order to transport user-user information from the remote user.

9.3.18.2 Release (MS to network direction)

This message is sent from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS intends to release the transaction identifier, and that the receiving equipment shall release the transaction identifier after sending RELEASE COMPLETE.

See table 9.68a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: RELEASE
Significance: local (note)
Direction: MS to network direction

TABLE 9.68a/GSM 04.08: RELEASE message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Release message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
08	Second cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

NOTE: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

9.3.18.2.1 Cause

This information element shall be included if this message is used to initiate call clearing.

9.3.18.2.2 Second cause

This information element may be included under the conditions described in section 5.4.3.5 "Abnormal cases" (Clearing initiated by the MS).

9.3.18.2.3 Facility

This information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.18.2.4 User-user

This information element is included when the RELEASE message is used to initiate call clearing and the MS wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time.

9.3.18.2.5 SS version

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.19 Release complete

9.3.19.1 Release complete (network to MS direction)

This message is sent from the network to the MS to indicate that the network has released the transaction identifier and that the MS shall release the transaction identifier.

See table 9.69/GSM 04.08.

Message type: RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: local (note)
Direction: network to MS direction

TABLE 9.69/GSM 04.08: RELEASE COMPLETE message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Release complete message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35

NOTE: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

9.3.19.1.1 Cause

This information element shall be included if the message is used to initiate call clearing.

9.3.19.1.2 Facility

This information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.19.1.3 User-user

This information element is included in the network to MS direction, when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is used to initiate call clearing, in order to transport user-user information from the remote user.

9.3.19.2 Release complete (MS to network direction)

This message is sent from the MS to the network to indicate that the MS has released the transaction identifier and that the network shall release the transaction identifier.

See table 9.69a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: RELEASE COMPLETE
Significance: local (note)
Direction: MS to network direction

TABLE 9.69a/GSM 04.08: RELEASE COMPLETE message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Release complete message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
08	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	O	TLV	4-32
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3

NOTE: This message has local significance; however, it may carry information of global significance when used as the first call clearing message.

9.3.19.2.1 Cause

This information element shall be included if the message is used to initiate call clearing.

9.3.19.2.2 Facility

This information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.19.2.3 User-user

This information element is included in the MS to network direction when the RELEASE COMPLETE message is used to initiate call clearing and the MS wants to pass user information to the remote user at call clearing time.

9.3.19.2.4 SS version.

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.20 Retrieve

This message is sent by the mobile user to request the retrieval of a held call.

See table 9.69b/GSM 04.08 for the content of the RETRIEVE message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: RETRIEVE
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

Table 9.69b/GSM 04.08: RETRIEVE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Retrieve message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.21 Retrieve Acknowledge

This message is sent by the network to indicate that the retrieve function has been successfully performed.

See table 9.69c/GSM 04.08 for the content of the RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

Table 9.69c/GSM 04.08: RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Retrieve Acknowledge message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.22 Retrieve Reject

This message is sent by the network to indicate the inability to perform the requested retrieve function.

See table 9.69d/GSM 04.08 for the content of the RETRIEVE REJECT message.

For the use of this message, see GSM 04.10.

Message type: RETRIEVE REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

Table 9.69d/GSM 04.08: RETRIEVE REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Retrieve Reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31

9.3.23 Setup

9.3.23.1 Setup (mobile terminated call establishment)

This message is sent by the network to the MS to initiate a mobile terminated call establishment.

See table 9.70/GSM 04.08.

Message type: SETUP
Significance: global
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.70/GSM 04.08: SETUP message content (network to MS direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Setup message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
D-	BC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	C	TV	1
04	Bearer capability 1	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
04	Bearer capability 2	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
1E	Progress indicator	Progress indicator 10.5.4.21	O	TLV	4
34	Signal	Signal 10.5.4.23	O	TV	2
5C	Calling party BCD number	Calling party BCD num. 10.5.4.9	O	TLV	3-14
5D	Calling party sub-address	Calling party subaddr. 10.5.4.10	O	TLV	2-23

TABLE 9.70/GSM 04.08 (continued): SETUP message content (network to MS direction)

5E	Called party BCD number	Called party BCD num. 10.5.4.7	O	TLV	3-13
6D	Called party sub-address	Called party subaddr. 10.5.4.8	O	TLV	2-23
D-	LLC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	O	TV	1
7C	Low layer compatibility I	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
7C	Low layer compatibility II	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	C	TLV	2-15
D-	HLC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	O	TV	1
7D	High layer compatibility i	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5
7D	High layer compatibility ii	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	C	TLV	2-5
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
8-	Priority	Priority Level 10.5.1.11	O	TV	1

9.3.23.1.1 BC repeat indicator

The *BC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only if *bearer capability* 1 information element and *bearer capability 2* IE are both present in the message.

9.3.23.1.2 Bearer capability 1 and bearer capability 2

The *bearer capability 1* information element may be omitted in the case where the mobile subscriber is allocated only one directory number for all services (ref.: GSM 09.07). The *bearer capability 2* IE is missing at least if the *bearer capability 1* IE is missing.

9.3.23.1.3 Facility

This information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.23.1.4 Progress indicator

This information element is included by the network

- in order to pass information about the call in progress e.g. in the event of interworking and/or
- to make the MS attach the user connection for speech.

9.3.23.1.5 Called party subaddress

Included in the Network-to-MS direction if the calling user includes a *called party subaddress* information element in the SETUP message.

9.3.23.1.6 LLC repeat indicator

The *LLC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only if both following conditions hold:

- The *BC repeat indicator* IE is contained in the message.
- The *low layer compatibility I* IE is contained in the message.

If included, the *LLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

9.3.23.1.7 Low layer compatibility I

Included in the network-to-MS direction if the calling user specified a low layer compatibility.

9.3.23.1.8 Low layer compatibility II

Included if and only if the *LLC repeat indicator* information element is contained in the message.

9.3.23.1.9 HLC repeat indicator

The *HLC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only both following conditions hold:

- The *BC repeat indicator* IE is contained in the message.
- The *high layer compatibility i* IE is contained in the message.

If included, the *HLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

9.3.23.1.10 High layer compatibility i

Included in the network-to-MS direction if the calling user specified a high layer compatibility.

9.3.23.1.11 High layer compatibility ii

Included if and only if the *HLC repeat indicator* information element is contained in the message.

9.3.23.1.12 User-user

May be included in the network to called MS direction when the calling remote user included a user-user information element in the SETUP message.

9.3.23.1.13 Priority

May be included by the network to indicate the priority of the incoming call if eMLPP is used.

9.3.23.2 Setup (mobile originating call establishment)

This message is sent from the MS to the network to initiate a mobile originating call establishment.

See table 9.70a/GSM 04.08.

Message type: SETUP
Significance: global
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.70a/GSM 04.08: SETUP message content (MS to network direction)

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Setup message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
D-	BC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	C	TV	1
04	Bearer capability 1	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	M	TLV	3-10
04	Bearer capability 2	Bearer capability 10.5.4.5	O	TLV	3-10
1C	Facility	Facility 10.5.4.15	O	TLV	2-?
5D	Calling party sub-address	Calling party subaddr. 10.5.4.10	O	TLV	2-23
5E	Called party BCD number	Called party BCD num. 10.5.4.7	M	TLV	3-43
6D	Called party sub-address	Called party subaddr. 10.5.4.8	O	TLV	2-23
D-	LLC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	O	TV	1

TABLE 9.70a/GSM 04.08 (concluded): SETUP message content (MS to network direction)

7C	Low layer compatibility I	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
7C	Low layer compatibility II	Low layer comp. 10.5.4.18	O	TLV	2-15
D-	HLC repeat indicator	Repeat indicator 10.5.4.22	O	TV	1
7D	High layer compatibility i	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5
7D	High layer compatibility ii	High layer comp. 10.5.4.16	O	TLV	2-5
7E	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	O	TLV	3-35
7F	SS version	SS version indicator 10.5.4.24	O	TLV	2-3
A1	CLIR suppression	CLIR suppression 10.5.4.11a	C	T	1
A2	CLIR invocation	CLIR invocation 10.5.4.11b	C	T	1
15	CC capabilities	Call Control Capabilities 10.5.4.5a	O	TLV	3

9.3.23.2.1 BC repeat indicator

The *BC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only if *bearer capability 1* IE and *bearer capability 2* IE are both present in the message.

9.3.23.2.2 Facility

The information element may be included for functional operation of supplementary services.

9.3.23.2.3 LLC repeat indicator

The *LLC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only if both following conditions hold:

- The *BC repeat indicator* IE is contained in the message.
- The *low layer compatibility I* IE is contained in the message.

If included, the *LLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

9.3.23.2.4 Low layer compatibility I

The information element is included in the MS-to-network direction when the calling MS wants to pass low layer compatibility information to the called user.

9.3.23.2.5 Low layer compatibility II

Included if and only if the *LLC repeat indicator* information element is contained in the message.

9.3.23.2.6 HLC repeat indicator

The *HLC repeat indicator* information element is included if and only if both following conditions hold:

- The *BC repeat indicator* IE is contained in the message.
- The *high layer compatibility i* IE is contained in the message.

If included, the *HLC repeat indicator* shall specify the same repeat indication as the *BC repeat indicator* IE.

9.3.23.2.7 High layer compatibility i

The information element is included when the calling MS wants to pass high layer compatibility information to the called user.

9.3.23.2.8 High layer compatibility ii

Included if and only if the *HLC repeat indicator* information element is contained in the message.

9.3.23.2.9 User-user

The information element is included in the calling MS to network direction when the calling MS wants to pass user information to the called remote user.

9.3.23.2.10 SS version

This information element shall not be included if the *facility* information element is not present in this message.

This information element shall be included or excluded as defined in GSM 04.10. This information element should not be transmitted unless explicitly required by GSM 04.10.

9.3.23.2.11 CLIR suppression

The information element may be included by the MS (see GSM 04.81). If this information element is included the *CLIR invocation* IE shall not be included.

9.3.23.2.12 CLIR invocation

The information element may be included by the MS (see GSM 04.81). If this information element is included the *CLIR suppression* IE shall not be included.

9.3.23.2.13 CC Capabilities

This information element may be included by the MS to indicate its call control capabilities.

9.3.24 Start DTMF

This message is sent by the MS to the network and contains the digit the network should reconvert back into a DTMF tone which is then applied towards the remote user.

See table 9.71/GSM 04.08.

Message type: START DTMF
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.71/GSM 04.08: START DTMF message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Start DTMF message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
2C	Keypad facility	Keypad facility 10.5.4.17	M	TV	2

9.3.25 Start DTMF Acknowledge

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate the successful initiation of the action requested by the START DTMF message (conversion of the digit contained in this message into a DTMF tone).

See table 9.72/GSM 04.08.

Message type: START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.72/GSM 04.08: START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Start DTMF acknowledge message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
2C	Keypad facility	Keypad facility 10.5.4.17	M	TV	2

9.3.25.1 Keypad facility

This information element contains the digit corresponding to the DTMF tone that the network applies towards the remote user.

9.3.26 Start DTMF reject

This message is sent by the network to the MS, if the network can not accept the START DTMF message.

See table 9.73/GSM 04.08.

Message type: START DTMF REJECT
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.73/GSM 04.08: START DTMF REJECT message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Start DTMF reject message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31

9.3.27 Status

This message is sent by the MS or the network at any time during a call to report certain error conditions listed in section 8. It shall also be sent in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message.

See table 9.74/GSM 04.08.

Message type: STATUS
Significance: local
Direction: both

TABLE 9.74/GSM 04.08: STATUS message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Status message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	Cause	Cause 10.5.4.11	M	LV	3-31
	Call state	Call state 10.5.4.6	M	V	1
24	Auxiliary states	Auxiliary states 10.5.4.4	O	TLV	3

9.3.27.1 Auxiliary states

The information element is included if and only if the call state is "active" or "mobile originating modify" and any auxiliary state is different from "idle". For the definition of the auxiliary states see GSM 04.83 and GSM 04.84

9.3.28 Status enquiry

This message is sent by the MS or the network at any time to solicit a STATUS message from the peer layer 3 entity. Sending of STATUS message in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message is mandatory.

See table 9.75/GSM 04.08.

Message type: STATUS ENQUIRY
Significance: local
Direction: both

TABLE 9.75/GSM 04.08: STATUS ENQUIRY message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Status enquiry message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.29 Stop DTMF

This message is sent by a MS to the network and is used to stop the DTMF tone sent towards the remote user.

See table 9.76/GSM 04.08.

Message type: STOP DTMF
Significance: local
Direction: MS to network

TABLE 9.76/GSM 04.08: STOP DTMF message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Stop DTMF message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.30 Stop DTMF acknowledge

This message is sent by the network to the MS to indicate that the sending of the DTMF tone has been stopped.

See table 9.77/GSM 04.08.

Message type: STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
Significance: local
Direction: network to MS

TABLE 9.77/GSM 04.08: STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	Stop DTMF acknowledge message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1

9.3.31 User information

This message is sent by the MS to the network to transfer information to the remote user. This message is also sent by the network to the MS to deliver information transferred from the remote user. This message is used if the user-to-user transfer is part of an allowed information transfer as defined in GSM 04.10.

See table 9.78/GSM 04.08.

Message type: USER INFORMATION
Significance: access
Direction: both

TABLE 9.78/GSM 04.08: USER INFORMATION message content

IEI	Information element	Type / Reference	Presence	Format	Length
	Call control protocol discriminator	Protocol discriminator 10.2	M	V	1/2
	Transaction identifier	Transaction identifier 10.3.2	M	V	1/2
	User Information message type	Message type 10.4	M	V	1
	User-user	User-user 10.5.4.25	M	LV	3-130
A0	More data	More data 10.5.4.19	O	T	1

9.3.31.1 User-user

Some networks may only support a maximum length of 35 octets. Procedures for interworking are not currently defined and are for further study.

9.3.31.2 More data

The information element is included by the sending user to indicate that another USER INFORMATION message pertaining to the same message block will follow.

10 General message format and information elements coding

The figures and text in this section describe the Information Elements contents.

10.1 Overview

Within the Layer 3 protocols defined in GSM 04.08, every message with the exception of the messages sent on the BCCH, downlink CCCH, SCH, RACH, and the HANDOVER ACCESS message, is a standard L3 message as defined in GSM 04.07. This means that the message consists of the following parts:

a) protocol discriminator;
b) transaction identifier;
c) message type;
d) other information elements, as required.

This organization is illustrated in the example shown in figure 10.1/GSM 04.08.

8 7 6 5	4 3 2 1	
Transaction identifier or Skip Indicator	Protocol discriminator	octet 1
Message type		octet 2
Other information elements as required		etc...

FIGURE 10.1/GSM 04.08
General message organization example

Unless specified otherwise in the message descriptions of section 9, a particular information element shall not be present more than once in a given message.

The term "default" implies that the value defined shall be used in the absence of any assignment, or that this value allows negotiation of alternative values in between the two peer entities.

When a field extends over more than one octet, the order of bit values progressively decreases as the octet number increases. The least significant bit of the field is represented by the lowest numbered bit of the highest numbered octet of the field.

10.2 Protocol Discriminator

The Protocol Discriminator (PD) and its use are defined in GSM 04.07. GSM 04.08 defines the protocols relating to the PD values:

bits	4 3 2 1	
	0 0 1 1	Call Control; call related SS messages
	0 1 0 1	Mobility Management messages
	0 1 1 0	Radio Resource management messages

except the call related SS procedures, which are defined in GSM 04.10.

10.3 Skip indicator and transaction identifier

10.3.1 Skip indicator

Bits 5 to 8 of the first octet of every Radio Resource management message and Mobility Management message contains the skip indicator. A message received with skip indicator different from 0000 shall be ignored. A message received with skip indicator encoded as 0000 shall not be ignored (unless it is ignored for other reasons). A protocol entity sending a Radio Resource management message or a Mobility Management message shall encode the skip indicator as 0000.

10.3.2 Transaction identifier

Bits 5 to 8 of the first octet of every message belonging to the protocol "Call Control; call related SS messages" contain the transaction identifier (TI). The transaction identifier and its use are defined in GSM 04.07.

10.4 Message Type

The message type IE and its use are defined in GSM 04.07. Tables 10.3/GSM 04.08, 10.4/GSM 04.08, and 10.5/GSM 04.08 define the value part of the message type IE used in the Radio Resource management protocol, the Mobility Management protocol, and the Call Control protocol.

TABLE 10.1/GSM 04.08 (page 1 of 2): Message types for Radio Resource management

```
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

0 0 1 1 1 - - -  Channel establishment messages:
          0 1 1  - ADDITIONAL ASSIGNMENT
          1 1 1  - IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT
          0 0 1  - IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED
          0 1 0  - IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT

0 0 1 1 0 - - -  Ciphering messages:
          1 0 1  - CIPHERING MODE COMMAND
          0 1 0  - CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE

0 0 1 0 1 - - -  Handover messages:
          1 1 0  - ASSIGNMENT COMMAND
          0 0 1  - ASSIGNMENT COMPLETE
          1 1 1  - ASSIGNMENT FAILURE
          0 1 1  - HANDOVER COMMAND
          1 0 0  - HANDOVER COMPLETE
          0 0 0  - HANDOVER FAILURE
          1 0 1  - PHYSICAL INFORMATION

0 0 0 0 1 - - -  Channel release messages:
          1 0 1  - CHANNEL RELEASE
          0 1 0  - PARTIAL RELEASE
          1 1 1  - PARTIAL RELEASE COMPLETE

0 0 1 0 0 - - -  Paging and Notification messages:
          0 0 1  - PAGING REQUEST TYPE 1
          0 1 0  - PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2
          1 0 0  - PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3
          1 1 1  - PAGING RESPONSE
          0 0 0  - NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 1
          0 1 1  - NOTIFICATION/NCH TYPE 2
          1 0 1  - NOTIFICATION/FACCH
          1 1 0  - NOTIFICATION/SACCH
0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1  - NOTIFICATION RESPONSE
```

TABLE 10.1/GSM 04.08 (page 2 of 2): Message types for Radio Resource management

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0	0	1	1	-	-	-	System information messages:
					0	0	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 8
					0	0	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 1
					0	1	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2
					0	1	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 3
					1	0	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 4
					1	0	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5
					1	1	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 6
					1	1	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 7
0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	System information messages:
					0	1	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2bis
					0	1	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 2ter
					1	0	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5bis
					1	1	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 5ter
					1	0	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9
					0	0	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10
					0	0	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 10bis
					1	1	1	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	- SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 12
0	0	0	1	0	-	-	-	Miscellaneous messages:
					0	0	0	- CHANNEL MODE MODIFY
					0	1	0	- RR STATUS
					1	1	1	- CHANNEL MODE MODIFY ACKNOWLEDGE
					1	0	0	- FREQUENCY REDEFINITION
					1	0	1	- MEASUREMENT REPORT
					1	1	0	- CLASSMARK CHANGE
					0	1	1	- CLASSMARK ENQUIRY
								VGCS uplink control messages:
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	- VGCS UPLINK GRANT
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	- UPLINK RELEASE
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	- UPLINK FREE
0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	- UPLINK BUSY
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	- TALKER INDICATION

Bit 8 is reserved for possible future use as an extension bit, see GSM 04.07.

TABLE 10.2/GSM 04.08: Message types for Mobility Management

```
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

0 x 0 0 - - - -   Registration messages:
        0 0 0 1   - IMSI DETACH INDICATION
        0 0 1 0   - LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT
        0 1 0 0   - LOCATION UPDATING REJECT
        1 0 0 0   - LOCATION UPDATING REQUEST

0 x 0 1 - - - -   Security messages:
        0 0 0 1   - AUTHENTICATION REJECT
        0 0 1 0   - AUTHENTICATION REQUEST
        0 1 0 0   - AUTHENTICATION RESPONSE
        1 0 0 0   - IDENTITY REQUEST
        1 0 0 1   - IDENTITY RESPONSE
        1 0 1 0   - TMSI REALLOCATION COMMAND
        1 0 1 1   - TMSI REALLOCATION COMPLETE

0 x 1 0 - - - -   Connection management messages:
        0 0 0 1   - CM SERVICE ACCEPT
        0 0 1 0   - CM SERVICE REJECT
        0 0 1 1   - CM SERVICE ABORT
        0 1 0 0   - CM SERVICE REQUEST
        1 0 0 0   - CM REESTABLISHMENT REQUEST
        1 0 0 1   - ABORT

0 x 1 1 - - - -   Miscellaneous messages:
        0 0 0 0   - MM NULL
        0 0 0 1   - MM STATUS
        0 0 1 0   - MM INFORMATION
```

Bit 8 is reserved for possible future use as an extension bit, see GSM 04.07.

Bit 7 is reserved for the send sequence number in messages sent from the MS. In messages sent from the network, bit 7 is coded with a "0". See GSM 04.07.

TABLE 10.3/GSM 04.08: Message types for Call Control and call related SS messages

```
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 x 0 0 0 0 0 0  escape to nationally specific
                 message types ; see 1) below

0 x 0 0 - - - -  Call establishment messages:
        0 0 0 1  - ALERTING
        1 0 0 0  - CALL CONFIRMED
        0 0 1 0  - CALL PROCEEDING
        0 1 1 1  - CONNECT
        1 1 1 1  - CONNECT ACKNOWLEDGE
        1 1 1 0  - EMERGENCY SETUP
        0 0 1 1  - PROGRESS
        0 1 0 1  - SETUP

0 x 0 1 - - - -  Call information phase messages:
        0 1 1 1  - MODIFY
        1 1 1 1  - MODIFY COMPLETE
        0 0 1 1  - MODIFY REJECT
        0 0 0 0  - USER INFORMATION
        1 0 0 0  - HOLD
        1 0 0 1  - HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE
        1 0 1 0  - HOLD REJECT
        1 1 0 0  - RETRIEVE
        1 1 0 1  - RETRIEVE ACKNOWLEDGE
        1 1 1 0  - RETRIEVE REJECT

0 x 1 0 - - - -  Call clearing messages:
        0 1 0 1  - DISCONNECT
        1 1 0 1  - RELEASE
        1 0 1 0  - RELEASE COMPLETE

0 x 1 1 - - - -  Miscellaneous messages:
        1 0 0 1  - CONGESTION CONTROL
        1 1 1 0  - NOTIFY
        1 1 0 1  - STATUS
        0 1 0 0  - STATUS ENQUIRY
        0 1 0 1  - START DTMF
        0 0 0 1  - STOP DTMF
        0 0 1 0  - STOP DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
        0 1 1 0  - START DTMF ACKNOWLEDGE
        0 1 1 1  - START DTMF REJECT
        1 0 1 0  - FACILITY
```

1): When used, the message type is defined in the following octet(s), according to the national specification.

Bit 8 is reserved for possible future use as an extension bit, see GSM 04.07.

Bit 7 is reserved for the send sequence number in messages sent from the MS. In messages sent from the network, bit 7 is coded with a "0". See GSM 04.07.

10.5 Other information elements

The different formats (V, LV, T, TV, TLV) and the four categories of information elements (type 1, 2, 3, and 4) are defined in GSM 04.07.

The first octet of an information element in the non-imperative part contains the IEI of the information element. If this octet does not correspond to an IEI known in the message (see GSM 04.07), the receiver shall assume that the information element is:

- if bit 8 of the first octet of the IE has the value 1, the IE is of type 1 or 2, i.e. that it is an information element of one octet length;

- if bit 8 of the first octet of the IE has the value 0, the IE is of type 4, i.e. that the next octet is the length indicator indicating the length of the remaining of the information element. If in this case bits 5, 6, and 7 of the first octet of the IE also have the value 0, the IE is encoded as "comprehension required"

  NOTE: The handling of messages containing unknown IEs encoded as "comprehension required" is specified in section 8.

This rule allows the receiver to jump over unknown information elements and to analyse any following information elements.

The information elements which are common for at least two of the three protocols Radio Resources management, Mobility Management and Call Control, are listed in section 10.5.1.

The information elements for the protocols Radio Resources management, Mobility Management and Call Control are listed in sections 10.5.2, 10.5.3 and 10.5.4 respectively. Default information element identifiers are listed in annex K.

NOTE: Different information elements may have the same default information element identifier if they belong to different protocols.

The descriptions of the information element types in sections 10.5.1, 10.5.2, 10.5.3, and 10.5.4 are organized in alphabetical order of the IE types. Each IE type is described in one subsection.

The subsection may have an introduction:

- possibly explaining the purpose of the IE;

- possibly describing whether the IE belongs to type 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

- possibly indicating the length that the information element has if it is either type 5 or if it is used in format TV (type 1 and 3) or TLV (type 4).

A figure of the subsection defines the structure of the IE indicating:

- possibly the position and length of the IEI. (However it depends on the message in which the IE occurs whether the IE contains an IEI.);

- the fields the IE value part is composed of;

- possibly the position and length of the length indicator. (However it depends on the IE type whether the IE contains a length indicator or not.);

- possibly octet numbers of the octets that compose the IE (see clause a) below).

Finally, the subsection contains tables defining the structure and value range of the fields that compose the IE value part. The order of appearance for information elements in a message is defined in section 9.

The order of the information elements within the imperative part of messages has been chosen so that information elements with 1/2 octet of content (type 1) go together in succession. The first type 1 information element occupies bits 1 to 4 of octet N, the second bits 5 to 8 of octet N, the third bits 1 to 4 of octet N + 1 etc. If the number of type 1 information elements is odd then bits 5 to 8 of the last octet occupied by these information elements contains a spare half octet IE in format V.

Where the description of information elements in this Technical Specification contains bits defined to be "spare bits", these bits shall set to the indicated value (0 or 1) by the sending side, and their value shall be ignored by the receiving side. With few exceptions, spare bits are indicated as being set to "0" in GSM 04.08.

The following rules apply for the coding of type 4 information elements:

a) The octet number of an octet (which is defined in the figure of a subsection) consists of a positive integer, possibly of an additional letter, and possibly of an additional asterisk, see clause f). The positive integer identifies one octet or a group of octets.

b) Each octet group is a self contained entity. The internal structure of an octet group may be defined in alternative ways.

c) An octet group is formed by using some extension mechanism. The preferred extension mechanism is to extend an octet (N) through the next octet(s) (Na, Nb, etc.) by using bit 8 in each octet as an extension bit.
The bit value "0" indicates that the octet group continues through to the next octet. The bit value "1" indicates that this octet is the last octet of the group. If one octet (Nb) is present, the preceding octets (N and Na) shall also be present.

In the format descriptions appearing in section 10.5.1 to 10.5.4, bit 8 is marked "0/1 ext" if another octet follows. Bit 8 is marked "1 ext" if this is the last octet in the extension domain.

Additional octets may be defined in later versions of the protocols ("1 ext" changed to "0/1 ext") and equipments shall be prepared to receive such additional octets; the contents of these octets shall be ignored. However the length indicated in sections 9 and 10 only takes into account this version of the protocols.

d) In addition to the extension mechanism defined above, an octet (N) may be extended through the next octet(s) (N+1, N+2 etc.) by indications in bits 7-1 (of octet N).

e) The mechanisms in c) and d) may be combined.

f) Optional octets are marked with asterisks (*).

10.5.1 Common information elements.

10.5.1.1 Cell identity

The purpose of the *Cell Identity* information element is to identify a cell within a location area.

The *Cell Identity* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.2/GSM 04.08 and table 10.5/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Identity* is a type 3 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Identity IEI							octet 1
CI value								octet 2
CI value (continued)								octet 3

FIGURE 10.2/GSM 04.08
***Cell Identity* information element**

TABLE 10.5/GSM 04.08: *Cell Identity* information element

CI value, Cell identity value (octet 2 and 3) In the CI value field bit 8 of octet 2 is the most significant bit and bit 1 of octet 3 the least significant bit. The coding of the cell identity is the responsibility of each administration. Coding using full hexadecimal representation may be used. The cell identity consists of 2 octets.

10.5.1.2 Ciphering Key Sequence Number

The purpose of the *Ciphering Key Sequence Number* information element is to make it possible for the network to identify the ciphering key Kc which is stored in the MS without invoking the authentication procedure. The ciphering key sequence number is allocated by the network and sent with the AUTHENTICATION REQUEST message to the MS where it is stored together with the calculated ciphering key Kc.

The *Ciphering Key Sequence Number* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.3/GSM 04.08 and table 10.6/GSM 04.08.

The ciphering key sequence number is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Ciphering Key Sequence Number IEI			0 spare	key sequence			octet 1

FIGURE 10.3/GSM 04.08
***Ciphering Key Sequence Number* information element**

TABLE 10.6/GSM 04.08: *Ciphering Key Sequence Number* information element

```
Key sequence (octet 1)

Bits
3 2 1

0 0 0
through  Possible values for the ciphering key
1 1 0     sequence number

1 1 1    No key is available (MS to network);
         Reserved (network to MS)
```

10.5.1.3 Location Area Identification

The purpose of the *Location Area Identification* information element is to provide an unambiguous identification of location areas within the area covered by the GSM system.

The *Location Area Identification* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.4/GSM 04.08 and table 10.7/GSM 04.08.

The *Location Area Identification* is a type 3 information element with 6 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Location Area Identification IEI							octet 1
MCC digit 2				MCC digit 1				octet 2
1	1	1	1	MCC digit 3				octet 3
MNC digit 2				MNC digit 1				octet 4
LAC								octet 5
LAC (continued)								octet 6

FIGURE 10.4/GSM 04.08
***Location Area Identification* information element**

TABLE 10.7/GSM 04.08: *Location Area Identification* information element

MCC, Mobile country code (octet 2 and 3) The MCC field is coded as in CCITT Rec. E212, Annex A. If the LAI is deleted the MCC and MNC shall take the value from the deleted LAI. In abnormal cases, the MCC stored in the mobile station can contain elements not in the set {0, 1 ... 9}. In such cases the mobile station should transmit the stored values using full hexadecimal encoding. When receiving such an MCC, the network shall treat the LAI as deleted. MNC, Mobile network code (octet 4) The coding of this field is the responsibility of each administration but BCD coding shall be used. If an administration decides to include only one digit in the MNC then bits 5 to 8 of octet 4 are coded as "1111". Note: GSM 03.03 defines that a 2 digit MNC shall be used, however the possibility to use a one digit MNC in LAI is provided on the radio interface In abnormal cases, the MNC stored in the mobile station can have digit 1 not in the set {0, 1 ... 9} and/or digit 2 not in the set {0, 1 ...9, F} hex. In such cases the mobile station should transmit the stored values using full hexadecimal encoding. When receiving such an MNC, the network shall treat the LAI as deleted. LAC, Location area code (octet 5 and 6) In the LAC field bit 8 of octet 5 is the most significant bit and bit 1 of octet 6 the least significant bit. The coding of the location area code is the responsibility of each administration except that two values are used to mark the LAC, and hence the LAI, as deleted. Coding using full hexadecimal representation may be used. The location area code consists of 2 octets. If a LAI has to be deleted then all bits of the location area code shall be set to one with the exception of the least significant bit which shall be set to zero. If a SIM is inserted in a Mobile Equipment with the location area code containing all zeros, then the Mobile Equipment shall recognise this LAC as part of a deleted LAI

10.5.1.4 Mobile Identity

The purpose of the *Mobile Identity* information element is to provide either the international mobile subscriber identity, IMSI, the temporary mobile subscriber identity, TMSI, the international mobile equipment identity, IMEI or the international mobile equipment identity together with the software version number, IMEISV.

The IMSI shall not exceed 15 digits, the TMSI is 4 octets long, and the IMEI is composed of 15 digits, the IMEISV is 16 digits (see GSM 03.03).

For all transactions except emergency call establishment, emergency call re-establishment, mobile terminated call establishment, the identification procedure, and the ciphering mode setting procedure, the MS and the network shall select the mobile identity type with the following priority:

1- TMSI: The TMSI shall be used if it is available.

2- IMSI: The IMSI shall be used in cases where no TMSI is available.

For mobile terminated call establishment the MS shall select the same mobile identity type as received from the network in the PAGING REQUEST message.

For emergency call establishment and re-establishment the MS shall select the mobile identity type with the following priority:

1- TMSI: The TMSI shall be used if it is available.

2- IMSI: The IMSI shall be used in cases where no TMSI is available.

3- IMEI: The IMEI shall be used in cases where no SIM is available or the SIM is considered as not valid by the MS or no IMSI or TMSI is available.

In the identification procedure the MS shall select the mobile identity type which was requested by the network.

In the ciphering mode setting procedure the mobile shall select the IMEISV.

The *Mobile Identity* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.5/GSM 04.08 and table 10.8/GSM 04.08.

The *Mobile Identity* is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octet and 11 octets length maximal. Further restriction on the length may be applied, e.g. number plans.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Mobile Identity IEI							octet 1
Length of mobile identity contents								octet 2
Identity digit 1				odd/ even indic	Type of identity			octet 3
Identity digit p+1				Identity digit p				octet 4*

FIGURE 10.5/GSM 04.08
***Mobile Identity* information element**

TABLE 10.8/GSM 04.08: *Mobile Identity* information element

```
Type of identity (octet 3)
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 1    IMSI
0 1 0    IMEI
0 1 1    IMEISV
1 0 0    TMSI
0 0 0    No Identity  note 1)

All other values are reserved.

Odd/even indication (octet 3)
Bit
4
0        even number of identity digits and also when
         the TMSI is used
1        odd number of identity digits

Identity digits (octet 3 etc)
For the IMSI, IMEI and IMEISV this field is coded using
BCD coding. If the number of identity digits is even
then bits 5 to 8 of the last octet shall be filled
with an end mark coded as "1111".

If the mobile identity is the TMSI then bits 5 to 8 of
octet 3 are coded as "1111" and bit 8 of octet 4 is the
most significant bit and bit 1 of the last octet the
least significant bit. The coding of the TMSI is left
open for each administration.
```

NOTE 1: This can be used in the case when a fill paging message without any valid identity has to be sent on the paging subchannel.

10.5.1.5 MS Classmark 1

The purpose of the *MS Classmark 1* information element is to provide the network with information concerning aspects of high priority of the MS equipment. This affects the manner in which the network handles the operation of the MS. The MS Classmark information indicates general MS characteristics and it shall therefore, except for fields explicitly indicated, be independent of the frequency band of the channel it is sent on.

The *MS Classmark 1* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.6/GSM 04.08 and table 10.9/GSM 04.08.

The *MS Classmark 1* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Mobile Station Classmark 1 IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="2">Revision
level</td><td>ES
IND</td><td>A5/1</td><td colspan="3">RF power
capability</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.6/GSM 04.08
***MS Classmark 1* information element**

Table 10.9/GSM 04.08: *MS Classmark 1* information element

Revision level (octet 2)

Bits
7 6
0 0 Reserved for phase 1
0 1 Used by phase 2 MSs

All other values are reserved for future use.

ES IND (octet 2, bit 5) "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option implementation

0 "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option is not implemented

1 "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option is implemented

A5/1 algorithm supported (octet 2, bit 4)
0 encryption algorithm A5/1 available
1 encryption algorithm A5/1 not available

RF power capability (octet 2)

When transmitted on a channel in the GSM 900 band
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 class 1
0 0 1 class 2
0 1 0 class 3
0 1 1 class 4
1 0 0 class 5

All other values are reserved.

When transmitted on a channel in the DCS 1800 band
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 class 1
0 0 1 class 2
0 1 0 class 3

All other values are reserved.

10.5.1.6 MS Classmark 2

The purpose of the *MS Classmark 2* information element is to provide the network with information concerning aspects of both high and low priority of the MS equipment. This affects the manner in which the network handles the operation of the MS. The MS Classmark information indicates general MS characteristics and it shall therefore, except for fields explicitly indicated, be independent of the frequency band of the channel it is sent on.

The *MS Classmark 2* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.7/GSM 04.08, table 10.10a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.10b/GSM 04.08.

The *MS Classmark 2* is a type 4 information element with 5 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Mobile station classmark 2 IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of mobile station classmark 2 contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="2">Revision
level</td><td>ES
IND</td><td>A5/1</td><td colspan="3">RF power
capability</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>PS
capa.</td><td colspan="2">SS Screen.
Indicator</td><td>SM ca
pabi.</td><td>VBS</td><td>VGCS</td><td>FC</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>CM3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>A5/3</td><td>A5/2</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.7/GSM 04.08
***MS Classmark 2* information element**

NOTE: Owing to backward compatibility problems, bit 8 of octet 4 should not be used unless it is also checked that the bits 8, 7 and 6 of octet 3 are not "0 0 0".

TABLE 10.10a/GSM 04.08: *MS Classmark 2* information element

Revision level (octet 3)
Bits
7 6
0 0 Reserved for phase 1
0 1 Used by phase 2 MSs

All other values are reserved for future use

ES IND (octet 2, bit 5) "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option implementation

0 "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option is not implemented
1 "Controlled Early Classmark Sending" option is implemented

A5/1 algorithm supported (octet 3, bit 4)

0 encryption algorithm A5/1 available
1 encryption algorithm A5/1 not available

When transmitted on a channel in the GSM 900 band
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 class 1
0 0 1 class 2
0 1 0 class 3
0 1 1 class 4
1 0 0 class 5

All other values are reserved.

When transmitted on a channel in the DCS 1800 band
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 class 1
0 0 1 class 2
0 1 0 class 3

All other values are reserved.

PS capability (pseudo-synchronization capability) (octet 4)
Bit 7
0 PS capability not present
1 PS capability present

SS Screening Indicator (octet 4)
Bits
6 5
0 0 defined in GSM 04.80
0 1 defined in GSM 04.80
1 0 defined in GSM 04.80
1 1 defined in GSM 04.80

SM capability (MT SMS pt to pt capability) (octet 4)
Bit 4
0 MS does not support mobile terminated point to point SMS
1 MS supports mobile terminated point to point SMS

TABLE 10.10b/GSM 04.08: *MS Classmark 2* information element

VBS notification reception (octet 4)
Bit 3
0 no VBS capability or no notifications wanted
1 VBS capability and notifications wanted

VGCS notification reception (octet 4)
Bit 2
0 no VGCS capability or no notifications wanted
1 VGCS capability and notifications wanted

FC Frequency Capability (octet 4)
When transmitted on a channel in the GSM 900 band:
Bit 1
0 The MS does not support the extension band G1 in addition to the primary GSM band. (For definition of frequency bands see GSM 05.05)

1 The MS does support the extension band G1 in addition to the primary GSM band. (For definition of frequency bands see GSM 05.05)

When transmitted on a channel in the DCS 1800 band :
Bit 1
0 Reserved for future use (for definition of frequency bands see GSM 05.05)

Note: This bit conveys no information about support or non support of the G1 extension band when transmitted on a DCS 1800 channel.

Classmark 3 (octet 5, bit 8)
0 No additional MS capability information available
1 Additional MS capabilities are described in the Classmark 3 information element

A5/3 algorithm supported (octet 5, bit 2)
0 encryption algorithm A5/3 not available
1 encryption algorithm A5/3 available

A5/2 algorithm supported (octet 5, bit 1)
0 encryption algorithm A5/2 not available
1 encryption algorithm A5/2 available

NOTE: Additional MS capability information might be obtained by invoking the classmark interrogation procedure.

10.5.1.7 MS Classmark 3

The purpose of the *MS Classmark 3* information element is to provide the network with information concerning aspects of the MS. The contents might affect the manner in which the network handles the operation of the MS. The MS Classmark information indicates general MS characteristics and it shall therefore, except for fields explicitly indicated, be independent of the frequency band of the channel it is sent on.

The *MS Classmark 3* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.8/GSM 04.08 and table 10.11/GSM 04.08.

The *MS Classmark 3* is a type 4 information element with a maximum of 14 octets length.

NOTE: The 14 octet limit is so that the CLASSMARK CHANGE message will fit in one layer 2 frame.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Mobile Station Classmark 3 IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of mobile station classmark 3 contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
Spare</td><td>Band
3</td><td>Band
2</td><td>Band
1</td><td>A5/7</td><td>A5/6</td><td>A5/5</td><td>A5/4</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Associated Radio
Capability 2</td><td colspan="4">Associated Radio
Capability 1</td><td>octet 3bis</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>octet N to 14</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.8/GSM 04.08
***MS Classmark 3* information element**

A multiband MS shall provide information about all frequency bands it can support. A single band MS shall never include octet 3bis.

Octets N to 14 are for future applications. The bits inside these octets are spare and these octets may be omitted. However, if octet n is present then octet m shall also be present, where m<n. In case of single band MS N is equal to 4 and in case of multiband MS N is currently equal to 5.

TABLE 10.11/GSM 04.08: *MS Classmark 3* information element

```
Multibands Supported Octet 3 (bit 5 to 7)
 Band 1 supported (octet 3, bit 5)
  0       P-GSM not supported
  1       P-GSM supported

Band 2 supported (octet 3, bit 6)
  0       E-GSM not supported
  1       E-GSM supported

Band 3 supported (octet 3, bit 7)
  0       DCS 1800 not supported
  1       DCS 1800 supported

The indication of support of P-GSM band or E-GSM band is mutually exclusive.

In this version of the protocol, the sender indicates either none or two
bands supported. However, if only one band is indicated, the receiver shall
ignore the Associated Radio Capability 2 in octet 3bis.

For single band mobile station all bits are set to 0.

A5/4 algorithm supported (octet 3, bit 1)
  0     encryption algorithm A5/4 not available
  1     encryption algorithm A5/4 available

A5/5 algorithm supported (octet 3, bit 2)
  0     encryption algorithm A5/5 not available
  1     encryption algorithm A5/5 available

A5/6 algorithm supported (octet 3, bit 3)
  0     encryption algorithm A5/6 not available
  1     encryption algorithm A5/6 available

A5/7 algorithm supported (octet 3, bit 4)
  0     encryption algorithm A5/7 not available
  1     encryption algorithm A5/7 available

Associated Radio capability 1 and 2 (octet 3bis)

The radio capability 1 corresponds to the first bit set to one of the
multiband support bits (in increasing order starting from band 1) and radio
capability 2 corresponds to the second bit set to 1 of the multiband support
bits.
For P-GSM, E-GSM and DCS 1800:
This element contains the binary coding of the power class associated with
the band indicated in multiband support bits (see GSM 05.05).
```

10.5.1.8 Spare Half Octet

This element is used in the description of messages in section 9 when an odd number of half octet type 1 information elements are used . This element is filled with spare bits set to zero and is placed in bits 5 to 8 of the octet unless otherwise specified.

10.5.1.9 Descriptive group or broadcast call reference

The purpose of the *Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference* is to provide information describing a voice group or broadcast call. The IE of the *Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference* is composed of the group or broadcast call reference together with a service flag, an acknowledgement flag, the call priority and the group cipher key number.

The *Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.8bis/GSM 04.08 and Table10.12/GSM 04.08

The *Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference* is a type 3 information element with 5 1/2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Group or broadcast call reference IEI							octet 1
Binary coding of the group or broadcast call reference								octet 2
								octet 3
								octet 4
			SF	AF	call priority			octet 5
Ciphering information								octet 6

FIGURE 10.8bis/GSM 04.08
Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference

TABLE 10.12/GSM 04.08 Descriptive Group or Broadcast Call Reference

```
Binary code of the group or broadcast call reference
The length of the binary code has 35 bits which is
encoded in the octet 2, 3, 4
and Bits 8,7,6 (octet 5).
The highest bit of the BC is the bit 8 in the octet 2
and the lowest bit is allocated in the bit 6
in the octet 5. (see also GSM 03.03)

SF Service flag (octet 5)
Bit
5
0         VBS (broadcast call reference)
1         VGCS (group call reference)

AF Acknowledgement flag (octet 5)
Bit
4
0         acknowledgement is not required
1         acknowledgement is required

Call priority (octet 5)
Bit
3 2 1
0 0 0     no priority applied
0 0 1     call priority level 4
0 1 0     call priority level 3
0 1 1     call priority level 2
1 0 0     call priority level 1
1 0 1     call priority level 0
1 1 0     call priority level B
1 1 1     call priority level A

Ciphering information (octet 6)
Bit
8 7 6 5
0 0 0 0     no ciphering
0 0 0 1     ciphering with cipher key number 1
0 0 1 0     ciphering with cipher key number 2
0 0 1 1     ciphering with cipher key number 3
0 1 0 0     ciphering with cipher key number 4
0 1 0 1     ciphering with cipher key number 5
0 1 1 0     ciphering with cipher key number 6
0 1 1 1     ciphering with cipher key number 7
1 0 0 0     ciphering with cipher key number 8
1 0 0 1     ciphering with cipher key number 9
1 0 1 0     ciphering with cipher key number A
1 0 1 1     ciphering with cipher key number B
1 1 0 0     ciphering with cipher key number C
1 1 0 1     ciphering with cipher key number D
1 1 1 0     ciphering with cipher key number E
1 1 1 1     ciphering with cipher key number F
```

10.5.1.10 Group Cipher Key Number

The purpose of the *Group Cipher Key Number* is to provide information on the group cipher key to be used for ciphering and deciphering by the MS.

The *Group Cipher Key Number* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.8ter/GSM 04.08 and Table10.12bis/GSM 04.08

The *Group Cipher Key Number* is a type 3 information element with 1 1/2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Group cipher key number IEI							octet 1
Group cipher key number								octet 2

FIGURE 10.8ter/GSM 04.08
Descriptive group or broadcast call reference

TABLE 10.12bis/GSM 04.08 *Group Cipher Key Number*

```
Group cipher key number (octet 2)
Bit
8 7 6 5
0 0 0 0    spare
0 0 0 1    cipher key number 1
0 0 1 0    cipher key number 2
0 0 1 1    cipher key number 3
0 1 0 0    cipher key number 4
0 1 0 1    cipher key number 5
0 1 1 0    cipher key number 6
0 1 1 1    cipher key number 7
1 0 0 0    cipher key number 8
1 0 0 1    cipher key number 9
1 0 1 0    cipher key number A
1 0 1 1    cipher key number B
1 1 0 0    cipher key number C
1 1 0 1    cipher key number D
1 1 1 0    cipher key number E
1 1 1 1    cipher key number F
```

10.5.1.11 Priority Level

The purpose of the *Priority Level* is to provide information defining the priority level requested or applied. The *Priority Level* IE may be included in CM_SERVICE_REQUEST, CALL_PROCEEDING and PAGING messages.

The *Priority Level* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.8quad/GSM 04.08 and Table10.12ter/GSM 04.08

The *Priority Level* is a type 1 information element with 1 octet length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Priority Level IEI			0 spare	call priority			octet 1

FIGURE 10.8quad/GSM 04.08
Priority Level

TABLE 10.12ter/GSM 04.08 Priority Level

Call priority (octet 1)			
Bit			
3	2	1	
0	0	0	no priority applied
0	0	1	call priority level 4
0	1	0	call priority level 3
0	1	1	call priority level 2
1	0	0	call priority level 1
1	0	1	call priority level 0
1	1	0	call priority level B
1	1	1	call priority level A

10.5.2 Radio Resource management information elements.

10.5.2.1a BA Range

The purpose of the BA Range information element is to provide the MS with ARFCN range information which can be used in the cell selection procedure.

The BA Range information element is coded as shown in figure 10.8a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.12a/GSM 04.08.

The BA Range is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 6 octets. No upper length limit is specified except for that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message (see GSM 04.06).

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">BA RANGE IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of BA Range contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Number of Ranges</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">RANGE1_LOWER (high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">RANGE1_LOWER (low part)</td><td colspan="6">RANGE1_HIGHER (high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">RANGE1_HIGHER (low part)</td><td colspan="4">RANGE2_LOWER (high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">RANGE2_LOWER (low part)</td><td colspan="2">RANGE2_HIGHER (high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">RANGE2_HIGHER (low part)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">RANGE3_LOWER (high part)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">RANGE3_LOWER (low part)</td><td colspan="6">RANGE3_HIGHER (high part)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">RANGE3_HIGHER (low part)</td><td colspan="4">RANGE4_LOWER (high part)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">RANGE4_LOWER (low part)</td><td colspan="2">RANGE4_HIGHER (high part)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">RANGE4_HIGHER (low part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">:</td><td>octet n</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.8a/GSM 04.08
***BA RANGE* information element**

TABLE 10.12a/GSM 04.08: *BA Range* information element

Number of Ranges parameter The number of Ranges parameter indicates in binary the number of ranges to be transmitted in the IE. It shall have a minimum value of 1. RANGEi_LOWER The RANGEi_LOWER is coded as the binary representation of the ARFCN used as the lower limit of a range of frequencies to be used by the mobile station in cell selection (see GSM 05.08 and GSM 03.22) RANGEi_HIGHER The RANGEi_HIGHER is coded as the binary representation of the ARFCN used as the higher limit of a range of frequencies to be used by the mobile station in cell selection (see GSM 05.08 and GSM 03.22) If the length of the BA range information element is greater than the number of octets required to carry the Number of Ranges given in octet 3, then any unused octets or parts of octets at the end of the IE shall be considered as spare.

10.5.2.1b Cell Channel Description

The purpose of the *Cell Channel Description* information element is to provide the reference frequency list to be used to decode the mobile allocation information element.

The *Cell Channel Description* is a type 3 information element with 17 octets length.

There are several formats for the *Cell Channel Description* information element, distinguished by the "format indicator" subfield. Some formats are frequency bit maps, the others use a special encoding scheme.

NOTE: No more than 64 RF channels should be encoded in the Cell Allocation since this is the maximum number of RF channels which can be referenced in the Mobile Allocation IE.

10.5.2.1b.1 General description

Figure 10.9/04.08 shows only a special bit numbering. The different general format is described in table 10.13/04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Channel Description IEI							octet 1
Bit 128	Bit 127	0 spare	0 spare	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	Bit 121	octet 2
Bit 120	Bit 119	Bit 118	Bit 117	Bit 116	Bit 115	Bit 114	Bit 113	octet 3
Bit 008	Bit 007	Bit 006	Bit 005	Bit 004	Bit 003	Bit 002	Bit 001	octet 17

FIGURE 10.9/GSM 04.08
***Cell Channel Description* information element (general format)**

TABLE 10.13/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, general format

FORMAT-ID, Format Identifier (Bit 128 and next)

The different formats are distinguished by the bits of higher number. The possible values are the following:

Bit 128	Bit 127	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	format notation
0	0	X	X	X	bit map 0
1	0	0	X	X	1024 range
1	0	1	0	0	512 range
1	0	1	0	1	256 range
1	0	1	1	0	128 range
1	0	1	1	1	variable bit map

All other combinations are reserved for future use. A GSM 900 mobile station which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may consider all values except the value for bit map 0 as reserved.

The significance of the remaining bits depends on the FORMAT-ID. The different cases are specified in the next sections.

Mobile stations shall treat all ARFCNs in the set {0, 1, 2 ... 1023} as valid ARFCN values even if the mobile station is unable to transmit or receive on that ARFCN.

10.5.2.1b.2 Bit map 0 format

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Channel Description IEI							octet 1
0 FORMAT-ID	0	0 spare	0 spare	CA ARFCN 124	CA ARFCN 123	CA ARFCN 122	CA ARFCN 121	octet 2
CA ARFCN 120	CA ARFCN 119	CA ARFCN 118	CA ARFCN 117	CA ARFCN 116	CA ARFCN 115	CA ARFCN 114	CA ARFCN 113	octet 3
CA ARFCN 008	CA ARFCN 007	CA ARFCN 006	CA ARFCN 005	CA ARFCN 004	CA ARFCN 003	CA ARFCN 002	CA ARFCN 001	octet 17

FIGURE 10.10/GSM 04.08
***Cell Channel Description* information element, bit map 0 format**

TABLE 10.14/GSM 04.08: *Cell channel Description* information element, bit map 0 format

CA ARFCN N, Cell Allocation Absolute RF Channel Number N (octet 2 etc.) For a RF channel with ARFCN = N belonging to the cell allocation the CA ARFCN N bit is coded with a "1"; N = 1, 2, .. , 124. For a RF channel with ARFCN = N not belonging to the cell allocation the CA ARFCN N bit is coded with a "0"; N = 1, 2 .. , 124.

10.5.2.1b.3 Range 1024 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cell Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
FORMA
T-ID</td><td>F0</td><td colspan="2">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(1) (low part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(2) (high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(2)
(low)</td><td colspan="7">W(3)
(high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(3)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(4)
(high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(4)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(5)
(high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(5)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(6)
(high part)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(6)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(7)
(high part)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(7)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(8)
(high part)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(8)
(low)</td><td colspan="7">W(9)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">W(10)</td><td>W(11)
high</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(11)
(low part)</td><td colspan="2">W(12)
(high part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(12) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(13) (high part)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(13) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(14) (high part)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(14) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(15) (high part)</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(15)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(16)</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.11/GSM 04.08
***Cell Channel Description* information element (1024 range format)**

TABLE 10.15/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, range 1024 format

F0, frequency 0 indicator (octet 2, bit 3): 0 ARFCN 0 is not a member of the set 1 ARFCN 0 is a member of the set W(i), i from 1 to 16 (octet 2 to 17): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(16) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.3.

10.5.2.1b.4 Range 512 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cell Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">1 0 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
high</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
low</td><td colspan="7">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(1)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(2)
(high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(2)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(3)
(high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(3)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(4)
(high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(4)
low</td><td colspan="7">W(5)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">W(6)</td><td>W(7)
high</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(7)
(low part)</td><td colspan="2">W(8)
(high part)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(8) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(9) (high part)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(9)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(10)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(11)</td><td colspan="2">W(12)
(high part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(12) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(13) (high part)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(13)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(14)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(15)</td><td colspan="2">W(16)
(high part)</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(16) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(17)</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.12/GSM 04.08
Cell Channel Description **information element (512 range format)**

TABLE 10.16/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, range 512 format

ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 2, 3 and 4) This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to the set. This value is also used to decode the rest of the element. W(i), i from 1 to 17 (octet 4 to 17): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(17) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.4.

10.5.2.1b.5 Range 256 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cell Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">1 0 1
FORMAT-ID</td><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
high</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
low</td><td colspan="7">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(1)
low</td><td colspan="7">W(2)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">W(3)</td><td>W(4)
high</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(4) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(5) (high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(5) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(6) (high part)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(6)
low</td><td colspan="6">W(7)</td><td>W(8)
high</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(8) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(9) (high part)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(9)
low</td><td colspan="5">W(10)</td><td colspan="2">W(11)
(high part)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(11) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(12)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(13)</td><td colspan="3">W(14)(high part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(14)
low</td><td colspan="5">W(15)</td><td>W(16)
high</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(16)
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(17)</td><td>W(18)
high</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(18)
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(19)</td><td>W(20)
high</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(20)
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(21)</td><td>0
Spare</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.13/GSM 04.08
***Cell Channel Description* information element, range 256 format**

TABLE 10.17/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, range 256 format

ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 2, 3 and 4) This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to the set. This value is also used to decode the rest of the element. W(i), i from 1 to 21 (octet 4 to 17): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(21) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.5.

10.5.2.1b.6 Range 128 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cell Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">1 1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>ORIG-ARFCN high</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ORIG-ARFCN
(middle part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>ORIG-ARFCN low</td><td colspan="7">W(1)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(2)</td><td colspan="2">W(3)
(high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(3) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(4) (high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(4)
low</td><td colspan="5">W(5)</td><td colspan="2">W(6)
(high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(6) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(7)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(8)</td><td colspan="4">W(9)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(10)</td><td colspan="4">W(11)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(12)</td><td colspan="4">W(13)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(14)</td><td colspan="4">W(15)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(16)</td><td colspan="3">W(17)</td><td colspan="2">W(18)
(high part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(18)
low</td><td colspan="3">W(19)</td><td colspan="3">W(20)</td><td>W(21)
high</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(21)
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(22)</td><td colspan="3">W(23)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(24)</td><td colspan="3">W(25)</td><td colspan="2">W(26)
(high part)</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(26)
low</td><td colspan="3">W(27)</td><td colspan="3">W(28)</td><td>0
spare</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.14/GSM 04.08
***Cell Channel Description* information element, range 128 format**

TABLE 10.18/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, range 128 format

ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 2, 3 and 4) This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to the set. This value is also used to decode the rest of the element. W(i), i from 1 to 28 (octet 4 to 17): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(28) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.6.

10.5.2.1b.7 Variable bit map format

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Channel Description IEI							octet 1
1 FORMAT-ID	0 FORMAT-ID	0 spare	0 spare	1 FORMAT-ID	1 FORMAT-ID	1 FORMAT-ID	ORIG-ARFCN high	octet 2
ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)								octet 3
ORIG-ARFCN low	RRFCN 1	RRFCN 2	RRFCN 3	RRFCN 4	RRFCN 5	RRFCN 6	RRFCN 7	octet 4
RRFCN 104	RRFCN 105	RRFCN 106	RRFCN 107	RRFCN 108	RRFCN 109	RRFCN 110	RRFCN 111	octet 17

FIGURE 10.15/GSM 04.08
Cell Channel Description **information element, variable bit map format**

TABLE 10.19/GSM 04.08: *Cell Channel Description* information element, variable bit map format

ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 2, 3 and 4) This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to the set. This value is also used as origin of the bit map to generate all other frequencies. RRFCN N, relative radio frequency channel number N (octet 4 etc.) For a RF channel with ARFCN = (ORIG-ARFCN + N) mod 1024 belonging to the set, RRFCN N bit is coded with a "1"; N = 1, 2, .. , 111 For a RF channel with ARFCN = (ORIG-ARFCN + N) mod 1024 not belonging to the set, RRFCN N bit is coded with a "0"; N = 1, 2, .. , 111

10.5.2.2 Cell Description

The purpose of the *Cell Description* information element is to provide a minimum description of a cell, e.g. to allow the MS to use its preknowledge about synchronization.

The *Cell Description* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.16/GSM 04.08 and table 10.20/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Description* is a type 3 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Description IEI							octet 1
BCCH ARFCN (high part)		NCC			BCC			octet 2
BCCH ARFCN (low part)								octet 3

FIGURE 10.16/GSM 04.08
***Cell Description* information element**

TABLE 10.20/GSM 04.08: *Cell Description* information element

NCC, PLMN colour code (octet 2) The NCC field is coded as the binary representation of the PLMN colour code (see TS. GSM 03.03) BCC, BS colour code (octet 2) The BCC field is coded as the binary representation of the BS colour code (see TS. GSM 03.03). BCCH ARFCN (octet 2, bits 7 and 8, and octet 3) The BCCH ARFCN number field is coded as the binary representation of the BCCH carriers absolute RF channel number. Range: 0 to 1023

10.5.2.3 Cell Options (BCCH)

The purpose of the *Cell Options* (BCCH) information element is to provide a variety of information about a cell.

The *Cell Options* (BCCH) information element is coded as shown in figure 10.17/GSM 04.08 and table 10.21/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Options* (BCCH) is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Options (BCCH) IEI							octet 1
0 spare	PWRC	DTX		RADIO-LINK-TIMEOUT				octet 2

FIGURE 10.17/GSM 04.08
***Cell Options* (BCCH) information element**

10.5.2.3a Cell Options (SACCH)

The purpose of the *Cell Options* (SACCH) information element is to provide a variety of information about a cell.

The *Cell Options* (SACCH) information element is coded as shown in figure 10.17a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.21a/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Options* (SACCH) is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Options (SACCH) IEI							octet 1
DTX	PWRC	DTX		RADIO-LINK-TIMEOUT				octet 2

FIGURE 10.17a/GSM 04.08
***Cell Options* (SACCH) information element**

TABLE 10.21/GSM 04.08: *Cell Options* (BCCH) information element

```
PWRC Power control indicator (octet 2) Note 1
bit 7
0  PWRC is not set
1  PWRC is set

DTX, DTX indicator (octet 2) Note 3
Bit
 6 5
 0 0  The MSs may use uplink discontinuous
      transmission
 0 1  The MSs shall use uplink discontinuous
      transmission
 1 0  The MS shall not use uplink discontinuous
      transmission

RADIO-LINK_TIMEOUT  (octet 2)  Note 2
  Bits
 4 3 2 1
 0 0 0 0      4
 0 0 0 1      8
 0 0 1 0     12
    .
    .
    .
 1 1 1 0     60
 1 1 1 1     64
```

NOTE 1: The precise meaning of the PWRC parameter can be found in GSM 05.08.

NOTE 2: The precise meaning of RADIO-LINK-TIMEOUT parameter can be found in GSM 05.08.

NOTE 3: The DTX indicator field is not related to the use of downlink discontinuous transmission.

TABLE 10.21a/GSM 04.08: *Cell Options* (SACCH) information element

```
PWRC Power control indicator (octet 2) Note 1
bit 7
0  PWRC is not set
1  PWRC is set

DTX, DTX indicator (octet 2) Note 3
Bit
8 6 5
0 0 0  The MS may use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall not use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

0 0 1  The MS shall use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall not use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

0 1 0  The MS shall not use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall not use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

0 1 1  Note 4: The MS shall use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS may use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

1 0 0  The MS may use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS may use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

1 0 1  The MS shall use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

1 1 0  The MS shall not use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.

1 1 1  Note 4: The MS may use uplink discontinuous
       transmission on a TCH-F. The MS shall use
       uplink discontinuous transmission on TCH-H.
RADIO-LINK_TIMEOUT  (octet 2)  Note 2
  Bits
 4 3 2 1
 0 0 0 0     4
 0 0 0 1     8
 0 0 1 0    12
    .
    .
    .
 1 1 1 0    60
 1 1 1 1    64
```

NOTE 1: The precise meaning of the PWRC parameter can be found in GSM 05.08.

NOTE 2: The precise meaning of RADIO-LINK-TIMEOUT parameter can be found in GSM 05.08.

NOTE 3: The DTX indicator field is not related to the use of downlink discontinuous transmission.

Note 4: These codes shall not be sent to MSs that implement an earlier version of this protocol in which these codes were not defined.

10.5.2.4 Cell Selection Parameters

The purpose of the *Cell Selection Parameters* information element is to provide a variety of information about a cell.

The *Cell Selection Parameters* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.18/GSM 04.08 and table 10.22/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Selection Parameters* information element is a type 3 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cell Selection Parameters IEI							octet 1
CELL-RESELECT HYSTERESIS			MS-TXPWR-MAX-CCH					octet 2
ACS	NECI	RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN						octet 3

FIGURE 10.18/GSM 04.08
***Cell Selection Parameters* information element**

TABLE 10.22/GSM 04.08: *Cell Selection Parameters* information element

```
CELL-RESELECT-HYSTERESIS (octet 2)
The usage of this information is defined in GSM
05.08
Bits
8 7 6
0 0 0     0 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0 0 1     2 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0 1 0     4 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0 1 1     6 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1 0 0     8 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1 0 1    10 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1 1 0    12 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1 1 1    14 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection


MS-TXPWR-MAX-CCH (octet 2)
The  MS-TXPWR-MAX-CCH  field  is coded as the binary
representation of the "power control level" in TS
GSM 05.05 corresponding to the maximum TX power
level an MS may use when accessing on a Control
Channel CCH. This value shall be used by the Mobile
Station according to GSM 05.08.

Range: 0 to 31.


RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN (octet 3)
The  RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN  field  is coded as the binary
representation  of the minimum received signal level
at  the  MS  for which it is permitted to access the
system.

Range: 0 to 63.            (See TS  GSM 05.08).

ACS, ADDITIONAL RESELECT PARAM IND (octet 3)
Bit 8:
  In System Information type 3 message:
    Spare, set to "0"

  In System Information type 4 message:
    0   The SI 4 rest octets, if present, shall be
        used to derive the value of PI and possibly
        C2 parameters and/or other parameters
    1   The value of PI and possibly C2 parameters
        and/or other parameters in a System
        information type 7 or type 8 message shall
        be used


NECI: HALF RATE SUPPORT (octet 3)
Bit 7:
    0   New establishment causes are not supported
    1   New establishment causes are supported
```

10.5.2.5 Channel Description

The purpose of the *Channel Description* information element is to provide a description of an allocatable channel together with its SACCH.

The *Channel Description* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.19/GSM 04.08 and table 10.23/GSM 04.08.

The *Channel Description* is a type 3 information element with 4 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Channel type
and TDMA offset</td><td colspan="3">TN</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3" rowspan="2">TSC</td><td>H=1->
H</td><td colspan="4">MAIO (high part)</td><td rowspan="2">octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>H=0-></td><td colspan="2">0
spare</td><td colspan="2">ARFCN
(high part)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">MAIO
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">HSN</td><td rowspan="2">octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ARFCN (low part)</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.19/GSM 04.08
***Channel Description* information element**

TABLE 10.23/GSM 04.08: *Channel Description* information element

```
Channel type and TDMA offset (octet 2)
  Bits
8 7 6 5 4
0 0 0 0 1  TCH/F + ACCHs
0 0 0 1 T  TCH/H + ACCHs
0 0 1 T T  SDCCH/4 + SACCH/C4 or CBCH (SDCCH/4)
0 1 T T T  SDCCH/8 + SACCH/C8 or CBCH (SDCCH/8)

The  T bits indicate the subchannel number coded in
binary.

All other values are reserved.

TN, Timeslot number (octet 2)
The  TN field is coded as the binary representation
of the timeslot number as defined in GSM 05.10.

Range: 0 to 7.

TSC, Training Sequence Code (octet 3)
The TSC field is coded as the binary representation
of the Training Sequence code as defined in GSM
05.03
Range: 0 to 7.

H, Hopping channel (octet 3)
Bit
5
0        Single RF channel
1        RF hopping channel

Note: The  value  of H affects the semantics of the
      channel  selector  field

Channel selector (octet 3 and 4)
H = "0": The channel selector field
       consists of the absolute RF channel number

      Octet 3
       Bits
       4 3
       0 0     Spare
```

TABLE 10.23/GSM 04.08: *Channel Description* information element (continued)

```
       ARFCN, (octet 3, bits 2 and 1, and
               octet 4, bits 8 to 1)
         The ARFCN is coded as the binary representa-
         tion of the absolute RF channel number

          Range: 0 to 1023

H = "1": The channel selector field consists of the
          mobile allocation index offset, MAIO, and
          the hopping sequence number, HSN.

           MAIO, (octet 3 bit 4 to 1 high part and
                  octet 4 bit 8 to 7 low part)
           The MAIO field is coded as the binary rep-
           resentation of the mobile allocation index
           offset as defined in GSM 05.02.

          Range: 0 to 63.

          HSN, (octet 4 bit 6 to 1)
          The HSN field is coded as the binary repres-
          entation of the hopping sequence number
           as defined in GSM 05.02
          Range 0 to 63.
```

10.5.2.6 Channel Mode

The *Channel Mode* information element gives information of the mode on coding/decoding and transcoding. The exact mode is determined by the contents of this IE and the channel type.

The *Channel Mode* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.20/GSM 04.08 and table 10.24/GSM 04.08.

The C*hannel Mode* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Channel Mode IEI							octet 1
Mode								octet 2

FIGURE 10.20/GSM 04.08
***Channel Mode* information element**

TABLE 10.24/GSM 04.08: *Channel Mode* information element

```
The mode field is encoded as follows:
(octet 2)
Bits
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0   signalling only
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1   speech full rate or half rate version 1
0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1   speech full rate or half rate version 2
0 1 0 0 0 0 0 1   speech full rate or half rate version 3
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1   data, 12.0 kbit/s radio interface rate
0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1   data, 6.0 kbit/s radio interface rate
0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1   data, 3.6 kbit/s radio interface rate

Other values are reserved for future use.
```

10.5.2.7 Channel Mode 2

The *Channel Mode 2* information element gives information of the mode of coding/decoding and transcoding.

The *Channel Mode 2* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.21/GSM 04.08 and table 10.25/GSM 04.08.

The *Channel Mode 2* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Channel Mode 2 IEI							octet 1
Mode								octet 2

FIGURE 10.21/GSM 04.08
***Channel Mode 2* information element**

TABLE 10.25/GSM 04.08: *Channel Mode 2* information element

```
The mode field is encoded as follows:
(octet 2)
Bits
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    signalling only
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1    speech half rate version 1
0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1    speech half rate version 2
0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1    speech half rate version 3
0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1    data, 6.0 kbit/s radio interface rate
0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1    data, 3.6 kbit/s radio interface rate

Other values are reserved for future use.
```

10.5.2.8 Channel Needed

The purpose of the *Channel Needed* information element is to indicate to up to two MSs which type of channel is needed (for each MS) for the transaction linked to the paging procedure.

The *Channel Needed* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.22/GSM 04.08 and table 10.26/GSM 04.08.

The *Channel Needed* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Channel Needed IEI				CHANNEL (second)		CHANNEL (first)		octet 1

FIGURE 10.22/GSM 04.08
***Channel Needed* information element**

TABLE 10.26/GSM 04.08: *Channel Needed* information element

```
CHANNEL (octet 1)
Bits
2/4  1/3
 0    0    Any channel.
 0    1    SDCCH.
 1    0    TCH/F  (Full rate).
 1    1    TCH/H or TCH/F  (Dual rate).

If this information element is used for only one
mobile station, then the first CHANNEL field is
used and the second CHANNEL field is spare.
```

10.5.2.9 Cipher Mode Setting

The purpose of the *Cipher Mode Setting* information element is to indicate whether stream ciphering shall be started or not and if it is to be started, which algorithm to use.

The *Cipher Mode Setting* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.23/GSM 04.08 and table 10.27/GSM 04.08.

The *Cipher Mode Setting* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Ciph Mod Set IEI			algorithm identifier			SC	octet 1

FIGURE 10.23/GSM 04.08
***Cipher Mode Setting* information element**

TABLE 10.27/GSM 04.08: *Cipher Mode Setting* information element

```
algorithm identifier
If SC=1 then:
bits
4 3 2
0 0 0  cipher with algorithm A5/1
0 0 1  cipher with algorithm A5/2
0 1 0  cipher with algorithm A5/3
0 1 1  cipher with algorithm A5/4
1 0 0  cipher with algorithm A5/5
1 0 1  cipher with algorithm A5/6
1 1 0  cipher with algorithm A5/7
1 1 1  reserved

If SC=0 then bits 4, 3 and 2 are spare and set to "0"


SC (octet 1)
Bit
1
0         No ciphering
1         Start ciphering
```

10.5.2.10 Cipher Response

The *Cipher Response* information element is used by the network to indicate to the MS which information the MS has to include in the CIPHERING MODE COMPLETE message.

The *Cipher Response* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.24/GSM 04.08 and table 10.28/GSM 04.08.

The *Cipher Response* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Cipher Resp. IEI			0 Spare	0	0	CR	octet 1

FIGURE 10.24/GSM 04.08
***Cipher Response* information element**

TABLE 10.28/GSM 04.08: *Cipher Response* information element

CR Cipher Response (octet 1) Bit 1 0   IMEISV shall not be included 1   IMEISV shall be included

10.5.2.11 Control Channel Description

The purpose of the *Control Channel Description* information element is to provide a variety of information about a cell.

The *Control Channel Description* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.25/GSM 04.08 and table 10.29/GSM 04.08.

The *Control Channel Description* is a type 3 information element with 4 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Control Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>ATT</td><td colspan="3">BS-AG-BLKS-RES</td><td colspan="3">CCCH-CONF</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">BS-PA-MFRMS</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">T 3212
time-out value</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.25/GSM 04.08
***Control Channel Description* information element**

TABLE 10.29/GSM 04.08: *Control Channel Description* information element

```
ATT, Attach-detach allowed (octet 2)
Bit
7
0          MSs in the cell are not allowed to apply
           IMSI  attach  and  detach procedure.
1          MSs in the cell shall apply IMSI attach
           and detach procedure.


BS-AG-BLKS-RES (octet 2)
The  BS-AG-BLKS-RES  field  is  coded as the binary
representation of the number of blocks reserved for
access grant.

Range 0 to 2 if CCCH-CONF = "001"
      0 to 7 for other values of CCCH-CONF

All other values are reserved in the first case

CCCH-CONF (octet 2)
bits
3 2 1
0 0 0      1 basic physical channel used for CCCH,
           not combined with SDCCHs
0 0 1      1 basic physical channel used for CCCH,
           combined with SDCCHs
0 1 0      2 basic physical channel used for CCCH,
           not combined with SDCCHs
1 0 0      3 basic physical channel used for CCCH,
           not combined with SDCCHs
1 1 0      4 basic physical channels used for CCCH,
           not combined with SDCCHs
 all other values are reserved
```

TABLE 10.29/GSM 04.08: *Control Channel Description* information element (concluded)

```
BS-PA-MFRMS (octet 3)
 Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0      2 multiframes period for transmission of
             PAGING  REQUEST  messages  to the same
             paging subgroup
0 0 1      3 multiframes period for transmission of
             PAGING  REQUEST  messages  to the same
             paging subgroup
0 1 0      4 multiframes period for transmission of
             PAGING  REQUEST  messages  to the same
  .          paging   subgroup
  .
  .
1 1 1      9 multiframes period for transmission of
             PAGING  REQUEST  messages  to the same
             paging subgroup

Note: The number of different paging subchannels on
      the CCCH is:

      MAX(1,(3 - BS-AG-BLKS-RES)) * BS-PA-MFRMS
              if CCCH-CONF = "001"
      (9 - BS-AG-BLKS-RES) * BS-PA-MFRMS
              for other values of CCCH-CONF


T3212 timeout value (octet 4)
The  T3212  timeout  value  field  is  coded as the
binary  representation  of  the  timeout  value for
periodic updating in decihours.

Range: 1 to 255

The  value 0 is used for infinite timeout value
i.e.  periodic  updating  shall not be used within
the cell.
```

10.5.2.12 Frequency Channel Sequence

The purpose of the *Frequency Channel Sequence* information element is to provide the absolute radio frequency channel numbers used in the mobile hopping sequence. This information element shall only be used for radio frequency channels in the primary GSM band (see GSM 05.05).

The *Frequency Channel Sequence* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.26/GSM 04.08 and table 10.30/GSM 04.08.

The *Frequency Channel Sequence* is a type 3 information element with 10 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Frequency Channel Sequence IEI							octet 1
0 spare	Lowest ARFCN							octet 2
inc skip of ARFCN 01				inc skip of ARFCN 02				octet 3
:								
inc skip of ARFCN 15				inc skip of ARFCN 16				octet 10

FIGURE 10.26/GSM 04.08
***Frequency Channel Sequence* information element**

TABLE 10.30/GSM 04.08: *Frequency Channel Sequence* information element

Lowest ARFCN (octet 2) The lowest ARFCN field is coded as the binary representation of the lowest absolute RF channel number appearing in the sequence of channels used in the frequency hopping. Range: 1 to 124 All other values are reserved.   Increment skip ARFCN n (octet 3 to 10) The increment skip ARFCN n is coded as the binary representation of the increment of the preceding absolute RF channel number appearing in the sequence of channels used in the frequency hopping: n = 1,...,16. Range: 0 to 15 The value 0 indicates that the increment value is 15 but the concerned channel is not used and the next field, i.e. Increment skip ARFCN n+1 (if present) must be added to the increment to determine the next absolute RF channel number in the sequence of channels used in the frequency hopping.

10.5.2.13 Frequency List

The purpose of the *Frequency List* information element is to provide the list of the absolute radio frequency channel numbers used in a frequency hopping sequence.

The *Frequency List* information element is a type 4 information element.

There are several formats for the *Frequency List* information element, distinguished by the "format indicator" subfield. Some formats are frequency bit maps, the others use a special encoding scheme.

10.5.2.13.1 General description

TABLE 10.31/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, general format

```
FORMAT-ID, Format Identifier (part of octet 3)

The different formats are distinguished by the
FORMAT-ID field.  The possible values are the
following:

 Bit Bit Bit Bit Bit           format notation
  8   7   4   3   2

  0   0   X   X   X                bit map 0
  1   0   0   X   X                1024 range
  1   0   1   0   0                512 range
  1   0   1   0   1                256 range
  1   0   1   1   0                128 range
  1   0   1   1   1                variable bit map


All other combinations are reserved for future use.
A GSM 900 mobile station which only supports the
primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05)
may consider all values except the value for
bit map 0 as reserved.

The significance of the remaining bits depends on
the FORMAT-ID. The different cases are specified in
the next sections.
```

10.5.2.13.2 Bit map 0 format

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Frequency List IEI							octet 1
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	octet 2
Length of frequency list contents								
0	0	0	0	ARFCN 124	ARFCN 123	ARFCN 122	ARFCN 121	octet 3
FORMAT-ID		spare						
ARFCN 120	ARFCN 119	ARFCN 118	ARFCN 117	ARFCN 116	ARFCN 115	ARFCN 114	ARFCN 113	octet 4
ARFCN 008	ARFCN 007	ARFCN 006	ARFCN 005	ARFCN 004	ARFCN 003	ARFCN 002	ARFCN 001	octet 18

FIGURE 10.27/GSM 04.08
***Frequency List* information element, bit map 0 format**

TABLE 10.32/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, bit map 0 format

ARFCN N, Absolute RF Channel Number N (octet 3 etc.) For a RF channel with ARFCN = N belonging to the frequency list the ARFCN N bit is coded with a "1"; N = 1, 2, .. , 124. For a RF channel with ARFCN = N not belonging to the frequency list the ARFCN N bit is coded with a "0"; N = 1, 2 .. , 124.

10.5.2.13.3 Range 1024 format

The information element contains a header, and W(1) to W(M) for some M. If, due to octet boundaries, some bits are not used at the end of the last octet, these bits must be set to 0.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Frequency List IEI							octet 1
Length of Frequency List contents								octet 2
1 FORMAT-ID	0	0 spare	0 spare	0 FORMAT-ID	F0	W(1) (high part)		octet 3
W(1) (low part)								octet 4

W(2) to W(3) are on 9 bits, when present

W(4) to W(7) are on 8 bits, when present

W(8) to W(15) are on 7 bits, when present

W(16) to W(31) are on 6 bits, when present

W(2k) to W(2k+1-1) are on 10-k bits when present

and so on

FIGURE 10.28/GSM 04.08
***Frequency List* information element (Range 1024 format)**

TABLE 10.33/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 1024 format

```
F0, frequency 0 indicator (octet 3, bit 3):

0      ARFCN 0 is not a member of the set
1      ARFCN 0 is a member of the set

W(i), i from 1 to M (octet 3 and next):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary
format.

If W(k) is null, W(i) for i>k must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with
some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in
the set. The first computation formulas are given
hereafter, with the following conventions:

  Wi denotes W(i);
  Fi denotes F(i);
  +  indicates the natural integer addition;
  *  indicates the natural integer multiplication;
  n mod m  indicates the remainder of the euclidian
    division of n by m, ie 0 ≤ (n mod m) ≤ m-1 and
    there exists k such that  n = (k*m) + (n mod m);

  n smod m  indicates the offset remainder of the
    euclidian division of n by m, ie
    1 ≤ (n smod m) ≤ m and there exists k such that
    n = (k*m) + (n smod m);

   F1 =  W1
   F2 = (W1 - 512 + W2) smod 1023
   F3 = (W1       + W3) smod 1023
   F4 = (W1 - 512 + (W2 - 256 + W4) smod 511) smod 1023
   F5 = (W1       + (W3 - 256 + W5) smod 511) smod 1023
   F6 = (W1 - 512 + (W2       + W6) smod 511) smod 1023
   F7 = (W1       + (W3       + W7) smod 511) smod 1023
   F8  = (W1 - 512 + (W2 - 256 + (W4 - 128 + W8 )
         smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
```

TABLE 10.33/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 1024 format (continued)

```
F9  = (W1       + (W3 - 256 + (W5 - 128 + W9 )
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F10 = (W1 - 512 + (W2       + (W6 - 128 + W10)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F11 = (W1       + (W3       + (W7 - 128 + W11)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F12 = (W1 - 512 + (W2 - 256 + (W4       + W12)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F13 = (W1       + (W3 - 256 + (W5       + W13)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F14 = (W1 - 512 + (W2       + (W6       + W14)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F15 = (W1       + (W3       + (W7       + W15)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
F16  = (W1 - 512 + (W2 - 256 + (W4 - 128 +
           (W8 - 64 + W16) smod 127)
       smod 255) smod 511) smod 1023
```

```
More generally, the computation of F(K) can be done
with the following program, using ADA language
(declarative parts are skipped and should be obvious):


INDEX := K;
J := GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
N := W(INDEX);
while INDEX>1 loop
  if 2*INDEX < 3*J then
    INDEX := INDEX - J/2;              -- left child
    N := (N + W(PARENT) - 1024/J - 1) mod
          (2048/J - 1) + 1;
  else                                -- right child
    INDEX := INDEX - J;
    N := (N + W(PARENT) - 1) mod (2048/J - 1) + 1;
  end if;
  J := J/2;
end loop;
F(K) := N;
```

10.5.2.13.4 Range 512 format

The information element contains a header, and W(1) to W(M) for some M. If, due to octet boundaries, some bits are not used at the end of the last octet, these bits must be set to 0.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Frequency List IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of Frequency List contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">1 0 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
high</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
low</td><td colspan="7">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(1)
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">W(2)
(high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
</table>

W(2) to W(3) are on 8 bits, when present

W(4) to W(7) are on 7 bits, when present

W(8) to W(15) are on 6 bits, when present

W(16) to W(31) are on 5 bits, when present

W(2k) to W(2k+1-1) are on 9-k bits when present

and so on

.

.

FIGURE 10.29/GSM 04.08
Frequency List **information element (Range 512 format)**

TABLE 10.34/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 512 format

```
  ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 3, 4 and 5)

  This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency
  belonging to the set. This value is also used to
  decode the rest of the element.


W(i), i from 1 to M (octet 5 and next):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary
format.

If W(k) is null, W(i) for i>k must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with
some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in
the set. The first computation formulas are given
hereafter, with the following conventions:

  Wi denotes W(i); W0 denotes the value of ORIG-ARFCN
  Fi denotes F(i);
  +  indicates the natural integer addition;
  *  indicates the natural integer multiplication;
  n mod m  indicates the remainder of the euclidian
    division of n by m, ie 0 ≤ (n mod m) ≤ m-1 and
    there exists k such that  n = (k*m) + (n mod m);

  n smod m  indicates the offset remainder of the
    euclidian division of n by m, ie
    1 ≤ (n smod m) ≤ m and there exists k such that
    n = (k*m) + (n smod m);

F1  = (W0 + W1) mod 1024
F2  = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + W2) smod 511) mod 1024
F3  = (W0 + (W1       + W3) smod 511) mod 1024
F4  = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2 - 128 + W4) smod 255)
       smod 511) mod 1024
F5  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 128 + W5) smod 255)
       smod 511) mod 1024
F6  = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2       + W6) smod 255)
       smod 511) mod 1024
F7  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + W7) smod 255)
       smod 511) mod 1024
F8  = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2 - 128 + (W4 - 64 + W8 )
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F9  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 128 + (W5 - 64 + W9 )
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
```

TABLE 10.34/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 512 format (continued)

```
F10 = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2       + (W6 - 64 + W10)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F11 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7 - 64 + W11)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F12 = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2 - 128 + (W4      + W12)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024

F13 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 128 + (W5      + W13)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F14 = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2       + (W6      + W14)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F15 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7      + W15)
       smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F16 = (W0 + (W1 - 256 + (W2 - 128 + (W4 - 64 +
      (W8 - 32 + W16)
     smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
F17 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 128 + (W5 - 64 +
      (W9 - 32 + W17)
     smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) smod 511) mod 1024
```

```
More generally, the computation of F(K) can be done
with the following program, using ADA language
(declarative parts are skipped and should be obvious):


INDEX := K;
J := GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
N := W(INDEX);
while INDEX>1 loop
  if 2*INDEX < 3*J then               -- left child
    INDEX := INDEX - J/2;
    N := (N + W(PARENT) - 512/J - 1) mod
          (1024/J - 1) + 1;
  else                                -- right child
    INDEX := INDEX - J;
    N := (N + W(_INDEX) - 1) mod (1024/J - 1) + 1;
  end if;
  J := J/2;
end loop;
F(K) := (W(0) + N) mod 1024;
```

10.5.2.13.5 Range 256 format

The information element contains a header, and W(1) to W(M) for some M. If, due to octet boundaries, some bits are not used at the end of the last octet, these bits must be set to 0.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Frequency List IEI							octet 1
Length of Frequency List contents								octet 2
1 FORMAT-ID	0 FORMAT-ID	0 spare	0 spare	1 FORMAT-ID	0 FORMAT-ID	1 FORMAT-ID	ORIG-ARFCN high	octet 3
ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)								octet 4
ORIG-ARFCN low	W(1) (high part)							octet 5
W(1) low	W(2)							octet 6

W(2) to W(3) are on 7 bits, when present

W(4) to W(7) are on 6 bits, when present

W(8) to W(15) are on 5 bits, when present

W(16) to W(31) are on 4 bits, when present

W(2k) to W(2k+1-1) are on 8-k bits when present

and so on

FIGURE 10.30/GSM 04.08
Frequency List **information element (Range 256 format)**

TABLE 10.35/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 256 format

```
ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 3, 4 and 5)

This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to
the set. This value is also used to decode the rest of the
element.

W(i), i from 1 to M (octet 5 and next):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format.

If W(k) is null, W(i) for i>k must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with
some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in
the set. The first computation formulas are given
hereafter, with the following conventions:

  Wi denotes W(i);  W0 denotes the value of ORIG-ARFCN
  Fi denotes F(i);
  +  indicates the natural integer addition;
  *  indicates the natural integer multiplication;
  n mod m  indicates the remainder of the euclidian
    division of n by m, ie 0 ≤ (n mod m) ≤ m-1 and
    there exists k such that  n = (k*m) + (n mod m);

  n smod m  indicates the offset remainder of the
    euclidian division of n by m, ie
    1 ≤ (n smod m) ≤ m and there exists k such that
    n = (k*m) + (n smod m);


F1  = (W0 + W1) mod 1024
F2  = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + W2) smod 255) mod 1024
F3  = (W0 + (W1       + W3) smod 255) mod 1024
F4  = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2 - 64 + W4) smod 127) smod 255)
     mod 1024
F5  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 64 + W5) smod 127) smod 255)
     mod 1024
F6  = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2      + W6) smod 127) smod 255)
     mod 1024
F7  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3      + W7) smod 127) smod 255)
     mod 1024
```

TABLE 10.35/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 256 format (continued)

```
F8  = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2 - 64 + (W4 - 32 + W8 ) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F9  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 64 + (W5 - 32 + W9 ) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F10 = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2      + (W6 - 32 + W10) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F11 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3      + (W7 - 32 + W11) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F12 = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2 - 64 + (W4      + W12) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F13 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 64 + (W5      + W13) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F14 = (W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2      + (W6      + W14) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F15 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3      + (W7      + W15) smod 63)
     smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F16 =(W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2 - 64 + (W4 - 32 + (W8  - 16 + W16)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F17 =(W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 64 + (W5 - 32 + (W9  - 16 + W17)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F18 =(W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2      + (W6 - 32 + (W10 - 16 + W18)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F19 =(W0 + (W1       + (W3      + (W7 - 32 + (W11 - 16 + W19)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F20 =(W0 + (W1 - 128 + (W2 - 64 + (W4      + (W12 - 16 + W20)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
F21 =(W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 64 + (W5      + (W13 - 16 + W21)
     smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) smod 255) mod 1024
```

```
More generally, the computation of F(K) can be done
with the following program, using ADA language
(declarative parts are skipped and should be obvious):

INDEX := K;
J := GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
N := W(INDEX);
while INDEX>1 loop
  if 2*INDEX < 3*J then                -- left child
    INDEX := INDEX - J/2;
    N := (N + W(INDEX) - 256/J - 1) mod
          (512/J - 1) + 1;
  else                                 -- right child
    INDEX := INDEX - J;
    N := (N + W(INDEX) - 1) mod (512/J - 1) + 1;
  end if;
  J := J/2;
end loop;
F(K) := (W(0) + N) mod 1024;
```

10.5.2.13.6 Range 128 format

The information element contains a header, and W(1) to W(M) for some M. If, due to octet boundaries, some bits are not used at the end of the last octet, these bits must be set to 0.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Frequency List IEI							octet 1
Length of Frequency List contents								octet 2
1	0 FORMAT-ID	0 spare	0 spare	1	1 FORMAT-ID	0	ORIG-ARFCN high	octet 3
ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)								octet 4
ORIG-ARFCN low	W(1) (high part)							octet 5

W(2) to W(3) are on 6 bits, when present

W(4) to W(7) are on 5 bits, when present

W(8) to W(15) are on 4 bits, when present

W(16) to W(31) are on 3 bits, when present

W(2k) to W(2k+1-1) are on 7-k bits when present

and so on

FIGURE 10.31/GSM 04.08
***Frequency List* information element (Range 128 format)**

TABLE 10.36/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 128 format

```
ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 3, 4 and 5)

This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to
the set. This value is also used to decode the rest of the
element.

W(i), i from 1 to M (octet 5 and next):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format.

If W(k) is null, W(i) for i>k must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with
some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in
the set. The first computation formulas are given
hereafter, with the following conventions:

  Wi denotes W(i); W0 denotes the value of ORIG-ARFCN
  Fi denotes F(i);
  +  indicates the natural integer addition;
  *  indicates the natural integer multiplication;
  n mod m  indicates the remainder of the euclidian
    division of n by m, ie 0 ≤ (n mod m) ≤ m-1 and
    there exists k such that  n = (k*m) + (n mod m);

  n smod m  indicates the offset remainder of the
    euclidian division of n by m, ie
    1 ≤ (n smod m) ≤ m and there exists k such that
    n = (k*m) + (n smod m);


F1 = (W0 + W1) mod 1024
F2 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + W2) smod 127) mod 1024
F3 = (W0 + (W1       + W3) smod 127) mod 1024
F4 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + W4) smod 63) smod 127)
     mod 1024
F5 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + W5) smod 63) smod 127)
     mod 1024
F6 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2      + W6) smod 63) smod 127)
     mod 1024
F7 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3      + W7) smod 63) smod 127)
     mod 1024
```

TABLE 10.36/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, range 128 format (continued)

```
F8  = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4 - 16 + W8 ) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F9  = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + (W5 - 16 + W9 ) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F10 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2       + (W6 - 16 + W10) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F11 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7 - 16 + W11) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F12 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4       + W12) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F13 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + (W5       + W13) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F14 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2       + (W6       + W14) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F15 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7       + W15) smod 31)
     smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F16 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4 - 16 + (W8  - 8 + W16)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F17 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + (W5 - 16 + (W9  - 8 + W17)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F18 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2       + (W6 - 16 + (W10 - 8 + W18)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F19 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7 - 16 + (W11 - 8 + W19)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F20 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4       + (W12 - 8 + W20)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F21 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + (W5       + (W13 - 8 + W21)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F22 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2       + (W6       + W(14 - 8 + W22)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F23 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3       + (W7       + (W15 - 8 + W23)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F24 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4 - 16 + (W8        + W24)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F25 = (W0 + (W1      + (W3 - 32 + (W5 - 16 + (W9        + W25)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F26 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2       + (W6 - 16 + (W10       + W26)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F27 = (W0 + (W1      + (W3       + (W7 - 16 + (W11       + W27)
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F28 = (W0 + (W1 - 64 + (W2 - 32 + (W4       + (W12       + W28
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
F29 = (W0 + (W1       + (W3 - 32 + (W5       + (W13       + W29
     smod 15) smod 31) smod 63) smod 127) mod 1024
```

```
More generally, the computation of F(K) can be done
with the following program, using ADA language
(declarative parts are skipped and should be obvious):


INDEX := K;
J := GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
N := W(INDEX);
while INDEX>1 loop
  if 2*INDEX < 3*J then                    -- left child
    INDEX := INDEX - J/2;
    N := (N + W(INDEX) - 128/J - 1) mod
          (256/J - 1) + 1;
  else                                     -- right child
    INDEX := INDEX - J;
    N := (N + W(INDEX) - 1) mod (256/J - 1) + 1;
  end if;
  J := J/2;
end loop;
F(K) := (W(0) + N) mod 1024;
```

10.5.2.13.7 Variable bit map format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Frequency List IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of Frequency List contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">1 1 1
FORMAT-ID
(continued)</td><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
high</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ORIG-ARFCN (middle part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ORIG-
ARFCN
low</td><td>RRFCN
1</td><td>RRFCN
2</td><td>RRFCN
3</td><td>RRFCN
4</td><td>RRFCN
5</td><td>RRFCN
6</td><td>RRFCN
7</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>RRFCN
8k-40</td><td>RRFCN
8k-39</td><td>RRFCN
8k-38</td><td>RRFCN
8k-37</td><td>RRFCN
8k-36</td><td>RRFCN
8k-35</td><td>RRFCN
8k-34</td><td>RRFCN
8k-33</td><td>octet k</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.32/GSM 04.08
***Frequency List* information element, variable bit map format**

TABLE 10.37/GSM 04.08: *Frequency List* information element, variable bit map format

ORIG-ARFCN, origin ARFCN (octet 3, 4 and 5) This field encodes the ARFCN of one frequency belonging to the set. This value is also used as origin of the bit map to generate all the other frequencies. RRFCN N, relative radio frequency channel number N (octet 5 etc.) For a RF channel with ARFCN = (ORIG-ARFCN + N) mod 1024 belonging to the set, RRFCN N bit is coded with a "1"; N = 1, 2, .. , 8M+7 with 1 ≤ M ≤ 127 For a RF channel with ARFCN = (ORIG-ARFCN + N) mod 1024 not belonging to the set, RRFCN N bit is coded with a "0"; N = 1, 2, .. , 8M+7 with 1 ≤ M ≤ 127

10.5.2.14 Frequency Short List

The purpose of the *Frequency Short List* information element is to provide the list of the absolute radio frequency channel numbers used in a frequency hopping sequence, in a small fixed length information element to obtain when possible the HANDOVER COMMAND message in a single block.

The *Frequency Short List* information element is a type 3 information element of 10 octet length.

This element is encoded exactly as the *Frequency List* information element, except that it has a fixed length instead of a variable length and does not contain a length indicator and that it shall not be encoded in bitmap 0 format.

10.5.2.14a Frequency Short List 2

The purpose of the *Frequency Short List 2* information element is to provide the list of the absolute radio frequency channel numbers used in a frequency hopping sequence, in a small fixed length information element to obtain the SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 11 and NOTIFICATION FACCH messages in a single block.

The *Frequency Short List* information element is a type 3 information element of 8 octet length.

This element is encoded exactly as the *Frequency List* information element, except that it has a fixed length instead of a variable length and does not contain a length indicator and that it shall not be encoded in bitmap 0 format.

10.5.2.15 Handover Reference

The purpose of the *Handover Reference* information element is to provide a handover reference value used for access identification.

The *Handover Reference* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.33/GSM 04.08 and table 10.38/GSM 04.08.

The *Handover Reference* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Handover Reference IEI							octet 1
Handover reference value								octet 2

FIGURE 10.33/GSM 04.08
***Handover Reference* information element**

TABLE 10.38/GSM 04.08: *Handover Reference* information element

Handover reference value (octet 2) The handover reference value field is coded using binary representation. Range: 0 to 255.

10.5.2.16 IA Rest Octets

The *IA Rest Octet*s information element contains spare bits and possibly a *frequency parameters, before time* field, which combines a mobile allocation (see 10.5.2.21) and a MAIO (see the *channel description* information element).

The *IA Rest Octet*s information element is a type 5 information element with 1-12 octets length, and is coded as shown in figure 10.34/GSM 04.08 and 10.34a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.38a/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	IA rest octets IEI							octet 1
P = 0	0	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2*
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3*
.							.	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n*

FIGURE 10.34/GSM 04.08
***IA rest octet*s information element, P=00**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	IA rest octets IEI							octet 1
P = 1	0	Length of frequency parameters contents						octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	MAIO						octet 3
MA C 8k	MA C 8k-1	MA C 8k-2	MA C 8k-3	MA C 8k-4	MA C 8k-5	MA C 8k-6	MA C 8k-7	octet 4
MA C 008	MA C 007	MA C 006	MA C 005	MA C 004	MA C 003	MA C 002	MA C 001	octet k
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet k+1
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.34a/GSM 04.08
***IA Rest Octets* information element, P=10**

TABLE 10.38a/GSM 04.08: *IA rest octet* information element

P (octet 2, bits 7 and 8) P=00 indicates that the frequency parameters field is not present. P=10 indicates that the frequency parameters field is present. Length of frequency parameters, before time (octet 2, bits 1 to 6) This field is coded as the binary representation of the number of octets occupied by the frequency parameters, before time field. If this length is 0, the *frequency parameters, before time* is not present. MAIO (octet 3, bits 6 to 1) The MAIO field is coded as the binary representation of the mobile allocation index offset. range: 0 to 63 MA C i, Mobile allocation RF channel (octet 3 to n) the RF channels represented in the MA C i bit fields are those which in the cell channel description information element are coded with "1"s in the CA ARFCN N bit fields. If NF denotes the number of frequencies in the mobile allocation field then: MA C i = CA ARFCN N(i): i=1,2..,NF. N(i) is an increasing function of i, i.e., the order of appearance of the RF channels in the mobile allocation field is the same as in the cell allocation field in the cell channel description information element. For a RF channel belonging to the mobile allocation the MA C i bit is coded with a "1": i=1,2,..,NF. For a RF channel not belonging to the mobile allocation the MA C i bit is coded with a "0": i=1,2,..,NF. If NF mod 8 <>0 then bits NF to 8k in octet 3 shall each be coded with a "0"".

10.5.2.17 IAR Rest Octets

The *IAR Rest Octets* information element contains only spare bits. Its purpose is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the AGCH in later phases.

The *IAR Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 4 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	IAR Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4

FIGURE 10.35/GSM 04.08
***IAR Rest Octets* information element**

10.5.2.18 IAX Rest Octets

The *IAX Rest Octets* information element contains only spare bits only. Its purpose is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the AGCH in later phases.

The *IAX Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 1-5 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	IAX Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2*
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3*
⋮							⋮	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n*

FIGURE 10.36/GSM 04.08
***IAX Rest Octets* information element**

10.5.2.19 L2 Pseudo Length

The *L2 Pseudo Length* information element indicates the number of octets following it in the message which are to be interpreted in the scope of the phase 1 protocol.

The *L2 Pseudo Length* information element is the first part of e.g. SYSTEM INFORMATION messages which are mentioned as exceptions in section 10.1. It occupies the first octet of such messages.

The *L2 Pseudo Length* Information element is an element with 2 octets length:

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	L2 Pseudo Length IEI							octet 1
L2 Pseudo Length value						0	1	octet 2

FIGURE 10.37/GSM 04.08
***L2 Pseudo Length* information element**

TABLE 10.39/GSM 04.08: *L2 Pseudo Length* information element

L2 pseudo length value (octet 2) The coding of the L2 pseudo length value field is the binary representation of the L2 pseudo length of the message in which the L2 pseudo length information element occurs.

NOTE: bits 1 and 2 are not spare.

10.5.2.20 Measurement Results

The purpose of the *Measurement Results* information element is to provide the results of the measurements made by the MS on the serving cell and the neighbour cells.

The *Measurement Results* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.38/GSM 04.08 and table 10.40/GSM 04.08.

The *Measurement Results* is a type 3 information element with 17 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Measurement Results IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>BA-
USED</td><td>DTX
USED</td><td colspan="6">RXLEV-FULL-SERVING-CELL</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>MEAS-
VALID</td><td colspan="6">RXLEV-SUB-SERVING-CELL</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="3">RXQUAL-FULL
SERVING-CELL</td><td colspan="3">RXQUAL-SUB
SERVING-CELL</td><td>NO-
NCELL
M
(high
part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">NO-NCELL-M
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">RXLEV-NCELL 1</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 1</td><td colspan="3">BSIC-NCELL 1
(high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC-NCELL 1
(low part)</td><td colspan="5">RXLEV-NCELL 2
(high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td>RXLEV
NCELL
2
(low
part)</td><td colspan="5">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 2</td><td colspan="2">BSIC-NCELL
2
(high part)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.38/GSM 04.08
***Measurement Results* information element**

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4">BSIC-NCELL 2
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">RXLEV-NCELL 3
(high part)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">RXLEV-
NCELL 3
(low part)</td><td colspan="5">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 3</td><td colspan="1">BSIC-
NCELL
3
(high
part)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC-NCELL 3
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">RXLEV-NCELL 4
(high part)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">RXLEV-NCELL 4
(low part)</td><td colspan="5">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 4</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">BSIC-NCELL 4</td><td colspan="2">RXLEV-NCELL
5
(high part)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">RXLEV-NCELL 5
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 5
(high part)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="1">BCCH-
FREQ-
NCELL
5(low
part)</td><td colspan="6">BSIC-NCELL 5</td><td colspan="1">RXLEV
NCELL
6
(high
part)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">RXLEV-NCELL 6
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">BCCH-FREQ-NCELL 6
(high part)</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">BCCH-FREQ-
NCELL 6
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">BSIC-NCELL 6</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.38/GSM 04.08
***Measurement Results* information element (continued)**

TABLE 10.40/GSM 04.08: *Measurement Results* information element

BA-USED (octet 2), the value of the BA-IND field of the neighbour cells description information element or elements defining the BCCH allocation used for the coding of BCCH-FREQ-NCELL fields. Range 0 to 1. DTX-USED (octet 2) This bit indicates whether or not the MS used DTX during the previous measurement period. Bit 7 0 DTX was not used 1 DTX was used RXLEV-FULL-SERVING-CELL and RXLEV-SUB-SERVING-CELL, (octets 2 and 3) Received signal strength on serving cell, measured respectively on all slots and on a subset of slots (see GSM 05.08) The RXLEV-FULL-SERVING-CELL and RXLEV-SUB-SERVING-CELL fields are coded as the binary representation of a value N. N corresponds according to the mapping defined in GSM 05.08 to the received signal strength on the serving cell. Range: 0 to 63 MEAS-VALID (octet 3) This bit indicates if the measurement results for the dedicated channel are valid or not Bit 7 0 The measurement results are valid 1 the measurement results are not valid RXQUAL-FULL-SERVING-CELL and RXQUAL-SUB-SERVING-CELL (octet 4) Received signal quality on serving cell, measured respectively on all slots and on a subset of the slots (see TS. GSM 05.08)

TABLE 10.40/GSM 04.08: *Measurement Results* information element (continued)

CELL fields are coded as the binary representation of the received signal quality on the serving cell.

Range: 0 to 7 (See GSM 05.08)

NO-NCELL-M, Number of neighbouring cell measurements (octets 4 and 5)

Bits	
1 8 7	
0 0 0	No neighbour cell measurement result
0 0 1	1 " " " "
0 1 0	2 " " " "
0 1 1	3 " " " "
1 0 0	4 " " " "
1 0 1	5 " " " "
1 1 0	6 " " " "
1 1 1	Neighbour cell information not available for serving cell

RXLEV-NCELL i, Received signal strength on the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16)

The RXLEV-NCELL field is coded as the binary representation of a value N. N corresponds according to the mapping defined in TS. GSM 05.08 to the received signal strength on the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1 & 2.

Range: 0 to 63.

TABLE 10.40/GSM 04.08: *Measurement Results* information element (concluded)

BCCH-FREQ-NCELL i, BCCH carrier of the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 6, 8,10, 12, 14, 15, 16 and 17) The BCCH-FREQ-NCELL i field is coded as the binary representation of the position, starting with 0, of the i'th neighbouring cells BCCH carrier in the BCCH channel list. The BCCH channel list is composed of one or two BCCH channel sub lists, each sub list is derived from the set of frequencies defined by reference neighbour cells description information element or elements. In the latter case the set is the union of the two sets defined by the two neighbour cells description information elements. In each BCCH channel sub list the absolute RF channel numbers are placed in increasing order of ARFCN, except that ARFCN 0, if included in the set, is put in the last position in the sub list. The BCCH channel list consists either of only the sub list derived from the neighbour cells description information element(s) in System Information 2/5 (and possible 2bis/5bis) or of that sub list immediately followed by the sub list derived from the neighbour cells description information element in System Information 2ter/5ter for the case System Information 2ter/5ter is also received. If the set of ARFCNs defined by the reference neighbour cells description information element or elements includes frequencies that the MS does not support then these ARFCNs shall be included in the list. The notation 2/5 etc. means that the rules above apply to the neighbour cells description information elements received in System Information 2, 2bis and 2ter and to those received in System Information 5, 5bis and 5ter separately. See note 1 & 2. Range: 0 to 31. BSIC-NCELL i, Base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 15 and 17) The BSIC-NCELL i field is coded as the binary representation of the base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1 & 2. Range: 0 to 63. **Note 1:** If the field extends over two octets the highest numbered bit of the lowest numbered octet is the most significant and the lowest numbered bit of the highest numbered octet is the least significant. **Note 2:** If NO-NCELL-M < 6 the remaining RXLEV-NCELL i, BS- FREQ-NCELL i and BSIC-NCELL i fields (NO-NCELL-M < i <= 6) shall be coded with a "0" in each bit.

10.5.2.21 Mobile Allocation

The purpose of the *Mobile Allocation* information element is to provide that part of the RF channels belonging to the cell allocation (coded with a "1" in the cell channel description information element) which is used in the mobile hopping sequence.

The *Mobile Allocation* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.39/GSM 04.08 and table 10.41/GSM 04.08.

The *Mobile Allocation* is a type 4 information element with 3 to 10 octets length except for the cases specified in section 9.1.18.1 and 9.1.19.2.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Mobile Allocation IEI							octet 1
Length of mobile allocation contents								octet 2
MA C 8n	MA C 8n-1	MA C 8n-2	MA C 8n-3	MA C 8n-4	MA C 8n-5	MA C 8n-6	MA C 8n-7	octet 3
MA C 008	MA C 007	MA C 006	MA C 005	MA C 004	MA C 003	MA C 002	MA C 001	octet n+2

FIGURE 10.39/GSM 04.08
***Mobile Allocation* information element**

TABLE 10.41/GSM 04.08: *Mobile Allocation* information element

MA C i, Mobile allocation RF channel i (octet 3 etc.), i = 1, 2,..., NF The MA C i bit indicates whether or not the Mobile allocation frequency list includes the i'th frequency in the cell allocation frequency list. The cell allocation frequency list is derived from the set of frequencies defined by the reference cell channel description information element. NF denotes the number of frequencies in the cell allocation frequency list. In the cell allocation frequency list the absolute RF channel numbers are placed in increasing order of ARFCN, except that ARFCN 0, if included in the set, is put in the last position in the list, For a RF channel belonging to the mobile allocation the MA C i bit is coded with a "1"; i = 1, 2,..., NF. For a RF channel not belonging to the mobile allocation the MA C i bit is coded with a "0"; i = 1, 2,..., NF. If NF mod 8 <> 0 then bits NF to 8n in octet 3 must be coded with a "0" in each.

10.5.2.21a Mobile Time Difference

A *Mobile Time Difference* information element encodes a time related to the synchronization difference between the time bases of two base stations. This type of information is used in conjunction with the HANDOVER COMPLETE message.

The *Mobile Time Difference* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.39a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.41a/GSM 04.08.

The *Mobile Time Difference* information element is a type 4 information element with 5 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Mobile Time Difference IEI							Octet 1
Length of Mobile Time difference contents								Octet 2
Mobile Time Difference value (high)								Octet 3
Mobile Time Difference value (contd)								Octet 4
Mobile Time Difference value (low)					0 spare	0 spare	0 spare	Octet 5

FIGURE 10.39a/GSM 04.08
***Mobile Time Difference* information element**

TABLE 10.41a/GSM 04.08: *Mobile Time Difference* information element

Mobile Time Difference value (octet 3, 4 and 5) The coding of the Mobile Time Difference value field is the binary representation of the time difference in half bit periods and modulo 2^{21} half bit periods; 1/2 bit period = 24/13 µs.

10.5.2.22 Neighbour Cells Description

The purpose of the *Neighbour Cells Description* information element is to provide the absolute radio frequency channel numbers of the BCCH carriers to be monitored by the MSs in the cell.

The *Neighbour Cells Description* information element is coded as the *Cell Channel Description* information element, as specified in section 10.5.2.1b, with the exception of bits 5 and 6 of octet 2. figure 10.40/GSM 04.08 and table 10.42/GSM 04.08 contains the difference of specifications.

The *Neighbour Cells Description* information element is a type 3 information element with 17 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Neighbour Cells Description IEI							octet 1
Bit 128	Bit 127	EXT-IND	BA-IND	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	Bit 121	octet 2
Bit 120	Bit 119	Bit 118	Bit 117	Bit 116	Bit 115	Bit 114	Bit 113	octet 3
Bit 008	Bit 007	Bit 006	Bit 005	Bit 004	Bit 003	Bit 002	Bit 001	octet 17

FIGURE 10.40/GSM 04.08
***Neighbour Cells Description* information element**

TABLE 10.42/GSM 04.08: *Neighbour Cells Description* information element

EXT-IND, Extension indication (octet 2, bit 6) If received in System Information 2, 2bis, 5 or 5bis this bit indicates whether the information element carries the complete information of a BCCH channel sub list or whether a complementary information element is sent in another message. A GSM 900 MS which only supports the primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05) may consider this bit as a spare bit and assume that the information element carries the complete BA, see section 3.2.2.1. NOTE: This indicator is set to 1 in the neighbour cells description information elements in System Information 2 and 2bis and 5 and 5bis respectively when more than one is needed to describe a BCCH channel sub list. Bit 6 0 The information element carries the complete BA 1 The information element carries only a part of the BA BA-IND, BCCH allocation sequence number indication (octet 2). Range 0 to 1 The BA-IND is needed to allow the network to discriminate measurements results related to different BAs (e.g. BA(BCCH) and BA(SACCH)) sent to the MS.

10.5.2.22a Encoded Neighbour Cells BSIC Description

The purpose of the *Encoded Neighbour Cells BSIC Description* information element is to provide the absolute radio frequency channel numbers of the BCCH carriers together with their corresponding BSICs to be monitored by the MSs in the cell.

The *Encoded Neighbour Cells BSIC Description* information element is a type 3 information element with up to 18 octets length.

There are several formats for the *Encoded Neighbour Cells BSIC Description* information element, distinguished by the "format indicator" subfield. These formats use a special encoding scheme.

10.5.2.22a.1 General description

Figure 10.40a/04.08 shows only a special bit numbering. The different general format is described in table 10.42a/04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Descr. IEI							octet 1
Bit 128	Bit 127	Bit 126	Bit 125	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	Bit 121	octet 2
Bit 120	Bit 119	Bit 118	Bit 117	Bit 116	Bit 115	Bit 114	Bit 113	octet 3
...								...
Bit 008	Bit 007	Bit 006	Bit 005	Bit 004	Bit 003	Bit 002	Bit 001	octet 17

FIGURE 10.40a/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element (general format)**

TABLE 10.42a/GSM 04.08 *Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element, general format

```
FORMAT-ID, Format Identifier (Bit 128 and next)

The different formats are distinguished by the bits
of higher number. The possible values are the
following:

 Bit Bit Bit       format notation
 128 127 126

  1   1   0        1024 range
  1   0   0         512 range
  0   1   0         256 range
  0   0   0         128 range
  0   0   1        Absolute description

A GSM 900 mobile station which only supports the
primary GSM band P-GSM 900 (cf. GSM 05.05)
may consider all values except the value for
128 range  and the absolute description as reserved.
Other values are for future use.

The significance  of the remaining bits depends on
the FORMAT-ID. The different cases are specified in
the next sections.

Mobile stations shall treat all ARFCNs in the set
{0, 1, 2 ... 1023} as valid ARFCN values even if
the mobile station is unable to transmit or receive
on that ARFCN.
```

10.5.2.22a.2 Range 1024 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Descr. IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1 1 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>F0</td><td colspan="4">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(1)
(low part)</td><td colspan="2">W(2)
(high)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">W(2)
(low part)</td><td>W(3)
(hi)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(3) (low part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(4)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(5)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(6)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">W(7)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">W(8)</td><td>BSIC
(1)hi</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(1) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(2) (high)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(2) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(3) (high part)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(3)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(4)</td><td>BSIC
(5)hi</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(5) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(6) (high)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(6) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(7) (high part)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(7)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(8)</td><td>0
spare</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.40b/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element (1024 range format)**

TABLE 10.42b/GSM 04.08 *Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element, range 1024 format

```
F0, frequency 0 indicator (octet 2, bit 5):

0       ARFCN 0 is not a member of the set
1       ARFCN 0 is a member of the set

W(i), i from 1 to 8  (octet 2 to 10):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary
format.

If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(8) must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with
some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in
the set. The computation formulas are given in section
10.5.2.13.3.

BSIC(i), Base station identity code of the i'th
neighbouring cell (octet 10 to 17)
The  BSIC(i)  field  is  coded  as  the binary
representation  of the base station identity code of
the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1.

 Range: 0 to 63.

Note 1: If  the  field  extends  over two octets the
        highest  numbered bit of the lowest numbered
        octet is the most significant and the lowest
        numbered  bit  of the highest numbered octet
        is the least significant.
```

10.5.2.22a.3 Range 512 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Descr. IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1 0 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>F0</td><td colspan="4">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(1)
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(2)
(high part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(2) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(3) (high)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(3) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">W(4) (high)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(4) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(5) (high part)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(5) (low)</td><td colspan="5">W(6) (high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(6)
(low)</td><td colspan="6">W(7)
(high part)</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(7)
low</td><td colspan="6">W(8)</td><td>W(9)
high</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">W(9) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(1) (high)</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(1) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(2) (high part)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(2)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(3)</td><td>BSIC
(4)hi</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(4)
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(5)
(high)</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(5) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(6) (high part)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(6)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(7)</td><td>BSIC
(8)hi</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(8)
(low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(9)
(high)</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(9) (low)</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spar</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.40c/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element (512 range format)**

TABLE 10.42c/GSM 04.08
Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description **information element, range 512 format**

F0, frequency 0 indicator (octet 2, bit 5):

0 ARFCN 0 is not a member of the set
1 ARFCN 0 is a member of the set

W(i), i from 1 to 9 (octet 2 to 10):

Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format.

If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(8) must be null also.

Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.4.

BSIC(i), Base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 10 to 17)
The BSIC(i) field is coded as the binary representation of the base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1.

Range: 0 to 63.

Note 1: If the field extends over two octets the highest numbered bit of the lowest numbered octet is the most significant and the lowest numbered bit of the highest numbered octet is the least significant.

10.5.2.22a.4 Range 256 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Descr. IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1 0 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>F0</td><td colspan="4">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(1) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(2) (high part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(2) (low)</td><td colspan="5">W(3) (high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(3) low</td><td colspan="6">W(4)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">W(5)</td><td colspan="2">W(6) low</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(6) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(7) (high part)</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">W(7)
(low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(8)</td><td>W(9)
high</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(9) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(10) (high part)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(10)
low</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(1)</td><td>BSIC
(2)hi</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(2) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(3) (high)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(3) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(4) (high part)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(4)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(5)</td><td>BSIC
(6)hi</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(6) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(7) (high)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(7) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(8) (high part)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(8)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(9)</td><td>BSIC
10 hi</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(10) (low part)</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.40d/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description* information element, range 256 format**

TABLE 10.42d/GSM 04.08
Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Description **information element, range 256 format**

W(i), i from 1 to 10 (octet 4 to 10): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(10) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.5. BSIC(i), Base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 10 to 17) The BSIC(i) field is coded as the binary representation of the base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1. Range: 0 to 63. Note 1: If the field extends over two octets the highest numbered bit of the lowest numbered octet is the most significant and the lowest numbered bit of the highest numbered octet is the least significant.

10.5.2.22a.5 Range 128 format

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Descr. IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1 0 0
FORMAT-ID</td><td>F0</td><td colspan="4">W(1)
(high part)</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(1) (low part)</td><td colspan="5">W(2) (high part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(2)
low</td><td colspan="6">W(3)</td><td>W(4)
high</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">W(4) (low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(5) (high part)</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td>W(5)
low</td><td colspan="5">W(6)</td><td colspan="2">W(7)
(high)</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(7)
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(8)</td><td>W(9)
high</td><td>octet 7</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(9)
(low part)</td><td colspan="4">W(10)</td><td>W(11)
high</td><td>octet 8</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">W(11) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(1) (high part)</td><td>octet 9</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(1)hi</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(2)</td><td>BSIC
(3)hi</td><td>octet 10</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(3) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(4) (high)</td><td>octet 11</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(4) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(5) (high part)</td><td>octet 12</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(5)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(6)</td><td>BSIC
(7)hi</td><td>octet 13</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(7) (low part)</td><td colspan="3">BSIC(8) (high)</td><td>octet 14</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">BSIC(8) (low)</td><td colspan="5">BSIC(9) (high part)</td><td>octet 15</td></tr>
<tr><td>BSIC
(9)lo</td><td colspan="6">BSIC(10)</td><td>BSIC
11 hi</td><td>octet 16</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">BSIC(11) (low part)</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 17</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.40e/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Channel Description* information element, range 128 format**

TABLE 10.42e/GSM 04.08
***Encoded Neighbour Cell BSIC Channel Description* information element, range 128 format**

W(i), i from 1 to 11 (octet 4 to 9): Each W(i) encodes a non negative integer in binary format. If W(k) is null, W(k+1) to W(11) must be null also. Each non null W(k) allows to compute, together with some previous W(i) the ARFCN F(k) of a frequency in the set. The computation formulas are given in section 10.5.2.13.6. BSIC(i), Base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell (octet 9 to 17) The BSIC(i) field is coded as the binary representation of the base station identity code of the i'th neighbouring cell. See note 1. Range: 0 to 63. Note 1: If the field extends over two octets the highest numbered bit of the lowest numbered octet is the most significant and the lowest numbered bit of the highest numbered octet is the least significant.

10.5.2.22b Neighbour Cells Description 2

The purpose of the *Neighbour Cells Description 2* information element is to provide the absolute radio frequency channel numbers of the BCCH carriers to be monitored by the MSs in the cell.

The *Neighbour Cells Description 2* information element is coded as the *Cell Channel Description* information element, as specified in section 10.5.2.1b, with the exception of bits 5 to 7 of octet 2. figure 10.41/GSM 04.08 and table 10.42e-bis/GSM 04.08 contains the difference of specifications.

The *Neighbour Cells Description 2* information element is a type 3 information element with 17 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Neighbour Cells Description IEI							octet 1
Bit 128	Multiband reporting		BA IND	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	Bit 121	octet 2
Bit 120	Bit 119	Bit 118	Bit 117	Bit 116	Bit 115	Bit 114	Bit 113	octet 3
Bit 008	Bit 007	Bit 006	Bit 005	Bit 004	Bit 003	Bit 002	Bit 001	octet 17

FIGURE 10.41/GSM 04.08
***Neighbour Cells Description* 2 information element**

TABLE 10.42e-bis/GSM 04.08: *Neighbour Cells Description 2* information element

Octet 2 bit 8, 4, 3 and 2

FORMAT-ID, Format Identifier (Bit 128 and next)
The different formats are distinguished by the bits of higher number. As an exception to the general format for the neighbour cell description the format ID is coded as follows :

Bit 128	Bit 124	Bit 123	Bit 122	format notation
0	X	X	X	bit map 0
1	0	X	X	1024 range
1	1	0	0	512 range
1	1	0	1	256 range
1	1	1	0	128 range
1	1	1	1	variable bit map

Bits 6 and 7 of Octet 2

Multiband reporting

Binary encoding of multiband reporting parameter as specified in GSM 05.08.

Range: 0 to 3

Bit 5 of octet 2

BA-IND, BCCH allocation sequence number indication.

The BA-IND is needed to allow the network to discriminate measurements results related to different BAs (e.g. BA(BCCH) and BA(SACCH)) sent to the MS.

Range 0 to 1.

10.5.2.23 P1 Rest Octets

The *P1 Rest Octets* information element contains information about the status of information on an existing NCH, priority levels applied for MS identities and spare bits only.

The *P1 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 1-18 octets length.

P1 Rest Octets ::=

L I {H<NLN : bit string (2)>};
L I {H<Priority1 ::= Priority>};
L I {H<Priority2 ::= Priority>};
<Implicit Spare>;

<priority> ::= <bit string (3)>;

TABLE 10.42f/GSM 04.08 *P1 Rest Octets* information element

```
NLN   Notification List Number
The value of the NLN given in the NLN field is that sent
on the NCH for the reduced NCH monitoring

Priority: Priority i relates to Mobile Station Identity i
          (i = 1,2)

0 0 0    no priority applied
0 0 1    call priority level 4
0 1 0    call priority level 3
0 1 1    call priority level 2
1 0 0    call priority level 1
1 0 1    call priority level 0
1 1 0    call priority level B
1 1 1    call priority level A
```

10.5.2.24 P2 Rest Octets

The *P2 Rest Octets* information element contains information on the channel needed by the network and information about the status of information on an existing NCH, priority levels applied for MS identities and spare bits. The purpose of the spare bits is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the PCH in later phases.

The *P2 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 2-12 octets length.

P2 Rest Octets ::=

L I {H< CN3: bit string (2)>};
L I {H<NLN : bit string (2)>};
L I {H<Priority1 ::= Priority>};
L I {H<Priority2 ::= Priority>};
L I {H<Priority3 ::= Priority>};
<Implicit Spare>;

<priority> ::= <bit string (3)>;

TABLE 10.43/GSM 04.08: *P2 Rest Octets* information element

```
CN3   Channel Needed for Mobile Identity 3
The values and semantics used in the CN3 field are those
of the CHANNEL field of Channel Needed IE (see 10.5.2.8).

The CN3 field is associated with the Mobile Identity 3 IE
of the PAGING REQUEST TYPE 2 message.


NLN   Notification List Number
The value of the NLN given in the NLN field is that sent
on the NCH for the reduced NCH monitoring.

Priority: Priority i relates to Mobile Station Identity i
          (i = 1,2,3)

0 0 0    no priority applied
0 0 1    call priority level 4
0 1 0    call priority level 3
0 1 1    call priority level 2
1 0 0    call priority level 1
1 0 1    call priority level 0
1 1 0    call priority level B
1 1 1    call priority level A
```

10.5.2.25 P3 Rest Octets

The *P3 Rest Octets* information element contains information on the channel needed by the network and information about the status of information on an existing NCH, priority levels applied for MS identities and spare bits. The purpose of the spare bits is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the PCH in later phases.

The *P3 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 4 octets length.

P3 Rest Octets ::=

```
    L I {H< CN: bit string (4)>};
    L I {H<NLN : bit string (2)>};
    L I {H<Priority1 ::= Priority>};
    L I {H<Priority2 ::= Priority>};
    L I {H<Priority3 ::= Priority>};
    L I {H<Priority4 ::= Priority>};
    <Implicit Spare>;

CN:= <CN3: bit string (2)>
    <CN4: bit string (2)>

<priority> ::= <bit string (3)>;
```

TABLE 10.44/GSM 04.08: *P3 Rest Octets* information element

```
CN3   Channel Needed for Mobile Identity 3  (see note)
The CN3 field is associated with the Mobile Identity 3 IE
of the PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3 message.

CN4   Channel Needed for Mobile Identity 4  (see note)
The CN4 field is associated with the Mobile Identity 4 IE
of the PAGING REQUEST TYPE 3 message.

NOTE:   The values and semantics used in the CN3 and
         CN4 fields are those of the CHANNEL field of
         Channel Needed IE (see 10.5.2.8).

NLN   Notification List Number
The value of the NLN given in the NLN field is that sent
on the NCH for the reduced NCH monitoring.

Priority: Priority i relates to Mobile Station Identity i
          i (i = 1,2,3,4)

0 0 0    no priority applied
0 0 1    call priority level 4
0 1 0    call priority level 3
0 1 1    call priority level 2
1 0 0    call priority level 1
1 0 1    call priority level 0
1 1 0    call priority level B
1 1 1    call priority level A
```

10.5.2.26 Page Mode

The purpose of the *Page Mode* information element is to control the action of the MS belonging to the paging subgroup corresponding to the paging subchannel.

The *Page Mode* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44/GSM 04.08 and table 10.45/GSM 04.08.

The *Page Mode* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Page Mode IEI			0 spare	0 spare	PM		octet 1

FIGURE 10.44/GSM 04.08
***Page Mode* information element**

TABLE 10.45/GSM 04.08: *Page Mode* information element

```
PM (octet 1)
Bits
2 1
0 0       Normal paging.
0 1       Extended paging.
1 0       Paging reorganization.
1 1        Same as before.
Note: The value "same as before" has been
      defined instead of "reserved" to allow
      the use of this coding with another
      meaning in an upwards compatible way
      in later phases of the GSM system.
```

10.5.2.26a PCH information type 1

The purpose of the *PCH Information Type 1* is to inform the MS of the paging subchannel on which a paging message related to the MS is being sent. The IE of the *PCH Information Type 1* contains the number of the related paging subchannel and the corresponding call priority level and a flag indicating whether paging reorganization occurred.

The *PCH Information Type 1* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44a/GSM 04.08 and Table10.45a/GSM 04.08

The *PCH Information Type 1* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	PCH information type 1 IEI							octet 1
Paging subchannel No.			0 spare	PR	call priority			octet 2

FIGURE 10.44a/GSM 04.08
***PCH Information Type 1* information element**

TABLE 10.45a/GSM 04.08 *PCH Information Type 1* information element

```
Paging subchannel number (octet 2)
Bit
8 7 6
Binary representation

PR paging reorganisation indication flag (octet 2)
Bit
4
0        No paging reorganisation occurred
1        Paging reorganisation occurred

Call priority (octet 2)
Bit
3 2 1
0 0 0    no priority applied
0 0 1    call priority level 4
0 1 0    call priority level 3
0 1 1    call priority level 2
1 0 0    call priority level 1
1 0 1    call priority level 0
1 1 0    call priority level B
1 1 1    call priority level A
```

10.5.2.26b PCH information type 2

The purpose of the *PCH Information Type 2* is to inform the MS of the paging subgroup on which a paging message related to the MS is being sent. The IE of the *PCH Information Type 2* contains the number of the related paging subgroup and the corresponding call priority level and a flag indicating whether paging reorganization occurred.

The *PCH Information Type 2* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44b/GSM 04.08 and Table10.45b/GSM 04.08

The *PCH Information Type 2* is a type 3 information element with 2 1/2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	PCH information type 2 IEI							octet 1
Paging subgroup number								octet 2
call priority			PR					octet 3

FIGURE 10.44b/GSM 04.08
***PCH Information Type 2* information element**

TABLE 10.45b/GSM 04.08 *PCH Information Type 2* information element

```
Paging subgroup number (octet 2)
Bit
8 7 6 5 4 3 2
Binary representation

Call priority (octet 3)
Bit
8 7 6
0 0 0    no priority applied
0 0 1    call priority level 4
0 1 0    call priority level 3
0 1 1    call priority level 2
1 0 0    call priority level 1
1 0 1    call priority level 0
1 1 0    call priority level B
1 1 1    call priority level A

PR paging reorganisation indication flag (octet 3)
Bit
5
0        No paging reorganisation occurred
1        Paging reorganisation occurred
```

10.5.2.26c NCH position

The *NCH Position* information element contains the position about an NCH block in a cell in which a notification for a specific call will be present.

The *NCH Position* information element is a type 3 information element with 1 1/2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	NCH position IEI							octet 1
NCP			0 spare					octet 2

FIGURE 10.44c/GSM 04.08
***NCH Position* information element**

TABLE 10.45c/GSM 04.08 *NCH Position* information element

```
NCP   NCH position on the CCCH (octet 2)
The values in the NCP field indicates the block
number of the CCCH which is used for an NCH block.
(The block numbering corresponds to table 5 in
section 7 of GSM 05.02)
Bits 8 7 6      block number
     0 0 0      1
     0 0 1      2
     0 1 0      3
     0 1 1      4
     1 0 0      5
     1 0 1      6
     1 1 0      any block
     1 1 1      reserved for future use
```

10.5.2.26d NT/N1 Rest Octets

The *NT/N1 Rest Octets* information element contains the Notification List Number, if DRX is applied on the NCH, and spare bits. The purpose of the *NT/N Rest Octets* information element is to allow upward compatible introduction of new information in later phase.

The *NT/N1 Rest Octets* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44d/GSM 04.08 and Table10.45d/GSM 04.08

The *NT/N1 Rest Octets* is a type 3 information element with 1 to 16 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">NT/F Rest Octets IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>NCHI</td><td colspan="2">NLN
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">.
.
.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet n</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.44d/GSM 04.08
***NT/N1 Rest Octets* information element**

TABLE 10.45d/GSM 04.08 *NT/N1 Rest Octets* information element

```
NCHI   Notification Channel Information (octet 2)
Bit 8
 0    reduced NCH monitoring is not used on the NCH
      or no NCH is present.
 1    reduced NCH monitoring is used on the NCH
      and NLN is given.

NLN   Notification List Number (see note 1)
Bits  7 6 (octet 2)
The value of the NLN is a binary counter. The counter is
changed if the list contains a new notification.

Note 1: The NLN is only used in case of NCHI=1.
        In case of NCHI=0, the respective bits are spare.
If bits 7, 6 are spare, they are coded with
Bits 7 6
     0 1
```

10.5.2.26e NT/N2 Rest Octets

The *NT/N2 Rest Octets* information element contains the Notification List Number, if DRX is applied on the NCH, and spare bits. The purpose of the *NT/N2 Rest Octets* information element is to allow upward compatible introduction of new information in later phase.

The *NT/N2 Rest Octets* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44e/GSM 04.08 and table 10.45e/GSM 04.08.

The *NT/N2 Rest Octets* is a type 3 information element with 1 to 14 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	NT/F Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
NCHI	NLN spare		0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.44e/GSM 04.08
***NT/N2 Rest Octets* information element**

TABLE 10.45e/GSM 04.08 *NT/N2 Rest Octets* information element

```
NCHI  Notification Channel Information (octet 2)
Bit 8
 0    reduced NCH monitoring is not used on the NCH
      or no NCH is present.
 1    reduced NCH monitoring is used on the NCH
      and NLN is given.

NLN   Notification List Number (see note 1)
Bits  7 6 (octet 2)
The value of the NLN is a binary counter. The counter is
increased if the list contains a new notification.

Note 1: The NLN is only used in case of NCHI=1.
        In case of NCHI=0, the respective bits are spare.
If bits 7, 6 are spare, they are coded with
Bits 7 6
     0 1
```

10.5.2.26f VGCS target mode Indication

The *VGCS target mode Indication* information element is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	VGCS target mode Indic. IEI							octet 1
Target mode		Group cipher key number				1 spare	1 spare	octet 2

FIGURE 10.44f/GSM 04.08
***VGCS target mode Indication* information element**

TABLE 10.45f/GSM 04.08 *VGCS target mode* information element

Target mode (octet 2) Bit 8 7 0 0 dedicated mode 0 1 group transmit mode Other values are reserved for future use. Group cipher key number (octet 2) Bit 6 5 4 3 0 0 0 0 no ciphering 0 0 0 1 cipher key number 1 0 0 1 0 cipher key number 2 0 0 1 1 cipher key number 3 0 1 0 0 cipher key number 4 0 1 0 1 cipher key number 5 0 1 1 0 cipher key number 6 0 1 1 1 cipher key number 7 1 0 0 0 cipher key number 8 1 0 0 1 cipher key number 9 1 0 1 0 cipher key number A 1 0 1 1 cipher key number B 1 1 0 0 cipher key number C 1 1 0 1 cipher key number D 1 1 1 0 cipher key number E 1 1 1 1 cipher key number F

10.5.2.26g Uplink Access Request Indication

The *Uplink Access Request Indication* information element is a type 2 information element with 1 octet length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Uplink Access Request Indic. IEI							octet 1

FIGURE 10.44g/GSM 04.08
***Uplink Access Request Indication* information element**

10.5.2.26h UIC

The *UIC* information element contains the Uplink Identity Code of a cell,

The *UIC* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44h/GSM 04.08 and table 10.45g/GSM 04.08.

The *UIC* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	UIC IEI							octet 1
UIC						0 spare	1 spare	octet 2

FIGURE 10.44h/GSM 04.08
***UIC* information element**

TABLE 10.45g/GSM 04.08 *UIC* information element

UIC, Uplink identity code (octet 2) The UIC is coded as the binary representation of the uplink identity code If bits 1, 2 are spare, they are coded with Bits 2 1 0 1

10.5.2.26i Group Channel Description

The purpose of the *Group Channel Description* information element is to provide a description of an allocatable voice group call or voice broadcast call channel together with its SACCH and that part of the RF channels belonging to the cell allocation which is used in the mobile hopping sequence if applicable.

The *Group Channel Description* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44i/GSM 04.08 and table 10.45h/GSM 04.08.

The *Group Channel Description* is a type 4 information element with 4 to 13 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Group Channel Description IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of mobile allocation contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Channel type
and TDMA offset</td><td colspan="3">TN</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3" rowspan="2">TSC</td><td>H=1-></td><td colspan="4">MAIO (high part)</td><td rowspan="2">octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>H
H=0-></td><td colspan="2">0
spare</td><td colspan="2">ARFCN
(high part)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">MAIO
(low part)</td><td colspan="6">HSN</td><td rowspan="2">octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">ARFCN (low part)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MA
C
8n</td><td>MA
C
8n-1</td><td>MA
C
8n-2</td><td>MA
C
8n-3</td><td>MA
C
8n-4</td><td>MA
C
8n-5</td><td>MA
C
8n-6</td><td>MA
C
8n-7</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td>MA
C
008</td><td>MA
C
007</td><td>MA
C
006</td><td>MA
C
005</td><td>MA
C
004</td><td>MA
C
003</td><td>MA
C
002</td><td>MA
C
001</td><td>octet n+5</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.44i/GSM 04.08
***Group Channel Description* information element**

TABLE 10.45h/GSM 04.08 *Group Channel Description* information element

```
Channel type and TDMA offset (octet 3)
  Bits
8 7 6 5 4
0 0 0 0 1  TCH/FS + ACCHs (speech codec version 1)
0 0 0 1 T  TCH/HS + ACCHs (speech codec version 1)
0 0 1 T T  SDCCH/4 + SACCH/C4
0 1 T T T  SDCCH/8 + SACCH/C8

The  T bits indicate the subchannel number coded in
binary.

All other values are reserved for future use.

TN, Timeslot number (octet 3)
The  TN field is coded as the binary representation
of the timeslot number as defined in GSM 05.10.

Range: 0 to 7.

TSC, Training Sequence Code (octet 4)
The TSC field is coded as the binary representation
of the Training Sequence code as defined in GSM
05.03
Range: 0 to 7.

H, Hopping channel (octet 4)
Bit
5
0        Single RF channel
1        RF hopping channel

Note 1: The  value  of H affects the semantics of the
      channel  selector  field

Note 2: If H=0, the information element terminates
      with octet 5

Channel selector (octet 4 and 5)
H = "0": The channel selector field
       consists of the absolute RF channel number

      Octet 4
       Bits
       4 3
       0 0     Spare
```

TABLE 10.45h/GSM 04.08 *Group Channel Description* information element (continued)

```
      ARFCN, (octet 4, bits 2 and 1, and
              octet 5, bits 8 to 1)
        The ARFCN is coded as the binary representa-
        tion of the absolute RF channel number

         Range: 0 to 1023

H = "1": The channel selector field consists of the
         mobile allocation index offset, MAIO, and
         the hopping sequence number, HSN.

          MAIO, (octet 4 bit 4 to 1 high part and
                 octet 5 bit 8 to 7 low part)
          The MAIO field is coded as the binary rep-
          resentation of the mobile allocation index
          offset as defined in GSM 05.02.

         Range: 0 to 63.

         HSN, (octet 5 bit 6 to 1)
         The HSN field is coded as the binary repres-
         entation of the hopping sequence number
          as defined in GSM 05.02
         Range 0 to 63.

MA  C  i,  Mobile  allocation RF channel i (octet 4
etc.), i = 1, 2,..., NF
The MA C i bit indicates whether or not the Mobile
allocation frequency list includes the  i'th
frequency in the cell allocation frequency list.
In the cell allocation frequency list the absolute
RF channel numbers are placed in increasing order of
ARFCN, except that ARFCN 0, if included in the set,
is put in the last position in the list,

For  a RF channel belonging to the mobile allocation
the  MA  C  i bit is coded with a "1"; i = 1, 2,...,
NF.

For  a  RF  channel  not  belonging  to  the  mobile
allocation  the  MA C i bit is coded with a "0"; i =
1, 2,..., NF.

If  NF mod 8 <> 0 then bits NF to 8n in octet 4 must
be coded with a "0" in each.
```

10.5.2.26j Cell Reselection Parameters

The purpose of the *Cell Reselection Parameters* information element is to provide a variety of information about a cell which are used by the MS for cell reselection purposes.

The *Cell Reselection Parameters* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.44j/GSM 04.08 and table 10.45i/GSM 04.08.

The *Cell Reselection Parameters* information element is a type 3 information element with 5 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cell Reselection Parameters IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">CELL-RESELECT HYSTERESIS</td><td colspan="5">MX-TXPWR-MAX-CCH</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>CBQ</td><td>NECI</td><td colspan="6">RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET</td><td colspan="2">PENAL_TIME (high part)</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">PENALTY_TIME (low part)</td><td colspan="3">TEMPORARY_OFFSET</td><td>0 spare</td><td>1 spare</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.44j/GSM 04.08
***Cell Reselection Parameters* information element**

TABLE 10.45i Part A/GSM 04.08 *Cell Reselection Parameters* information element

CELL-RESELECT-HYSTERESIS (octet 2)
The usage of this information is defined in GSM 05.08
Bits

8	7	6	
0	0	0	0 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0	0	1	2 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0	1	0	4 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
0	1	1	6 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1	0	0	8 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1	0	1	10 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1	1	0	12 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection
1	1	1	14 dB RXLEV hysteresis for LA re-selection

MS-TXPWR-MAX-CCH (octet 2)
The MS-TXPWR-MAX-CCH field is coded as the binary representation of the "power control level" in TS GSM 05.05 corresponding to the maximum TX power level an MS may use when accessing on a Control Channel CCH. This value shall be used by the Mobile Station according to GSM 05.08.

Range: 0 to 31.

RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN (octet 3)
The RXLEV-ACCESS-MIN field is coded as the binary representation of the minimum received signal level at the MS for which it is permitted to access the system.

Range: 0 to 63. (See TS GSM 05.08).

NECI: HALF RATE SUPPORT (octet 3)
Bit 7:
0 New establishment causes are not supported
1 New establishment causes are supported

TABLE 10.45i Part B/GSM 04.08 *Cell Reselection Parameters* information element

CBQ, CELL_BAR_QUALIFY (octet 3)

CELL_BAR_QUALIFY is used by the network to control MS cell selection and reselection. The use and coding of this parameter is defined in GSM 05.08.

CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET (octet 4)

CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET is coded as the binary representation of the "CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is a value used by the MS to apply a positive or negative offset to the value of C2 as defined in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

TEMPORARY_OFFSET (octet 5)

The TEMPORARY_OFFSET field is coded as the binary representation of the "TEMPORARY_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is used by the MS as part of its calculation of C2 for the cell reselection process as described in GSM 05.08. It is used to apply a negative offset to C2 for the duration of PENALTY_TIME.

PENALTY_TIME (octets 4 and 5)

The PENALTY_TIME is coded as the binary representation of the "PENALTY_TIME" in GSM 05.08. It defines the length of time for which TEMPORARY_OFFSET is active. The usage of PENALTY_TIME is described in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

10.5.2.27 NCC Permitted

The purpose of the *NCC Permitted* information element is to provide a definition of the allowed NCCs on the BCCH carriers to be reported in the MEASUREMENT REPORT message by the MSs in the cell.

The *NCC Permitted* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.45/GSM 04.08 and table 10.46/GSM 04.08.

The *NCC Permitted* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	NCC Permitted IEI							octet 1
NCC permitted								octet 2

FIGURE 10.45/GSM 04.08
***NCC Permitted* information element**

TABLE 10.46/GSM 04.08: *NCC Permitted* information element

NCC permitted (octet 2) The NCC permitted field is coded as a bit map, i.e. bit N is coded with a "0" if the BCCH carrier with NCC = N-1 is not permitted for monitoring and with a "1" if the BCCH carrier with NCC = N-1 is permitted for monitoring; N = 1,2,..,8.

10.5.2.28 Power Command

The purpose of the *Power Command* information element is to provide the power level to be used by the MS.

The *Power Command* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.46/GSM 04.08 and table 10.47/GSM 04.08.

The *Power Command* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Power Command IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	0 spare	POWER LEVEL					octet 2

FIGURE 10.46/GSM 04.08
***Power Command* information element**

TABLE 10.47/GSM 04.08: *Power Command* information element

Power level (octet 2) The power level field is coded as the binary representation of the "power control level", see TS GSM 05.05. This value shall be used by the mobile station according to GSM 05.08. Range: 0 to 31.

10.5.2.28a Power Command and access type

The purpose of the *Power Command and access type* information element is to provide the power level to be used by the MS and the indication that the MS can avoid the transmission of handover access.

The *Power Command and access type* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.46a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.47a/GSM 04.08.

The *Power Command and access type* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Power Command and Access Type IEI							octet 1
ATC	0 spare	0 spare	POWER LEVEL					octet 2

FIGURE 10.46a/GSM 04.08
***Power Command and access type* information element**

TABLE 10.47a/GSM 04.08: *Power Command and access type* information element

ATC (Access Type Control) (octet 2) bit 8 0 Sending of Handover access is mandatory 1 Sending of Handover access is optional Power level (octet 2) The power level field is coded as the binary representation of the "power control level", see TS GSM 05.05. This value shall be used by the mobile station according to GSM 05.08. Range: 0 to 31.

10.5.2.29 RACH Control Parameters

The purpose of the *RACH Control Parameters* information element is to provide parameters used to control the RACH utilization. This information element is broadcast to MSs in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 1, 2, 2bis, 3, and 4 messages.

The *RACH Control Parameters* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.47/GSM 04.08 and table 10.48/GSM 04.08.

The *RACH Control Parameters* is a type 3 information element with 4 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	RACH Control Parameters IEI							octet 1
Max retrans		Tx-integer				CELL BARR ACCESS	RE	octet 2
AC C15	AC C14	AC C13	AC C12	AC C11	EC C10	AC C09	AC C08	octet 3
AC C07	AC C06	AC C05	AC C04	AC C03	AC C02	AC C01	AC C00	octet 4

FIGURE 10.47/GSM 04.08
***RACH Control Parameters* information element**

TABLE 10.48/GSM 04.08: *RACH Control Parameters* information element

```
Max  retrans,  Maximum  number  of retransmissions
(octet 2)

Bits
8  7
0  0  Maximum 1 retransmission
0  1  Maximum 2 retransmissions
1  0  Maximum 4 retransmissions
1  1  Maximum 7 retransmissions

Tx-integer, Number of slots to spread transmission
(octet 2)
Bits
6  5  4  3
0  0  0  0     3 slots used to spread transmission
0  0  0  1     4 slots used to spread transmission
0  0  1  0     5 slots used to spread transmission
0  0  1  1     6 slots used to spread transmission
0  1  0  0     7 slots used to spread transmission
0  1  0  1     8 slots used to spread transmission
0  1  1  0     9 slots used to spread transmission
0  1  1  1    10 slots used to spread transmission
1  0  0  0    11 slots used to spread transmission
1  0  0  1    12 slots used to spread transmission
1  0  1  0    14 slots used to spread transmission
1  0  1  1    16 slots used to spread transmission
1  1  0  0    20 slots used to spread transmission
1  1  0  1    25 slots used to spread transmission
1  1  1  0    32 slots used to spread transmission
1  1  1  1    50 slots used to spread transmission
```

TABLE 10.48/GSM 04.08: *RACH Control Parameters* information element (continued)

```
  CELL_BAR_ACCESS, Cell Barred for Access (octet 2)
Bit
2
0  The cell is not barred, see TS. GSM 03.22
1  The cell is barred, see TS. GSM 03.22

RE, Call reestablishment allowed (octet 2)
Bit
1
0  Call Reestablishment allowed in the cell
1  Call Reestablishment not allowed in the cell

EC Emergency Call allowed (octet 3 bit 3)
3
0  Emergency call allowed in the cell to all MSs
1  Emergency call not allowed in the cell except
   for the MSs that belong to one of the classes
   between 11 to 15
AC CN, Access Control Class N (octet 3(except bit 3)
and octet 4)
For  a  mobile station with AC C = N access is not
barred  if  the AC CN bit is coded with a "0"; N =
0, 1, .. 9,11, .., 15.
```

10.5.2.30 Request Reference

The purpose of the *Request Reference* information element is to provide the random access information used in the channel request and the frame number, FN modulo 42432 in which the channel request was received.

The *Request Reference* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.48/GSM 04.08 and table 10.49/GSM 04.08.

The *Request Reference* is a type 3 information element with 4 octets length.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Request Reference IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">RA</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">T1'</td><td colspan="3">T3
(high part)</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">T3
(low part)</td><td colspan="5">T2</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.48/GSM 04.08
***Request Reference* information element**

TABLE 10.49/GSM 04.08: *Request Reference* information element

RA, Random Access Information (octet 2)
The RA field is as shown in Table 9.9, section 9.1.8

T1' (octet 2)
The T1' field is coded as the binary representation of (FN div 1326) mod 32.

T3 (octet 3 and 4)
The T3 field is coded as the binary representation of FN mod 51. Bit 3 of octet 2 is the most significant bit and bit 6 of octet 3 is the least significant bit.

T2 (octet 4)
The T2 field is coded as the binary representation of FN mod 26.

NOTE 1: The frame number, FN modulo 42432 can be calculated as 51x((T3-T2) mod 26)+T3+51x26xT1'

10.5.2.31 RR Cause

The purpose of the *RR Cause* information element is to provide the reason for release or the reason for completion of an assignment or handover.

The *RR Cause* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.49/GSM 04.08 and table 10.50/GSM 04.08.

The *RR Cause* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	RR Cause IEI							octet 1
RR cause value								octet 2

FIGURE 10.49/GSM 04.08
***RR Cause* information element**

TABLE 10.50/GSM 04.08: *RR Cause* information element

```
RR cause value (octet 2)
Bits
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0   Normal event
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1   Abnormal release, unspecified
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0   Abnormal release, channel
                    unacceptable
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1   Abnormal release, timer expired
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0   Abnormal release, no activity on
                    the radio path
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1   Preemptive release
0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0   Handover impossible, timing advance
                  out of range
0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1   Channel mode unacceptable
0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0   Frequency not implemented
0 1 0 0 0 0 0 1   Call already cleared
0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1   Semantically incorrect message
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0   Invalid mandatory information
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1   Message type non-existent or not
                    implemented
0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0   Message type not compatible with
                  protocol state
0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0   Conditional IE error
0 1 1 0 0 1 0 1   No cell allocation available
0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1   Protocol error unspecified

All other cause values shall be treated as 0000 0000,
'normal event'

The listed RR cause values are defined in Annex F.
```

10.5.2.32 SI 1 Rest Octets

The *SI 1 Rest Octets* information element contains the position about the NCH and spare bits.

The *SI 1 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 1 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
NP	NCP spare					1 spare	1 spare	octet 2

FIGURE 10.50/GSM 04.08
***SI 1 Rest Octets* information element**

TABLE 10.50a/GSM 04.08 *SI 1 Rest Octets* information element

```
NP   NCH position information (octet 2)
Bit 8
 0    NCH is not supported
 1    NCH is located on the CCCH

NCP   NCH position on the CCCH (octet 2) (see note 1)
      The values in the NCP field indicates the block
      number of the CCCH block which is used for the
      first NCH block and the number of blocks used
      for the NCH. (The block numbering corresponds
      to table 5 in section 7 of GSM 05.02)
The following coding applies if 1 or more basic
physical channels are used for CCCH, not combined with
SDCCHs.
Bits 7 6 5 4 3   No of blocks  Posit. of first block
     0 0 0 0 0   1             1
     0 0 0 0 1   1             2
     0 0 0 1 0   1             3
     0 0 0 1 1   1             4
     0 0 1 0 0   1             5
     0 0 1 0 1   1             6
     0 0 1 1 0   1             7
     0 0 1 1 1   2             1
     0 1 0 0 0   2             2
     0 1 0 0 1   2             3
     0 1 0 1 0   2             4
     0 1 0 1 1   2             5
     0 1 1 0 0   2             6
     0 1 1 0 1   3             1
     0 1 1 1 0   3             2
     0 1 1 1 1   3             3
     1 0 0 0 0   3             4
     1 0 0 0 1   3             5
     1 0 0 1 0   4             1
     1 0 0 1 1   4             2
     1 0 1 0 0   4             3
     1 0 1 0 1   4             4
     1 0 1 1 0   5             1
     1 0 1 1 1   5             2
     1 1 0 0 0   5             3
     1 1 0 0 1   6             1
     1 1 0 1 0   6             2
     1 1 0 1 1   7             1

     Other values are reserved for future use.
```

TABLE 10.50a/GSM 04.08 continued *SI 1 Rest Octets* information element

```
The following coding applies if 1 basic physical
channels is used for CCCH, combined with SDCCHs.

Bits 7 6   No of blocks  Posit. of first block
     0 0    1             1
     0 1    1             2
     1 0    2             1
     1 1    reserved for future use.
In this case, bits 5, 4, 3 are spare, coded with
Bits 5 4 3
     0 1 0

Note 1: The NCP is only used in case of NP=1.
        In case of NP=0, the respective bits are spare
        and the following coding applies:
        Bits 7 6 5 4 3
        0 1 0 1 0
```

10.5.2.33 SI 2bis Rest Octets

The *SI 2bis Rest Octets* information element contains only spare bits. Its purpose is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the BCCH in later phases.

The *SI 2bis Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 2bis Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2

FIGURE 10.51/GSM 04.08
***SI 2bis Rest Octets* information element**

10.5.2.33a SI 2ter Rest Octets

The *SI 2ter Rest Octets* information element contains only spare bits. Its purpose is to allow the upward compatible introduction of new information on the BCCH in later phases.

The *SI 2ter Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 5 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 2ter Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5

FIGURE 10.51a/GSM 04.08
***SI 2ter Rest Octets* information element**

10.5.2.34 SI 3 Rest Octets

The *SI 3 Rest Octets* information element is coded according to the syntax specified in figures 10.52 d-k/GSM 04.08 and described in tables 10.51a-c/GSM 04.08 and 10.52a-b/GSM 04.08 (See section 10.5.2.35).

The *SI 3 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 5 octets length.

<SI3 rest octet> ::= <Optional selection parameter>
<Optional Power offset>
<System Information 2ter Indicator>
<Early Classmark Sending Control>
<scheduling if and where>
<Spare padding>

<Optional Selection Parameter> ::= **H** <Selection Parameter> | **L**

<Selection Parameter> ::= **CBQ CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET TEMPORARY_OFFSET PENALTY_TIME**

<Optional Power Offset> ::= **H Power Offset | L**

<System Information 2ter Indicator> ::= **H | L**

<Early Classmark Sending Control> ::= **H | L**

<scheduling if and where>::= **L | H WHERE**

Attributes

If the **WHERE** field is not contained in the information element, this indicates that BCCH scheduling information is not sent in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 on the BCCH.

If the **WHERE** field is contained in the information element and specifies integer n, this indicates that BCCH scheduling information is sent in SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 on the BCCH and that SYSTEM INFORMATION TYPE 9 messages are sent in the blocks of the BCCH norm for which (FN DIV 51) mod (8)) = 4 and (((FN DIV 51) DIV 8) mod (n+1))= 0.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">SI 3 Rest Octets IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
PI</td><td>CBQ</td><td colspan="6">CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">TEMPORARY_OFFSET</td><td colspan="5">PENALTY_TIME</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
POI</td><td colspan="2">POWER
OFFSET</td><td>0
2TI</td><td>1
ECSC</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">.
.
.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>octet n</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.52d/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=H & POI=H & 2TI=L & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
1 PI	CBQ	CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET						octet 2
TEMPORARY_OFFSET			PENALTY_TIME					octet 3
0 POI	0 2TI	1 ECSC	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5
. . .							. . .	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52e/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=H & POI=L & 2TI=L & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	1 POI	POWER OFFSET		0 2TI	0 ECSC	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52f/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=L & POI=H & 2TI=H & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	0 POI	0 2TI	0 ECSC	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52g/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=L & POI=L & 2TI=H & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
1 PI	CBQ	CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET						octet 2
TEMPORARY_OFFSET			PENALTY_TIME					octet 3
1 POI	POWER OFFSET		1 2TI	1 ECSC	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52h/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=H & POI=H & 2TI=H & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
1 PI	CBQ	CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET						octet 2
TEMPORARY_OFFSET			PENALTY_TIME					octet 3
0 POI	1 2TI	1 ECSC	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52i/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=H & POI=L & 2TI=H & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	1 POI	POWER OFFSET		1 2TI	0 ECSC	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52j/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=L & POI=H & 2TI=L & ECSC=L**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI 3 Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	0 POI	1 2TI	0 ECSC	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.52k/GSM 04.08
***SI 3 Rest Octets* information element for PI=L & POI=L & 2TI=L & ECSC=L**

10.5.2.35 SI 4 Rest Octets

The *SI 4 Rest Octets* information element includes parameters which are used by the MS for cell reselection purposes. It may also include the POWER OFFSET parameter used by DCS 1800 Class 3 MS.

The meanings of the parameters in octets 2 and higher are determined by the values of PI & POI as indicated in figures 10.53/GSM 04.08 and 10.54a-c/GSM 04.08 and described in tables 10.51a-c/GSM 04.08 and 10.52a-b/GSM 04.08.

The *SI 4 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 1 to 11 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI X Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
1 PI	CBQ	CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET						octet 2
TEMPORARY_OFFSET			PENALTY_TIME					octet 3
1 POI	POWER OFFSET		0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.53/GSM 04.08
***SI X Rest Octets* information element (X = 4, 7, or 8), for PI=1 & POI=1**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI X Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
1 PI	CBQ	CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET						octet 2
TEMPORARY_OFFSET			PENALTY_TIME					octet 3
0 POI	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 4
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 5
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.54a/GSM 04.08
***SI X Rest Octets* information element (X = 4, 7, or 8), for PI=1 & POI=0**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI X Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	1 POI	POWER OFFSET		1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.54b/GSM 04.08
***SI X Rest Octets* information element (X = 4, 7, or 8), for PI=0 & POI=1**

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	SI X Rest Octets IEI							octet 1
0 PI	0 POI	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 2
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet 3
:							:	
0 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	0 spare	1 spare	1 spare	octet n

FIGURE 10.54c/GSM 04.08
***SI X Rest Octets* information element (X = 4, 7, or 8), for PI=0 & POI=0**

TABLE 10.51a/GSM 04.08

For PI=1 and POI=0 table 10.51a/GSM 04.08 applies

PI, CELL_RESELECT_PARAM_IND (1 bit field)

PI	Value
L	C2 Parameters not present
H	C2 Parameters present

PI is used by the MS to determine if the C2 parameters which are, CBQ, CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET, TEMPORARY_OFFSET and PENALTY_TIME are being broadcast by the network in this message.

POI	Value (1 bit field)
L	POWER OFFSET Parameter not present
H	POWER OFFSET Parameter present

POI is used to indicate the presence or otherwise of the POWER OFFSET parameter in this message.

CBQ, CELL_BAR_QUALIFY (1 bit field)

CELL_BAR_QUALIFY is used by the network to control MS cell selection and reselection. The use and coding of this parameter is defined in GSM 05.08.

CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET (6 bit field)

CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET is coded as the binary representation of the "CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is a value used by the MS to apply a positive or negative offset to the value of C2 as defined in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

TEMPORARY_OFFSET (3 bit field)

The TEMPORARY_OFFSET field is coded as the binary representation of the "TEMPORARY_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is used by the MS as part of its calculation of C2 for the cell reselection process as described in GSM 05.08. It is used to apply a negative offset to C2 for the duration of PENALTY_TIME.

PENALTY_TIME (5 bit field)

The PENALTY_TIME is coded as the binary representation of the "PENALTY_TIME" in GSM 05.08. It defines the length of time for which TEMPORARY_OFFSET is active. The usage of PENALTY_TIME is described in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

TABLE 10.51b/GSM 04.08

For PI=1 and POI=1 table 10.51b-c/GSM 04.08 applies

CBQ, CELL_BAR_QUALIFY (1 bit field) CELL_BAR_QUALIFY is used by the network to control MS cell selection and reselection. The use and coding of this parameter is defined in GSM 05.08. CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET (6 bit field) CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET is coded as the binary representation of the "CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is a value used by the MS to apply a positive or negative offset to the value of C2 as defined in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08. TEMPORARY_OFFSET (3 bit field) The TEMPORARY_OFFSET field is coded as the binary representation of the "TEMPORARY_OFFSET" in GSM 05.08. It is used by the MS as part of its calculation of C2 for the cell reselection process as described in GSM 05.08. It is used to apply a negative offset to C2 for the duration of PENALTY_TIME. PENALTY_TIME (5 bit field) The PENALTY_TIME is coded as the binary representation of the "PENALTY_TIME" in GSM 05.08. It defines the length of time for which TEMPORARY_OFFSET is active. The usage of PENALTY_TIME is described in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.

TABLE 10.51c/GSM 04.08

POWER OFFSET (2 bit field)

POWER OFFSET is used only by DCS 1800 Class 3 MSs to add a power offset to the value of MS_TXPWR_MAX_CCH used for its random access attempts. It is also used by the MS in its calculation of C1 and C2 parameters. Its use is defined in GSM 05.08

If this parameter is transmitted on a BCCH carrier within the DCS 1800 band, its meaning shall be described below:

Value	Meaning
00	0 dB power offset
01	2 dB power offset
10	4 dB power offset
11	6 dB power offset

If this parameter is transmitted on a BCCH carrier outside the DCS 1800 band, then all bit positions shall be treated as spare.

2TI, SI 2TER INDICATOR (1 bit field)

2TI	value
L	System Information 2ter is not available
H	System Information 2ter is available

2TI is used by the MS to determine if System Information 2ter is being broadcast by the network.

This bit is meaningful only if received in System Information type 3 message. If it is received in any other message it shall be considered spare.

ECSC, Early Classmark Sending Control (1 bit field)

This bit controls the early sending of the classmark by the MSs implementing the «Controlled Early Classmark Sending» option:

H	Early Sending is explicitly accepted
L	Early Sending is explicitly forbidden

WHERE (3 bit field)

The **WHERE** field contains the 3 bit binary encoding of an integer n >= 0.

TABLE 10.52a/GSM 04.08

For PI=0 and POI=1 table 10.52a/GSM 04.08 applies

PI, CELL_RESELECT_PARAM_IND (octet 2) PI Value 0   C2 Parameters not present 1   C2 Parameters present PI is used by the MS to determine if the C2 parameters which are, CBQ, CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET, TEMPORARY_OFFSET and PENALTY_TIME are being broadcasted by the network in this message. POI Value 0   POWER OFFSET Parameter not present 1   POWER OFFSET Parameter present POI is used to indicate the presence or otherwise of the POWER OFFSET parameter in this message. POWER OFFSET POWER OFFSET is used only by DCS 1800 Class 3 MSs to add a power offset to the value of MS_TXPWR_MAX_CCH used for its random access attempts. It is also used by the MS in its calculation of C1 and C2 parameters. Its use is defined in GSM 05.08 If this parameter is transmitted on a BCCH carrier within the DCS 1800 band, its meaning shall be described below: Value   Meaning 00   0 dB power offset 01   2 dB power offset 10   4 dB power offset 11   6 dB power offset If this parameter is transmitted on a BCCH carrier outside the DCS 1800 band, then all bit positions shall be treated as spare.

TABLE 10.52b/GSM 04.08

For PI=0 and POI=0 table 10.52b/GSM 04.08 applies

PI, CELL_RESELECT_PARAM_IND (octet 2) PI Value 0   C2 Parameters not present 1   C2 Parameters present PI is used by the MS to determine if the C2 parameters which are, CBQ, CELL_RESELECT_OFFSET, TEMPORARY_OFFSET and PENALTY_TIME are being broadcasted by the network in this message. POI Value 0   POWER OFFSET Parameter not present 1   POWER OFFSET Parameter present POI is used to indicate the presence or otherwise of the POWER OFFSET parameter in this message.

10.5.2.36 SI 7 Rest Octets

The *SI 7 Rest Octets* information element includes parameters which are used by the MS for cell reselection purposes. It may also include the POWER OFFSET parameter used by a DCS 1800 Class 3 MS.

The meanings of the parameters in octets 2 and higher are determined by the values of PI & POI as indicated in figures 10.53/GSM 04.08 and 10.54a-c/GSM 04.08 and described in tables 10.51a-c/GSM 04.08 and 10.52a-b/GSM 04.08 (see section 10.5.2.35).

The *SI 7 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 1 to 21 octets length.

10.5.2.37 SI 8 Rest Octets

The *SI 8 Rest Octets* information element includes parameters which are used by the MS for cell reselection purposes. It may also include the POWER OFFSET parameter used by a DCS 1800 Class 3 MS.

The meanings of the parameters in octets 2 and higher are determined by the values of PI & POI as indicated in figures 10.53/GSM 04.08 and 10.54a-c/GSM 04.08 and described in tables 10.51a-c/GSM 04.08 and 10.52a-b/GSM 04.08 (see section 10.5.2.35).

The *SI 8 Rest Octets* information element is a type 5 information element with 1 to 21 octets length.

10.5.2.37a SI 9 Rest Octets

The *SI 9 Rest Octet*s information element contains information about scheduling of information on the BCCH.

The *SI 9 Rest Octet*s information element is a type 5 information element with 17 octets length.

Context-free grammar

<SI9 rest octets>	::=	**0** | **1** <scheduling info>
<scheduling info>	::=	<info type> <positions> **L** | <info type> <positions> **H** <scheduling info>
<info type>	::=	**0 Length4_info_type** **| 1 0 Length5_info_type** **| 1 1 Length6_info_type**
<positions>	::=	<position> **0** | <position> **1** <positions>
<position>	::=	**modulus relative_position bcch_type**

Attributes

The *scheduling info* indicates one or more information types (in *info type*) together with their *position*s. Here, a *position* specifies at which relative position P (specified in **relative_position**) modulo a position modulus M (specified in **modulus**) the information type is sent. The information type is sent in RR messages sent on the BCCH norm or BCCH ext (see GSM 05.02) as indicated in **bcch_type** in the multiframes and defined blocks within one multiframe, for which

((frame number) DIV 51) mod (M)) = P.

If the position modulus M equals 0, the information type is not sent.

Field contents

The fields of the *Si 9 Rest Octets* information element are coded as shown in table 10.52c/GSM 04.08.

TABLE 10.52c/GSM 04.08
***SI 9 rest octet* information element**

Length4_Info_type (4 bits)

This field contains a 4 bit binary encoded non-negative integer number assigned to a type of information sent on the BCCH. The assignment of non-negative integer numbers to types of information is defined in table 10.52d/GSM04.08.

Length5_Info_type (5 bits)

This field contains a 5 bit binary encoded non-negative integer number assigned to a type of information sent on the BCCH. The assignment of non-negative integer numbers to types of information is defined in table 10.52d/GSM04.08.

Length6_Info_type (6 bits)

This field contains a 6 bit binary encoded non-negative integer number assigned to a type of information sent on the BCCH. The assignment of non-negative integer numbers to types of information is defined in table 10.52d/GSM04.08.

modulus (4 bits)

This field defines the position modulus: it contains the 4 bit binary encoding of a non-negative integer n; the position modulus is 0 for n=0 and 2^{n+1} for n > 0.

relative position (0 bits if the non-negative integer n contained in the **modulus** field is 0; n+1 bits, if the non-negative integer n contained in the **modulus** field is > 0.

This field contains the n+1 bit binary encoding of a non-negative integer number < 2^{n+1}.

bcch_type (1 bit)

0 BCCH norm(as defined in GSM 05.08)

1 BCCH ext (as defined in GSM 05.08)

TABLE 10.52d/GSM 04.08
Assignment of numbers to types of BCCH information

All values design unknown information.

10.5.2.38 Starting Time

The purpose of the *Starting Time* information element is to provide the start TDMA frame number, FN modulo 42432.

The *Starting Time* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.55/GSM 04.08 and table 10.53/GSM 04.08.

The *Starting Time* is a type 3 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Starting Time IEI							octet 1
T1'					T3 (high part)			octet 2
T3 (low part)			T2					octet 3

FIGURE 10.55/GSM 04.08
***Starting Time* information element**

TABLE 10.53/GSM 04.08: *Starting Time* information element

```
T1' (octet 2)
The T1' field is coded as the binary representation
of (FN div 1326) mod 32.

T3  (octet 2 and 3)
The T3 field is coded as the binary representation
of  FN  mod  51.  Bit  3  of  octet  2  is  the most
significant  bit  and  bit 6 of octet 3 is the least
significant bit.

T2  (octet 3)
The T2 field is coded as the binary representation
of FN mod 26.

NOTE 1: The frame number, FN modulo 42432 can be cal-
        culated as 51x((T3-T2) mod 26)+T3+51x26xT1'
```

The starting time and the times mentioned above are with reference to the frame numbering in the concerned cell. They are given in units of frames (around 4.615 ms).

The *Starting Time* IE can encode only an interval of time of 42 432 frames, that is to say around 195.8 seconds. To remove any ambiguity, the specification for a reception at time T is that the encoded interval is (T-10808, T+31623). In rigorous terms, if we note ST the starting time:

> if 0 <= (ST-T) mod 42432 <= 31623, the indicated time is the next time when FN mod 42432 is equal to ST.
>
> If 32024 <= (ST-T) mod 42432 <= 42431, the indicated time has already elapsed.

The reception time T is not specified here precisely. To allow room for various MS implementations, the limit between the two behaviours above may be anywhere within the interval defined by

> 31624 <= (ST-T) mod 42432 <= 32023.

10.5.2.39 Synchronization Indication

The purpose of *Synchronization Indication* information element is to indicate which type of handover is to be performed.

The *Synchronization Indication* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.56/GSM 04.08 and table 10.55/GSM 04.08.

The *Synchronization Indication* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Synch. Indic. IEI			NCI	ROT	SI		octet 1

FIGURE 10.56/GSM 04.08
***Synchronization Indication* information element**

TABLE 10.55/GSM 04.08: *Synchronization Indication* information element

```
ROT: Report Observed Time Difference (Octet1 bit 3)
0    Mobile Time Difference IE shall not be included
     in the HANDOVER COMPLETE message

1    Mobile Time Difference IE shall be included in
     the HANDOVER COMPLETE message

SI: Synchronization indication (octet 1)
Bit
2 1
0 0  Non-synchronized
0 1  Synchronized
1 0  Pre-synchronised
1 1  Pseudo-synchronised

NCI: Normal cell indication (octet 1, bit 4)
0    Out of range timing advance is ignored
1    Out of range timing advance shall trigger
     a handover failure procedure
```

10.5.2.40 Timing Advance

The purpose of the *Timing Advance* information element is to provide the timing advance value.

The *Timing Advance* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.57/GSM 04.08 and table 10.56/GSM 04.08

The *Timing Advance* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Timing Advance IEI							octet 1
0 spare	0 spare	Timing advance value						octet 2

FIGURE 10.57/GSM 04.08
***Timing Advance* information element**

TABLE 10.56/GSM 04.08: *Timing Advance* information element

Timing advance value (octet 2) The coding of the timing advance value field is the binary representation of the timing advance in bit periods; 1 bit period = 48/13 µs.

10.5.2.41 Time Difference

The purpose of the *Time Difference* information element is to provide information about the synchronization difference between the time bases of two Base Stations. This type of information element is used in relation with the pseudo-synchronization scheme, see GSM 05.10.

The *Time Difference* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.58/GSM 04.08 and table 10.57/GSM 04.08.

The *Time Difference* information element is a type 4 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Time Difference IEI							octet 1
Length of Time Difference contents								octet 2
Time difference value								octet 3

FIGURE 10.58/GSM 04.08
***Time Difference* information element**

TABLE 10.57/GSM 04.08: *Time Difference* information element

Time Difference value (octet 3) The coding of the time difference value field is the binary representation of time difference in half bit periods, modulo 256 half bit periods; 1/2 bit period = 24/13 µs.

10.5.2.42 TMSI

The purpose of the *TMSI* information element is to provide the Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity for paging purposes.

The *TMSI* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.59/GSM 04.08 and table 10.58/GSM 04.08.

The *TMSI* is a type 3 information element with 5 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	TMSI IEI							octet 1
TMSI value								octet 2
TMSI value (contd)								octet 3
TMSI value (contd)								octet 4
TMSI value (contd)								octet 5

FIGURE 10.59/GSM 04.08
***TMSI* information element**

TABLE 10.58/GSM 04.08: *TMSI* information element

TMSI value (octet 2, 3, 4 and 5) Bit 8 of octet 2 is the most significant bit and bit 1 of octet 5 is the least significant bit. The coding of the TMSI is left open for each administration but its length is 4 octets. NOTE: For purposes other than paging the TMSI should be provided using the mobile identity information element.

10.5.2.43 Wait Indication

The purpose of the *Wait Indication* information element is to provide the time the MS shall wait before attempting another channel request.

The *Wait Indication* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.60/GSM 04.08 and table 10.59/GSM 04.08.

The *Wait Indication* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Wait Indication IEI							octet 1
T 3122 timeout value								octet 2

FIGURE 10.60/GSM 04.08
***Wait Indication* information element**

TABLE 10.59/GSM 04.08: *Wait Indication* information element

T3122 timeout value (octet 2) This field is coded as the binary representation of the T3122 timeout value in seconds.

10.5.3 Mobility management information elements.

10.5.3.1 Authentication parameter RAND

The purpose of the *Authentication Parameter RAND* information element is to provide the MS with a non-predictable number to be used to calculate the authentication response signature SRES and the ciphering key Kc.

The *Authentication Parameter RAND* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.61/GSM 04.08 and table 10.61/GSM 04.08.

The *Authentication Parameter RAND* is a type 3 information element with 17 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Authentication parameter RAND IEI								octet 1
RAND value								octet 2
:								
:								
								octet 17

FIGURE 10.61/GSM 04.08
***Authentication Parameter RAND* information element**

TABLE 10.61/GSM 04.08: *Authentication Parameter RAND* information element

RAND value (octet 2, 3,... and 17) The RAND value consists of 128 bits. Bit 8 of octet 2 is the most significant bit while bit 1 of octet 17 is the least significant bit.

10.5.3.2 Authentication parameter SRES

The purpose of the *authentication parameter SRES* information element is to provide the network with the authentication response signature calculated in the MS.

The *Authentication Parameter SRES* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.62/GSM 04.08 and table 10.62/GSM 04.08.

The *Authentication Parameter SRES* is a type 3 information element with 5 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Authentication parameter SRES IEI								octet 1
SRES value								octet 2
:								
:								
								octet 5

FIGURE 10.62/GSM 04.08
***Authentication Parameter SRES* information element**

TABLE 10.62/GSM 04.08: *Authentication Parameter SRES* information element

SRES value (octet 2, 3, 4 and 5) The SRES value consists of 32 bits. Bit 8 of octet 2 is the most significant bit while bit 1 of octet 5 is the least significant bit.

10.5.3.3 CM service type

The purpose of the *CM Service Type* information element is to specify which service is requested from the network.

The *CM Service Type* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.63/GSM 04.08 and table 10.63/GSM 04.08.

The *CM Service Type* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
CM service type IEI				service type				octet 1

FIGURE 10.63/GSM 04.08
***CM Service Type* information element**

TABLE 10.63/GSM 04.08: *CM Service Type* information element

```
Service type (octet 1)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 1  Mobile originating call establishment
         or packet mode connection establishment
0 0 1 0  Emergency call establishment
0 1 0 0  Short message service
1 0 0 0  Supplementary service activation
1 0 0 1  Voice group call establishment
1 0 1 0  Voice broadcast call establishment

All other values are reserved.
```

10.5.3.4 Identity type

The purpose of the *Identity Type* information element is to specify which identity is requested.

The *Identity Type* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.64/GSM 04.08 and table 10.64/GSM 04.08.

The *Identity Type* is a type 1 information element .

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Identity type IEI				0 spare	type of identity			octet 1

FIGURE 10.64/GSM 04.08
***Identity Type* information element**

TABLE 10.64/GSM 04.08: *Identity Type* information element

```
Type of identity (octet 1)
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 1    IMSI
0 1 0    IMEI
0 1 1    IMEISV
1 0 0    TMSI

All other values are reserved.
```

10.5.3.5 Location updating type

The purpose of the *Location Updating Type* information element is to indicate whether a normal updating, a periodic updating or an IMSI attach is wanted. It may also indicate that a follow-on request has been received from the MS CM layer.

The *Location Updating Type* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.65/GSM 04.08 and table 10.65/GSM 04.08.

The *Location Updating Type* is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Location updating type IEI				FOR	0 spare	LUT		octet 1

FIGURE 10.65/GSM 04.08
***Location Updating Type* information element**

TABLE 10.65/GSM 04.08: *Location Updating Type* information element

```
LUT (octet 1)
Bits
2 1
0 0      Normal location updating
0 1      Periodic updating
1 0      IMSI attach
1 1      Reserved

FOR (octet 1)
The Follow-On Request bit (FOR) is coded as
follows:
Bit
4
0        No follow-on request pending
1        Follow-on request pending
```

10.5.3.5a Network Name

The purpose of this information element is to pass a text string to the MS.

The *Network Name* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.65a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.65a/GSM 04.08.

The *Network Name* is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octets. No upper length limit is specified except for that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message (see GSM 04.06).

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Network Name IEI							octet 1
Length of Network Name contents								octet 2
ext 1	coding scheme			Add CI	Number of spare bits in last octet			octet 3
Text String								octet 4
								octet n

Figure 10.65a/GSM 04.08
***Network Name* information element**

TABLE 10.65a/GSM 04.08
***Network Name* information element**

Number of spare bits in last octet (octet 3, bits 1 to 3)

0 0 1 bit 8 is spare and set to "0" in octet n
0 1 0 bits 7 and 8 are spare and set to "0" in octet n
0 1 1 bits 6 to 8(inclusive) are spare and set to "0" in octet n
1 0 0 bits 5 to 8(inc)are spare and set to "0" in octet n
1 0 1 bits 4 to 8(inc)are spare and set to "0" in octet n
1 1 0 bits 3 to 8(inc)are spare and set to "0" in octet n
1 1 1 bits 2 to 8(inc)are spare and set to "0" in octet n
0 0 0 this field carries no information about the number of spare bits in octet n

Add CI (octet 3, bit 4)

0 The MS should not add the letters for the Country's Initials to the text string

1 The MS should add the letters for the Country's Initials and a separator (e.g. a space) to the text string

Coding Scheme (octet 3, bits 5-7)

0 0 0 SMS Cell Broadcast coding scheme defined in GSM 03.38
0 0 1
to reserved
1 1 1

Text String (octet 4 to octet n, inclusive) Encoded according to the Coding Scheme defined by octet 3, bits 5-7

10.5.3.6 Reject cause

The purpose of the *Reject Cause* information element is to indicate the reason why a request from the MS is rejected by the network.

The *Reject Cause* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.66/GSM 04.08 and table 10.66/GSM 04.08.

The *Reject Cause* is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Reject cause IEI								octet 1
reject cause value								octet 2

FIGURE 10.66/GSM 04.08
***Reject Cause* information element**

TABLE 10.66/GSM 04.08: *Reject Cause* information element

```
Reject cause value (octet 2)
     Bits
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0  IMSI unknown in HLR
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1  Illegal MS
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0  IMSI unknown in VLR
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1  IMEI not accepted
0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0  Illegal ME
0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1  PLMN not allowed
0 0 0 0 1 1 0 0  Location Area not allowed
0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1  Roaming not allowed in this
                   location area
0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1  Network failure
0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0  Congestion
0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0  Service option not supported
0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1  Requested service option
                   not subscribed
0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0  Service option temporarily
                   out of order
0 0 1 0 0 1 1 0  Call cannot be identified
0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0  }
      to          }  retry upon entry into a new cell
0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1  }
0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1  Semantically incorrect message
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0  Invalid mandatory information
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1  Message type non-existent
                   or not implemented
0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0  Message type not compatible with
                 the protocol state
0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1  Information element non-existent
                   or not implemented
0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0  Conditional IE error
0 1 1 0 0 1 0 1  Message not compatible with
                   the protocol state
0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1  Protocol error, unspecified

Any other value received by the mobile station
shall be treated as 0010 0010, 'Service option
temporarily out of order'. Any other value received
by the network shall be treated as 0110 1111,
'Protocol error, unspecified'.

NOTE: The  listed reject cause values are defined in
      Annex G.
```

10.5.3.7 Follow-on Proceed

The purpose of the *Follow-on Proceed* information element is to indicate that an MM connection may be established on an existing RR connection.

The *Follow-on Proceed* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.67/GSM 04.08.

The *Follow-on Proceed* is a type 2 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Follow-on Proceed IEI								octet 1

FIGURE 10.67/GSM 04.08
***Follow-on Proceed* information element**

10.5.3.8 Time Zone

The purpose of this information element is to encode the local timezone in steps of 15 minutes.

The *Time Zone* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.67a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.66a/GSM 04.08.

The *Time Zone* is a type 3 information element with a length of 2 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Time Zone IEI							octet 1
Time Zone								octet 2

Figure 10.67a/GSM 04.08
***Time Zone* information element**

TABLE 10.66a/GSM 04.08
***Time Zone* information element**

Time Zone (octet 2, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Time Zone field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536).

10.5.3.9 Time Zone and Time

The purpose of this information element is to encode the local timezone in steps of 15 minutes and to indicate the time at which this information element may have been sent by the network.

The *Time Zone and Time* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.68a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.67a/GSM 04.08.

The *Time Zone and Time* is a type 3 information element with a length of 8 octets.

8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
Time Zone and Time IEI	octet 1
Year	octet 2
Month	octet 3
Day	octet 4
Hour	octet 5
Minute	octet 6
Second	octet 7
Time zone	octet 8

Figure 10.68a/GSM 04.08
***Time Zone and Time* information element**

TABLE 10.67a/GSM 04.08
***Timezone and Time* information element**

Year (octet 2, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Year field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536). Month (octet 3, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Month field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 ETS 300 536). Day (octet 4, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Day field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536). Hour (octet 5, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Hour field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536). Minute (octet 6, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Minute field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536). Second (octet 7, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Second field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536). Time Zone (octet 8, bits 1-8) This field is encoded in exactly the same way as the Time Zone field of the TP-Service-Centre-Time-Stamp in GSM 03.40 (ETS 300 536)

10.5.4 Call control information elements.

10.5.4.1 Extensions of codesets

There is a certain number of possible information element identifier values using the formatting rules described in section 10.5: 128 from the type 3 & 4 information element format and at least 8 from the type 1 & 2 information element format.

One value in the type 1 format is specified for shift operations described below. One other value in both the type 3 & 4 and type 1 format is reserved. This leaves 133 information element identifier values available for assignment.

It is possible to expand this structure to eight codesets of 133 information element identifier values each. One common value in the type 1 format is employed in each codeset to facilitate shifting from one codeset to another. The contents of this shift information element identifies the codeset to be used for the next information element or elements. The codeset in use at any given time is referred to as the "active codeset". By convention, codeset 0 is the initially active codeset.

Two codeset shifting procedures are supported: locking shift and non-locking shift.

Codeset 5 is reserved for information elements reserved for national use.

Codeset 6 is reserved for information elements specific to the local network (either public or private).

Codeset 7 is reserved for user-specific information elements.

The coding rules specified in section 10.5 shall apply for information elements belonging to any active codeset.

Transitions from one active codeset to another (i.e. by means of the locking shift procedure) may only be made to a codeset with a higher numerical value than the codeset being left.

An information element belonging to codeset 5, 6 or 7 may appear together with information elements belonging to codeset 0, by using the non-locking shift procedure (see section 10.5.4.3).

A user or network equipment shall have the capability to recognize a shift information element and to determine the length of the following information element, although the equipment need not be able to interpret and act on the content of the information element. This enables the equipment to determine the start of the subsequent information element.

10.5.4.2 Locking shift procedure

The locking shift procedure employs an information element to indicate the new active codeset. The specified codeset remains active until another locking shift information element is encountered which specifies the use of another codeset. For example, codeset 0 is active at the start of message content analysis. If a locking shift to codeset 5 is encountered, the next information elements will be interpreted according to the information element identifiers assigned in codeset 5, until another shift information element is encountered. This procedure is used only to shift to a higher order codeset than the one being left.

The locking shift is valid only within that message which contains the locking shift information element. At the start of every message content analysis, the active codeset is codeset 0.

The locking shift information element uses the type 1 information element format and coding shown in figure 10.68/GSM 04.08 and table 10.68/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Shift identifier			0	New codeset identification			octet 1

"0" in this position indicates locking shift

FIGURE 10.68/GSM 04.08
Locking shift element

TABLE 10.68/GSM 04.08: Locking shift element

Codeset identification (octet 1):		
bits	3 2 1	
	0 0 0	not applicable
	0 0 1	
to	1 0 0	reserved
	1 0 1	codeset 5: information elements for national use
	1 1 0	codeset 6: information elements specific to the local network (either public or private)
	1 1 1	codeset 7: user-specific information elements

10.5.4.3 Non-locking shift procedure

The non-locking shift procedure provides a temporary shift to the specified lower or higher codeset. The non-locking shift procedure uses a type 1 information element to indicate the codeset to be used to interpret the next information element. After the interpretation of the next information element, the active codeset is again used for interpreting any following information elements. For example, codeset 0 is active at the beginning of message content analysis. If a non-locking shift to codeset 6 is encountered, only the next information element is interpreted according to the information element identifiers assigned in codeset 6. After this information element is interpreted, codeset 0 will again be used to interpret the following information elements. A non-locking shift information element indicating the current codeset shall not be regarded as an error.

A locking shift information element shall not follow directly a non-locking shift information element. If this combination is received, it shall be interpreted as though a locking shift information element had been received.

The non-locking shift information element uses the type 1 information format and coding shown in figure 10.69/GSM 04.08 and table 10.69/GSM 04.08.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Shift identifier			1	Temporary codeset identification			octet 1

"1" in this position indicates non-locking shift

FIGURE 10.69/GSM 04.08
Non-locking shift element

TABLE 10.69/GSM 04.08: Non-locking shift element

```
Codeset identification (octet 1):
bits 3 2 1
     0 0 0     codeset 0 (initially active):
               GSM 04.08 information elements
     0 0 1
to   1 0 0     reserved
     1 0 1     codeset 5: information elements
                          for national use
     1 1 0     codeset 6: information elements
                          specific to the local network
                          (either public or private)
     1 1 1     codeset 7: user-specific information
                          elements.
```

10.5.4.4 Auxiliary states

The purpose of the auxiliary states information element is to describe the current status of the auxiliary states of a call in the call control states "active" and "mobile originating modify". (See TSs GSM 04.83 and 04.84)

The auxiliary states information element is coded as shown in figure 10.70/GSM 04.08, table 10.70/GSM 04.08 and table 10.71/GSM 04.08.

The auxiliary states is a type 4 information element with 3 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Auxiliary states IEI							octet 1
Length of auxiliary states contents								octet 2
1 ext	0	0 spare	0	hold aux. state		MPTY aux. state		octet 3

FIGURE 10.70/GSM 04.08
Auxiliary states information element

TABLE 10.70/GSM 04.08: Auxiliary states information element

```
Hold auxiliary state (octet 3)

Bits
4 3
0 0   idle                      Note 1
0 1   hold request              Note 1
1 0   call held                 Note 1
1 1   retrieve request          Note 1

Note 1: These states are defined in Rec GSM 04.83.
```

TABLE 10.71/GSM 04.08: Auxiliary states information element

```
Multi party auxiliary state (octet 3)
Bits
2 1
0 0   idle                      Note 2
0 1   MPTY request              Note 2
1 0   call in MPTY              Note 2
1 1   split request             Note 2


NOTE 2: These states are defined in Rec GSM 04.84.
```

10.5.4.5 Bearer capability

The purpose of the bearer capability information element is to describe a bearer service. The use of the bearer capability information element in relation to compatibility checking is described in annex B.

The bearer capability information element is coded as shown in figure 10.71/GSM 04.08 and tables 10.72/GSM 04.08 to 10.79/GSM 04.08.

The bearer capability is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octets and a maximum length of 10 octets.

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Bearer capability IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of the bearer capability contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">radio
channel
requirement</td><td>co-
ding
std</td><td>trans
fer
mode</td><td colspan="3">information
transfer
capability</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td>0
co-
ding</td><td colspan="2">0 0
spare</td><td colspan="4">speech version
indication</td><td>octet 3a etc*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="2">structure</td><td>dupl.
mode</td><td>confi
gur.</td><td>NIRR</td><td>esta-
bli.</td><td>octet 4*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
access id.</td><td colspan="2">rate
adaption</td><td colspan="3">signalling
access protocol</td><td>octet 5*</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 1
layer 1 id.</td><td colspan="4">User information
layer 1 protocol</td><td>sync/
async</td><td>octet 6*</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td>numb.
stop
bits</td><td>nego-
tia-
tion</td><td>numb.
data
bits</td><td colspan="4">user rate</td><td>octet 6a*</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">intermed.
rate</td><td>NIC
on TX</td><td>NIC
on RX</td><td colspan="3">Parity</td><td>octet 6b*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">connection
element</td><td colspan="5">modem type</td><td>octet 6c*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="2">1 0
layer 2 id.</td><td colspan="5">User information
layer 2 protocol</td><td>octet 7*</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.71/GSM 04.08
Bearer capability information element

NOTE: The coding of the octets of the bearer capability information element is not conforming to TS CCITT Q.931.

TABLE 10.72/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Radio channel requirement (octet 3), network to MS direction

Bits 6 and 7 are spare bits. The sending side (i.e. the network) shall set bit 7 to value 0 and bit 6 to value 1.

Radio channel requirement (octet 3) MS to network direction

When information transfer capability (octet 3) indicates other values than speech:
Bits
7 6
0 0 reserved
0 1 full rate support only MS
1 0 dual rate support MS/half rate preferred
1 1 dual rate support MS/full rate preferred

When information transfer capability (octet 3) indicates the value speech and no speech version indication is present in octet 3a etc.:
Bits
7 6
0 0 reserved
0 1 full rate support only MS/fullrate speech version 1 supported
1 0 dual rate support MS/half rate speech version 1 preferred, full rate speech version 1 also supported
1 1 dual rate support MS/full rate speech version 1 preferred, half rate speech version 1 also supported

When information transfer capability (octet 3) indicates the value speech and speech version indication(s) is(are) present in octet 3a etc.:
Bits
7 6
0 0 reserved
0 1 full rate support only MS
1 0 dual rate support MS/preference as in octet(s) 3a etc.
1 1 dual rate support MS/preference as in octet(s) 3a etc.

Coding standard (octet 3)
Bit
5
0 GSM standardized coding as described below
1 reserved

Transfer mode (octet 3)
Bit
4
0 circuit mode
1 packet mode

Information transfer capability (octet 3)
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 speech
0 0 1 unrestricted digital information
0 1 0 3.1 kHz audio, ex PLMN
0 1 1 facsimile group 3
1 1 1 reserved, to be used in the network.
The meaning is: alternate speech/facsimile group 3 - starting with speech.

All other values are reserved

TABLE 10.72a/GSM 04.08 Bearer capability information element

Octet(s) 3a etc. MS to network direction

Coding

Bit
7
0 octet used for extension of information transfer capability
1 octet used for other extension of octet 3

When information transfer capability (octet 3) indicates speech and coding (bit 7 in octet 3a etc.) is coded as 0, bits 1 through 6 are coded:

Bits 5 and 6 are spare.

Speech version indication (octet(s) 3a etc.)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 GSM full rate speech version 1
0 0 1 0 GSM full rate speech version 2
0 1 0 0 GSM full rate speech version 3
0 0 0 1 GSM half rate speech version 1
0 0 1 1 GSM half rate speech version 2
0 1 0 1 GSM half rate speech version 3

All other values have the meaning "speech version tbd" and shall be ignored when received.

If octet 3 is extended with speech version indication(s) (octets 3a etc.), all speech versions supported shall be indicated and be included in order of preference (the first octet (3a) has the highest preference and so on).

If information transfer capability (octet 3) indicates speech and coding (bit 7 in octet 3a etc.) is coded as 1, or the information transfer capability does not indicate speech, then the extension octet shall be ignored.

Octet(s) 3a etc. network to MS direction

The octet(s) 3a etc. shall be ignored by the MS.

TABLE 10.73/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Compression (octet 4), network to MS direction:
Bit
7
0 data compression not possible
1 data compression possible

Compression (octet 4), MS to network direction:
Bit
7
0 data compression not allowed
1 data compression allowed

Structure (octet 4)

Bits
6 5

0 0 service data unit integrity
1 1 unstructured

All other values are reserved.

Duplex mode (octet 4)
Bit 4

0 half duplex
1 full duplex

Configuration (octet 4)
Bit
3
0 point-to-point

All other values are reserved.

NIRR (octet 4)
(Negotiation of Intermediate Rate Requested)
Bit
2
0 No meaning is associated with this value.
1 Data up to and including 4.8 kb/s, full rate, non-transparent, 6 kb/s radio interface rate is requested.

Establishment (octet 4)
Bit
1
0 demand

All other values are reserved

TABLE 10.74/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Access identity (octet 5) Bits 7 6 0 0 octet identifier All other values are reserved Rate adaption (octet 5) Bits 5 4 0 0 no rate adaption 0 1 V.110/X.30 rate adaption 1 0 CCITT X.31 flag stuffing All other values are reserved. Signalling access protocol (octet 5) Bits 3 2 1 0 0 1 I.440/450 0 1 0 X.21 0 1 1 X.28 - dedicated PAD, individual NUI 1 0 0 X.28 - dedicated PAD, universal NUI 1 0 1 X.28 - non dedicated PAD 1 1 0 X.32 All other values are reserved.

TABLE 10.75/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Layer 1 identity (octet 6) Bits 7 6 0 1 octet identifier All other values are reserved User information layer 1 protocol (octet 6) Bits 5 4 3 2 0 0 0 0 default layer 1 protocol All other values reserved. Synchronous/asynchronous (octet 6) Bit 1 0 synchronous 1 asynchronous

TABLE 10.76/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Number of Stop Bits (octet 6a)
Bit
7
0 1 bit (This value is also used in the case of synchronous mode)
1 2 bits

Negotiation (octet 6a)
Bit
6
0 in-band negotiation not possible

NOTE: See Rec. V.110 and X.30

All other values are reserved

Number of data bits excluding parity bit if present (octet 6a)
Bit
5
0 7 bits
1 8 bits (this value is also used in the case of bit oriented protocols)

User rate (octet 6a)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 1 0.3 kbit/s Recommendation X.1 and V.110
0 0 1 0 1.2 kbit/s Recommendation X.1 and V.110
0 0 1 1 2.4 kbit/s Recommendation X.1 and V.110
0 1 0 0 4.8 kbit/s Recommendation X.1 and V.110
0 1 0 1 9.6 kbit/s Recommendation X.1 and V.110
0 1 1 1 2.0 kbit/s transparent (non compliance with X.1 and V.110)
0 1 1 1 1.2 kbit/s/75 bit/s Recommendation V.23, (asymmetric) X.1,V.110.

All other values are reserved.

For facsimile group 3 calls the user rate indicates the first and maximum speed the MS is using.

TABLE 10.77/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Octet 6b for V.110/X.30 rate adaption Intermediate rate (octet 6b)

Bits
7 6
0 0 reserved
0 1 reserved
1 0 8 kbit/s
1 1 16 kbit/s

Network independent clock (NIC) on transmission (Tx) (octet 6b) (See Rec. V.110 and X.30)

Bit
5
0 does not require to send data with network independent clock
1 requires to send data with network independent clock

Network independent clock (NIC) on reception (Rx) (octet 6b) (See Rec. V.110 and X.30)

Bit
4
0 cannot accept data with network independent clock (i.e. sender does not support this optional procedure)
1 can accept data with network independent clock (i.e. sender does support this optional procedure)

Parity information (octet 6b)
Bits
3 2 1
0 0 0 odd
0 1 0 even
0 1 1 none
1 0 0 forced to 0
1 0 1 forced to 1

All other values are reserved.

TABLE 10.78/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Connection element (octet 6c)
Bit
7 6
0 0 transparent
0 1 non transparent (RLP)
1 0 both, transparent preferred
1 1 both, non transparent preferred

The requesting end (e.g. the one sending the SETUP message) should use the 4 values depending on its capabilities to support the different modes. The answering party shall only use the codings 00 or 01, based on its own capabilities and the proposed choice if any. If both MS and network support both transparent and non transparent, priority should be given to the MS preference.

Modem type (octet 6c)
Bits
5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 none
0 0 0 0 1 V.21
0 0 0 1 0 V.22
0 0 0 1 1 V.22 bis
0 0 1 0 0 V.23
0 0 1 0 1 V.26 ter
0 0 1 1 0 V.32
0 0 1 1 1 modem for undefined interface
0 1 0 0 0 autobauding type 1

All other values are reserved.

TABLE 10.79/GSM 04.08: Bearer capability information element

Layer 2 identity (octet 7)
Bits
7 6
1 0 octet identifier

All other values are reserved

User information layer 2 protocol (octet 7)

Bits

5 4 3 2 1	
0 0 1 1 0	recommendation X.25, link level
0 1 0 0 0	ISO 6429, codeset 0 (DC1/DC3)
0 1 0 0 1	reserved: was allocated but never used in earlier phases of the protocol
0 1 0 1 0	videotex profile 1
0 1 1 0 0	COPnoFlCt (Character oriented Protocol with no Flow Control mechanism)
0 1 1 0 1	X.75 layer 2 modified (CAPI)

All other values are reserved.

10.5.4.5.1 Static conditions for the bearer capability IE contents

If the information transfer capability field (octet 3) indicates "speech", octets 4, 5, 6, 6a, 6b, 6c, and 7 shall not be included.

If the information transfer capability field (octet 3) indicates "speech", octet 3a etc. shall be included only if the MS supports other speech versions than GSM version 1.

If the information transfer capability field (octet 3) indicates a value different from "speech", octets 4, 5, 6, 6a, 6b, and 6c shall be included.

If the information transfer capability field (octet 3) indicates "facsimile group 3", the modem type field (octet 6c) shall indicate "none".

The modem type field (octet 6c) shall not indicate "autobauding type 1" unless the connection element field (octet 6c) indicates "non transparent".

10.5.4.5a Call Control Capabilities

The purpose of the Call Control Capabilities information element is to identify the call control capabilities of the MS.

The Call Control Capabilities information element is coded as shown in figure 10.71a/GSM 04.08 and table 10.79a/GSM 04.08.

The Call Control Capabilities is a type 4 information element with a length of 3 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Call Control Capabilities IEI							octet 1
Length of Call Control Capabilities contents								octet 2
0	0	0	0 spare	0	0	0	1 DTMF	octet 3

Figure 10.71a/GSM 04.08
Call Control Capabilities information element

TABLE 10.79a/GSM 04.08: Call Control Capabilities

DTMF (octet 3, bit 1)	
0	This value is reserved for earlier versions of the protocol.
1	This value indicates that the mobile station supports DTMF as specified in section 5.5.7 of this specification.

10.5.4.6 Call state

The purpose of the call state information element is to describe the current status of a call, (see section 5.1).

The call state information element is coded as shown in figure 10.72/GSM 04.08 and table 10.80/GSM 04.08.

The call state is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	call state IEI							octet 1
coding standard		call state value (coded in binary)						octet 2

FIGURE 10.72/GSM 04.08
Call state information element

TABLE 10.80/GSM 04.08: Call state information element

Coding standard (octet 2)

Bits 8 7	
0 0	standardized coding as described in CCITT Rec. Q.931
0 1	reserved for other international standards
1 0	national standard
1 1	standard defined for the GSM PLMNS as described below

Coding standards other than "1 1 - Standard defined for the GSM PLMNS" shall not be used if the call state can be represented with the GSM standardized coding.

The mobile station or network need not support any other coding standard than "1 1 - Standard defined for the GSM PLMNS".
If a call state IE indicating a coding standard not supported by the receiver is received, call state "active" shall be assumed.

Call state value (octet 2)

Bits 6 5 4 3 2 1		
0 0 0 0 0 0	UO - null	NO - null
0 0 0 0 1 0	U0.1- MM connection pending	N0.1- MM connection pending
0 0 0 0 0 1	U1 - call initiated	N1 - call initiated
0 0 0 0 1 1	U3 - mobile originating call proceeding	N3 - mobile originating call proceeding
0 0 0 1 0 0	U4 - call delivered	N4 - call delivered
0 0 0 1 1 0	U6 - call present	N6 - call present
0 0 0 1 1 1	U7 - call received	N7 - call received
0 0 1 0 0 0	U8 - connect request	N8 - connect request
0 0 1 0 0 1	U9 - mobile terminating call confirmed	N9 - mobile terminating call confirmed
0 0 1 0 1 0	U10- active	N10- active
0 0 1 0 1 1	U11- disconnect request	
0 0 1 1 0 0	U12- disconnect indication	N12-disconnect indication
0 1 0 0 1 1	U19- release request	N19- release request
0 1 1 0 1 0	U26- mobile originating modify	N26- mobile originating modify
0 1 1 0 1 1	U27- mobile terminating modify	N27- mobile terminating modify
0 1 1 1 0 0		N28- connect indication

10.5.4.7 Called party BCD number

The purpose of the called party BCD number information element is to identify the called party.

The called party BCD number information element is coded as shown in figure 10.73/GSM 04.08 and table 10.81/GSM 04.08.

The called party BCD number is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octets and a maximum length of 43 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Called party BCD number IEI							octet 1
Length of called party BCD number contents								octet 2
1 ext	type of number			Numbering plan identification				octet 3
Number digit 2				Number digit 1				octet 4*
Number digit 4				Number digit 3				octet 5*
2)								:

FIGURE 10.73/GSM 04.08
Called party BCD number information element

NOTE 1: The number digit(s) in octet 4 precedes the digit(s) in octet 5 etc. The number digit which would be entered first is located in octet 4, bits 1 to 4.

NOTE 2: If the called party BCD number contains an odd number of digits, bits 5 to 8 of the last octet shall be filled with an end mark coded as "1111".

Since the information element must contain the complete called party BCD number there is no need for an additional complete indication.

TABLE 10.81/GSM 04.08: Called party BCD number

```
Type of number (octet 3)  (Note 1)

Bits
7 6 5
0 0 0    unknown (Note 2)
0 0 1    international number (Note 3, Note 5)
0 1 0    national number (Note 3)
0 1 1    network specific number (Note 4)
1 0 0    dedicated access, short code
1 0 1    reserved
1 1 0    reserved
1 1 1    reserved for extension
```

NOTE 1: For the definition of "number" see CCITT Recommendation I.330 and GSM 03.03.

NOTE 2: The type of number "unknown" is used when the user or the network has no knowledge of the type of number, e.g. international number, national number, etc. In this case the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan, e.g. prefix or escape digits might be present.

NOTE 3: Prefix or escape digits shall not be included.

NOTE 4: The type of number "network specific number" is used to indicate administration/service number specific to the serving network, e.g. used to access an operator.

NOTE 5: The international format shall be accepted by the MSC when the call is destined to a destination in the same country as the MSC.

TABLE 10.81/GSM 04.08: Called party BCD number (continued)

```
Numbering plan identification (octet 3)

Number plan (applies for type of number = 000,
001, 010 and 100)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0  unknown
0 0 0 1  ISDN/telephony numbering plan
         (Rec. E.164/E.163)
0 0 1 1  data numbering plan (Recommendation X.121)
0 1 0 0  telex numbering plan (Recommendation F.69)
1 0 0 0  national numbering plan
1 0 0 1  private numbering plan
1 1 1 1  reserved for extension

All other values are reserved.
```

When an MS is the recipient of number information from the network, any incompatibility between the number digits and the number plan identification shall be ignored and a STATUS message shall not be sent to the network.

In the case of numbering plan "unknown", the number digits field is organized according to the network dialling plan; e.g. prefix or escape digits might be present.

TABLE 10.81/GSM 04.08: Called party BCD number (continued)

```
Number digits (octets 4, etc.)
Bits            Number digit value
4 3 2 1  or
8 7 6 5
0 0 0 0         0
0 0 0 1         1
0 0 1 0         2
0 0 1 1         3
0 1 0 0         4
0 1 0 1         5
0 1 1 0         6
0 1 1 1         7
1 0 0 0         8
1 0 0 1         9

1 0 1 0         *
1 0 1 1         #
1 1 0 0         a
1 1 0 1         b
1 1 1 0         c
1 1 1 1         used as an endmark in the case of an odd
           number of number digits
```

10.5.4.8 Called party subaddress

The purpose of the Called party subaddress is to identify the subaddress of the called party of a call. For the definition of a subaddress see Rec. CCITT I.330.

The Called party subaddress information element is coded as shown in figure 10.74/GSM 04.08 and Table10.82/GSM 04.08

The called party subaddress is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets and a maximum length of 23 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Called party Subaddress IEI							octet 1
Length of called party subaddress contents								octet 2
1 ext	type of subaddress			odd/ev Indica	0	0 spare	0	octet 3*
Subaddress information								octet 4*
:				:			:	etc.

FIGURE 10.74/GSM 04.08
Called party subaddress

TABLE 10.82/GSM 04.08: Called party subaddress

```
Type of subaddress (octet 3)

Bits
7 6 5
0 0 0    NSAP (X.213/ISO 8348 AD2)
0 1 0    User specified
All other values are reserved

Odd/even indicator (octet 3)
Bit
4
0        even number of address signals
1        odd number of address signals

NOTE: The odd/even indicator is used when the type of
subaddress is "user specified" and the coding is BCD.

Subaddress information (octet 4, etc...)
The NSAP X.213/ISO8348AD2 address shall be formatted
as specified by octet 4 which contains the Authority
and Format Identifier (AFI). The encoding is made ac-
cording to the "preferred binary encoding" as defined
in X.213/ISO8348AD2. For the definition of this type
of subaddress, see Rec. CCITT I.334.


A coding example is given in ANNEX A.

For User-specific subaddress, this field is encoded
according to the user specification, subject to a
maximum length of 20 octets. When interworking with
X.25 networks BCD coding should be applied.

NOTE: It is recommended that users apply NSAP subad-
dress type since this subaddress type allows the use
of decimal, binary and IA5 characters in a standar-
dised manner.
```

10.5.4.9 Calling party BCD number

The purpose of the calling party BCD number information element is to identify the origin of a call.

The calling party BCD number information element is coded as shown in figure 10.75/GSM 04.08 and table 10.83/GSM 04.08.

The calling party BCD number is a type 4 information element. In the network to MS direction it has a minimum length of 3 octets and a maximum length of 14 octets. (This information element is not used in the MS to network direction.)

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Calling party BCD number IEI							octet 1
Length of calling party BCD number contents								octet 2
0/1 ext	type of number			Numbering plan identification				octet 3
1 ext	presentat. indicator		0	0 spare	0	screening indicator		octet 3a*
Number digit 2				Number digit 1				octet 4*
Number digit 4				Number digit 3				octet 5*
								:

FIGURE 10.75/GSM 04.08
Calling party BCD number information element

The contents of octets 3, 4, etc. are coded as shown in table 10.81. The coding of octet 3a is defined in table 10.83 below.

If the calling party BCD number contains an odd number of digits, bits 5 to 8 of the last octet shall be filled with an end mark coded as "1111".

TABLE 10.83/GSM 04.08: Calling party BCD number

Presentation indicator (octet 3a)	
Bits	
7 6	
0 0	Presentation allowed
0 1	Presentation restricted
1 0	Number not available due to interworking
1 1	Reserved
If octet 3a is omitted the value "00 - Presentation allowed" is assumed.	
Screening indicator (octet 3a)	
Bits	
2 1	
0 0	User-provided, not screened
0 1	User-provided, verified and passed
1 0	User-provided, verified and failed
1 1	Network provided
If octet 3a is omitted the value "0 0 - User provided, not screened" is assumed.	

10.5.4.10 Calling party subaddress

The purpose of the Calling party subaddress is to identify a subaddress associated with the origin of a call. For the definition of a subaddress see Rec. CCITT I.330.

The Calling party subaddress information element is coded as shown in figure 10.76/GSM 04.08 and table 10.84/GSM 04.08

The calling party subaddress is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets and a maximum length of 23 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Calling party Subaddress IEI							octet 1
Length of calling party subaddress contents								octet 2
1 ext	type of subaddress			odd/ev Indica	0	0	0	octet 3*
Subaddress information								octet 4*
:								etc.

FIGURE 10.76/GSM 04.08
Calling party subaddress

TABLE 10.84/GSM 04.08: Calling party subaddress

```
Type of subaddress (octet 3)

Bits
7 6 5
0 0 0    NSAP (X.213/ISO 8348 AD2)
0 1 0    User specified
All other values are reserved

Odd/even indicator (octet 3)
Bit
4
0        even number of address signals
1        odd number of address signals

The odd/even indicator is used when the type of
subaddress is "user specified" and the coding is BCD

Subaddress information (octet 4, etc...)
The NSAP X.213/ISO8348AD2 address shall be formatted
as specified by octet 4 which contains the Authority
and Format Identifier (AFI). The encoding is made ac-
cording to the "preferred binary encoding" as defined
in X.213/ISO8348AD2. For the definition of this type
of this type of subaddress, see Rec. CCITT I.332.


A coding example is given in ANNEX A.

For User-specific subaddress, this field is encoded
according to the user specification, subject to a
maximum length of 20 octets. When interworking with
X.25 networks BCD coding should be applied.

NOTE: It is recommended that users apply NSAP subad-
dress type since this subaddress type allows the use
of decimal, binary and IA5 characters in a standar-
dised manner.
```

10.5.4.11 Cause

The purpose of the cause information element is to describe the reason for generating certain messages, to provide diagnostic information in the event of procedural errors and to indicate the location of the cause originator.

The cause information element is coded as shown in figure 10.77/GSM 04.08 and tables 10.85 and 10.86/GSM 04.08.

The cause is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 4 octets and a maximum length of 32 octets.

The cause information element may be repeated in a message.

<table>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="7">Cause IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Length of cause contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0/1
ext</td><td colspan="2">coding
standard</td><td>0
spare</td><td colspan="4">location</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">recommendation</td><td>octet 3a*</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
ext</td><td colspan="7">cause value</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">diagnostic(s) if any
:
:</td><td>octet 5*

octet N*</td></tr>
</table>

FIGURE 10.77/GSM 04.08
Cause information element

If the default value applies for the recommendation field, octet 3a shall be omitted.

TABLE 10.85/GSM 04.08: Cause information element

```
Coding standard (octet 3)
Bits
7 6
0 0      Coding as specified in CCITT Rec. Q.931
0 1      Reserved for other international standards
1 0      National standard
1 1      Standard defined for the GSM PLMNS as described
         below and in table 10.86/GSM 04.08

Coding standards other than  "1 1 - Standard defined for
the GSM PLMNS" shall not be used if the cause can be
represented with the GSM standardized coding.

The mobile station or network need not support any other
coding standard than "1 1 - Standard defined for the GSM
PLMNS".
If a cause IE indicating a coding standard not supported by
the receiver is received, cause "interworking, unspecified"
shall be assumed.

Location (octet 3)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0        user
0 0 0 1        private network serving the local user
0 0 1 0        public network serving the local user
0 0 1 1        transit network
0 1 0 0        public network serving the remote user
0 1 0 1        private network serving the remote user
0 1 1 1        international network
1 0 1 0        network beyond interworking point

All other values are reserved.

Recommendation (octet 3a)
Octet 3a shall not be included if the coding standard is
coded as "1 1 - Standard defined for GSM PLMNS".


If the coding standard is different from "1 1 - Standard
defined for GSM PLMNS", the coding of octet 3a, if included,
and octets 4 to N is according to that coding standard.
```

TABLE 10.85/GSM 04.08: Cause information element (continued)

Cause value (octet 4) The cause value is divided in two fields: a class (bits 5 through 7) and a value within the class (bits 1 through 4). The class indicates the general nature of the event. Class (000): normal event Class (001): normal event Class (010): resource unavailable Class (011): service or option not available Class (100): service or option not implemented Class (101): invalid message (e.g. parameter out of range) Class (110): protocol error (e.g. unknown message) Class (111): interworking The cause values are listed in Table 10.86/GSM 04.08 below and defined in Annex H. Diagnostic(s) (octet 5) Diagnostic information is not available for every cause, see Table 10.86/GSM 04.08 below. When available, the diagnostic(s) is coded in the same way as the corresponding information element in section 10. The inclusion of diagnostic(s) is optional.

TABLE 10.86/GSM 04.08: Cause information element values

Cause value Class 7 6 5	Value 4 3 2 1	Cause num.	Cause	Diag- nostic	Remarks
0 0 0	0 0 0 1	1.	Unassigned (unallocated) number	Note 9	
0 0 0	0 0 1 1	3.	No route to destination	Note 9	
0 0 0	0 1 1 0	6.	Channel unacceptable	-	
0 0 0	1 0 0 0	8.	Operator determined barring	-	
0 0 1	0 0 0 0	16.	Normal call clearing	Note 9	
0 0 1	0 0 0 1	17.	User busy	-	
0 0 1	0 0 1 0	18.	No user responding	-	
0 0 1	0 0 1 1	19.	User alerting, no answer	-	
0 0 1	0 1 0 1	21.	Call rejected	Note 9 - user supplied diagnostic (note 4)	
0 0 1	0 1 1 0	22.	Number changed	New destination (note 5)	
0 0 1	1 0 1 0	26.	Non selected user clearing	-	
0 0 1	1 0 1 1	27.	Destination out of order	-	
0 0 1	1 1 0 0	28.	Invalid number format (incomplete number)	-	
0 0 1	1 1 0 1	29.	Facility rejected	Note 1	
0 0 1	1 1 1 0	30.	Response to STATUS ENQUIRY	-	
0 0 1	1 1 1 1	31.	Normal, unspecified	-	
0 1 0	0 0 1 0	34.	No circuit/channel available	-	
0 1 0	0 1 1 0	38.	Network out of order	-	
0 1 0	1 0 0 1	41.	Temporary failure	-	
0 1 0	1 0 1 0	42.	Switching equipment congestion	-	
0 1 0	1 0 1 1	43.	Access information discarded	Discarded information element identifiers (note 6)	
0 1 0	1 1 0 0	44.	requested circuit/channel not available	-	
0 1 0	1 1 1 1	47.	Resources unavailable, unspecified	-	
0 1 1	0 0 0 1	49.	Quality of service unavailable	Note 9	
0 1 1	0 0 1 0	50.	Requested facility not subscribed	Note 1	
0 1 1	0 1 1 1	55.	Incoming calls barred within the CUG	Note 1	
0 1 1	1 0 0 1	57.	Bearer capability not authorized	Note 3	
0 1 1	1 0 1 0	58.	Bearer capability not presently available	Note 3	
0 1 1	1 1 1 1	63.	Service or option not available, unspecified	-	
1 0 0	0 0 0 1	65.	Bearer service not implemented	Note 3	

TABLE 10.86/GSM 04.08: Cause information element values (continued)

Cause value Class	Value	Cause number	Cause	Diagnostic	Remarks
7 6 5	4 3 2 1				
1 0 0	0 1 0 0	68.	ACM equal to or greater than ACMmax		
1 0 0	0 1 0 1	69.	Requested facility not implemented	Note 1	
1 0 0	0 1 1 0	70.	Only restricted digital information bearer capability is available		
1 0 0	1 1 1 1	79.	Service or option not implemented, unspecified	-	
1 0 1	0 0 0 1	81.	Invalid transaction identifier value	-	
1 0 1	0 1 1 1	87.	User not member of CUG	Note 1	
1 0 1	1 0 0 0	88.	Incompatible destination	Incompatible parameter (Note 2)	
1 0 1	1 0 1 1	91.	Invalid transit network selection	-	
1 0 1	1 1 1 1	95.	Semantically incorrect message	- -	
1 1 0	0 0 0 0	96.	Invalid mandatory information	Information element identifier(s)	
1 1 0	0 0 0 1	97.	Message type non-existent or not implemented	Message type	
1 1 0	0 0 1 0	98.	Message type not compatible with protocol state	Message type	
1 1 0	0 0 1 1	99.	Information element non-existent or not implemented	Information element identifier(s) (notes 6,7)	
1 1 0	0 1 0 0	100.	Conditional IE error	Information element identifier(s) (note 6)	
1 1 0	0 1 0 1	101.	Message not compatible with protocol state	Message type	
1 1 0	0 1 1 0	102.	Recovery on timer expiry	Timer number (note 8)	
1 1 0	1 1 1 1	111.	Protocol error, unspecified	-	
1 1 1	1 1 1 1	127.	Interworking, unspecified	-	

All other values in the range 0 to 31 shall be treated as cause 31.
All other values in the range 32 to 47 shall be treated as cause 47.
All other values in the range 48 to 63 shall be treated as cause 63.
All other values in the range 64 to 79 shall be treated as cause 79.
All other values in the range 80 to 95 shall be treated as cause 95.
All other values in the range 96 to 111 shall be treated as cause 111.
All other values in the range 112 to 127 shall be treated as cause 127.

NOTE 1: Diagnostics for supplementary services are handled as follows:

octet 5, bit 8:

This is an extension bit as defined in the preliminary part of section 10.5. In this version of this protocol, this bit shall be set to 1. If it is set to zero, the contents of the following octets shall be ignored.

octet 5, bit 7-1:

0000001 - Outgoing calls barred within CUG
0000010 - No CUG selected
0000011 - Unknown CUG index
0000100 - CUG index incompatible with requested basic service
0000101 - CUG call failure, unspecified
0000110 - CLIR not subscribed

All other values shall be ignored.

NOTE 2: The incompatible parameter is composed of the incompatible information element identifier.

NOTE 3: The format of the diagnostic field for cause numbers 57, 58 and 65 is as shown in figure 10.71/GSM 04.08 and tables 10.7248a/GSM 04.08 to 10.79/GSM 04.08.

NOTE 4: The user supplied diagnostics field is encoded according to the user specification, subject to the maximum length of the cause information element. The coding of user supplied diagnostics should be made in such a way that it does not conflict with the coding described in note 9 below.

NOTE 5: The new destination is formatted as the called party BCD number information element, including information element identifier.

NOTE 6: Locking and non-locking shift procedures described in sections 10.5.4.2 and 3 are applied. In principle, information element identifiers are ordered in the same order as the information elements in the received message.

NOTE 7: When only the locking shift information element is included and no information element identifier follows, it means that the codeset in the locking shift itself is not implemented.

NOTE 8: The timer number is coded in IA5 characters, e.g., T308 is coded as "3" "0" "8". The following coding is used in each octet:

bit 8 : spare "0"
bits 7-1 : IA5 character

Octet 5 carries "3", octet 5a carries "0", etc.

NOTE 9: The following coding is used for octet 5:

bit 8 : 1
bits 7-3 : 00000
bits 2-1 : condition as follows:
00 - unknown
01 - permanent
10 - transient

10.5.4.11a CLIR suppression

The CLIR suppression information element may be sent by the MS to the network in the SETUP message. The use is defined in GSM 04.81.

The CLIR suppression information element is coded as shown in figure 10.78/GSM 04.08.

The CLIR suppression is a type 2 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	CLIR suppression IEI							octet 1

FIGURE 10.78/GSM 04.08
CLIR suppression information element

10.5.4.11b CLIR invocation

The CLIR invocation information element may be sent by the MS to the network in the SETUP message. The use is defined in GSM 04.81.

The CLIR invocation information element is coded as shown in figure 10.78a/GSM 04.08.

The CLIR invocation is a type 2 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	CLIR invocation IEI							octet 1

FIGURE 10.78a/GSM 04.08
CLIR invocation information element

10.5.4.12 Congestion level

The purpose of the congestion level information element is to describe the congestion status of the call.

The congestion level information element is coded as shown in figure 10.79/GSM 04.08 and table 10.87/GSM 04.08.

The congestion level is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Congestion level IEI							octet 1

FIGURE 10.79/GSM 04.08
Congestion level information element

TABLE 10.87/GSM 04.08: Congestion level information element

Congestion level (octet 1)	
bits	
4 3 2 1	
0 0 0 0	receiver ready
1 1 1 1	receiver not ready
All other values are reserved.	

10.5.4.13 Connected number

The purpose of the connected number information element is to identify the connected party of a call.

The connected number information element is coded as shown in figure 10.80/GSM 04.08

The connected number is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octets and a maximum length of 14 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Connected number IEI							octet 1
Length of connected number contents								octet 2
0/1 ext	Type of number			Number plan identification				octet 3 note 1)
1 ext	Presentation indicator		0	0	0	Screening indicator		octet 3a* note 1)
			Spare					
Number digit 2				Number digit 1				octet 4* note 1)
Number digit 4				Number digit 3				octet 5* note 1)
note 2)								:
								:

Figure 10.80/GSM 04.08

The contents of octets 3,4,5, etc. ... are coded as shown in table 10.81/GSM 04.08. The coding of octet 3a is defined in table 10.83/GSM 04.08.

If the connected number contains an odd number of digits, bits 5 to 8 of the last octet shall be filled with the end mark coded as "1111".

10.5.4.14 Connected subaddress

The purpose of the connected subaddress information element is to identify a subaddress associated with the connected party of a call.

The connected subaddress information element is coded as shown in figure 10.81/GSM 04.08

The connected subaddress is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets and a maximum length of 23 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Connected subaddress IEI							octet 1
Length of connected subaddress contents								octet 2
1 ext	Type of subaddress			odd/even indicator	0	0 Spare	0	octet 3*
Subaddress information								octet 4* : etc.

Figure 10.81/GSM 04.08

The coding for Type of subaddress, odd/even indicator, and subaddress information is in table 10.82/GSM 04.08.

10.5.4.15 Facility

The purpose of the facility information element is to transport supplementary service related information. Within the scope of GSM 04.08 the content of the Facility information field is an array of octets. The usage of this transportation mechanism is defined in GSM 04.80.

The facility information element is coded as shown in figure 10.82/GSM 04.08

The facility is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets. No upper length limit is specified except for that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message (see GSM 04.06).

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Facility IEI							octet 1
Length of facility contents								octet 2
Facility information (see GSM 04.80)								octet 3-?*

Figure 10.82/GSM 04.08

10.5.4.16 High layer compatibility

The purpose of the high layer compatibility information element is to provide a means which should be used by the remote user for compatibility checking. See annex B.

The high layer compatibility information element is coded as shown in figure 10.83/GSM 04.08 and table 10.88/GSM 04.08.

The high layer compatibility is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets and a maximum length of 5 octets.

NOTE: The high layer compatibility information element is transported transparently by a PLMN between a call originating entity (e.g. a calling user) and the addressed entity (e.g. a remote user or a high layer function network node addressed by the call originating entity). However, if explicitly requested by the user (at subscription time), a network which provides some capabilities to realize teleservices may interpret this information to provide a particular service.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	High layer compatibility IEI							octet 1
Length of high layer compatibility contents								octet 2
1 ext	coding standard		interpretation			presentat. method of protocol profile		octet 3*
0/1 ext	High layer characteristics identification							octet 4*
1 ext	Extended high layer characteristics identification							octet 4a* (note)

FIGURE 10.83/GSM 04.08
High layer compatibility information element

If the value part of the IE is empty, the IE indicates "not applicable".

NOTE: Octet 4a may be present e.g. when octet 4 indicates Maintenance or Management.

TABLE 10.88/GSM 04.08: High layer compatibility information element

Coding standard (octet 3) see CCITT Recommendation Q.931. Interpretation (octet 3) see CCITT Recommendation Q.931. Presentation method of protocol profile (octet 3) see CCITT Recommendation Q.931. High layer characteristics identification (octet 4) see CCITT Recommendation Q.931. Extended high layer characteristics identification (octet 4a) see CCITT Recommendation Q.931.

10.5.4.16.1 Static conditions for the high layer compatibility IE contents

Either the value part of the IE is empty, or it contains at least octet 3 and 4.

10.5.4.17 Keypad facility

The purpose of the keypad facility information element is to convey IA5 characters, e.g. entered by means of a terminal keypad. (Note).

The keypad facility information element is coded as shown in figure 10.84/GSM 04.08.

The keypad facility is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Keypad facility IEI							octet 1
Spare 0	Keypad information (IA5 character)							octet 2

FIGURE 10.84/GSM 04.08
Keypad facility information element

NOTE: In the GSM system this information element is only used to transfer one DTMF digit (0, 1, ... , 9, A, B, C, D, *, #) as one IA5 character.

10.5.4.18 Low layer compatibility

The purpose of the low layer compatibility information element is to provide a means which should be used for compatibility checking by an addressed entity (e.g., a remote user or an interworking unit or a high layer function network node addressed by the calling user). The low layer compatibility information element is transferred transparently by a PLMN between the call originating entity (e.g. the calling user) and the addressed entity.

Except for the information element identifier, the low layer compatibility information element is coded as in ETS 300 102-1.

The low layer compatibility is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets and a maximum length of 15 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Low layer compatibility IEI							octet 1
Length of the low layer compatibility contents								octet 2
The following octets are coded as described in ETS 300 102-1								octet 3* : :

FIGURE 10.85/GSM 04.08
Low layer compatibility information element

If the value part of the IE is empty, the IE indicates "not applicable".

10.5.4.19 More data

The more data information element is sent by the MS to the network or to the network to the MS in a USER INFORMATION message. The presence of the more data information element indicates to the destination remote user/MS that another USER INFORMATION message will follow containing information belonging to the same block.

The use of the more data information element is not supervised by the network.

The more data information element is coded as shown in figure 10.86/GSM 04.08.

The more data is a type 2 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	More data IEI							octet 1

FIGURE 10.86/GSM 04.08
More data information element

10.5.4.20 Notification indicator

The purpose of the notification indicator information element is to indicate information pertaining to a call.

The notification indicator element is coded as shown in figure 10.87/GSM 04.08 and table 10.89/ GSM 04.08.

The notification indicator is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Notification indicator IEI							octet 1
1 ext	Notification description							octet 2

FIGURE 10.87/GSM 04.08
Notification indicator information element

TABLE 10.89/GSM 04.08: Notification indicator information element

```
Notification description (octet 2)
Bits
7 6 5 4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0  User suspended
0 0 0 0 0 0 1  User resumed
0 0 0 0 0 1 0  Bearer change

All other values are reserved.
```

10.5.4.21 Progress indicator

The purpose of the progress indicator information element is to describe an event which has occurred during the life of a call.

The progress indicator information element is coded as shown in figure 10.88/GSM 04.08 and table 10.90/GSM 04.08.

The progress indicator is a type 4 information element with a length of 4 octets.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Progress indicator IEI							octet 1
Length of progress indicator contents								octet 2
1 ext	coding standard		0 spare	location				octet 3
1 ext	progress description							octet 4

FIGURE 10.88/GSM 04.08
Progress indicator information element

TABLE 10.90/GSM 04.08: Progress indicator information element

```
Coding standard (octet 3)
Bits
7 6
0 0      Standardized coding, as described in CCITT Rec.
         Q.931
0 1      Reserved for other international standards
1 0      National standard
1 1      Standard defined for the GSM PLMNS as described
         below

Coding standards other than "1 1 - Standard defined for
the GSM PLMNS" shall not be used if the progress
description can be represented with the GSM standardized
coding.

The mobile station or network need not support any other
coding standard than "1 1 - Standard defined for the GSM
PLMNS".
If a progress indicator IE indicating a coding standard
not supported by the receiver is received, progress
description "Unspecific" shall be  assumed.

Location (octet 3)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 0  User
0 0 0 1  Private network serving the local user
0 0 1 0  Public network serving the local user
0 1 0 0  Public network serving the remote user
0 1 0 1  Private network serving the remote user
1 0 1 0  Network beyond interworking point

All other values are reserved.

Note:    Depending on the location of the users, the local
         public network and remote public network may be
         the same network.

Progress description (octet 4)
Bits
7 6 5 4 3 2 1   No.
0 0 0 0 0 0 1   1.    Call is not end-to-end PLMN/ISDN,
                      further call progress information may
                      be available in-band
0 0 0 0 0 1 0   2.    Destination address in non-PLMN/ISDN
0 0 0 0 0 1 1   3.    Origination address in non-PLMN/ISDN
0 0 0 0 1 0 0   4.    Call has returned to the PLMN/ISDN
0 0 0 1 0 0 0   8.    In-band information or appropriate
                      pattern now available
0 1 0 0 0 0 0  32.    Call is end-to-end PLMN/ISDN
1 0 0 0 0 0 0  64.    Queueing
All other values      Unspecific
```

10.5.4.22 Repeat indicator

The purpose of the repeat indicator information element is to indicate how the associated repeated information elements shall be interpreted, when included in a message. The repeat indicator information element is included immediately before the first occurrence of the associated information element which will be repeated in a message. "Mode 1" refers to the first occurrence of that information element, "mode 2" refers to the second occurrence of that information element in the same message.

The repeat indicator information element is coded as shown in figure 10.89/GSM 04.08 and table 10.91/GSM 04.08.

The repeat indicator is a type 1 information element.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	repeat indicator IEI			repeat indication				octet 1

FIGURE 10.89/GSM 04.08
Repeat indicator information element

TABLE 10.91/GSM 04.08: Repeat indicator information element

```
Repeat indication (octet 1)
Bits
4 3 2 1
0 0 0 1  Circular for successive selection
         "mode 1 alternate mode 2"
0 0 1 1  Sequential for successive selection
         "mode 1 and then mode 2"

All other values are reserved.
```

10.5.4.22a Reverse call setup direction

This information element may be included in a MODIFY and MODIFY COMPLETE message to indicate that the direction of the data call to which the MODIFY message relates is opposite to the call setup direction.

The *reverse call setup direction* information element is coded as shown in figure 10.89a/GSM 04.08.

The *reverse call setup direction* is a type 2 information element

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
reverse call setup direction IEI								octet 1

FIGURE 10.89a/GSM 04.08
Reverse call setup direction **information element**

10.5.4.23 Signal

The purpose of the signal information element is to allow the network to convey information to a user regarding tones and alerting signals (see sections 5.2.2.3.2 and 7.3.3.).

The signal information element is coded as shown in figure 10.90/GSM 04.08 and table 10.92/GSM 04.08.

The signal is a type 3 information element with 2 octets length.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	Signal IEI							octet 1
Signal value								octet 2

FIGURE 10.90/GSM 04.08
Signal information element

TABLE 10.92/GSM 04.08: Signal information element

```
Signal value (octet 2)
Bits
8 7 6 5  4 3 2 1

0 0 0 0  0 0 0 0    dial tone on
0 0 0 0  0 0 0 1    ring back tone on
0 0 0 0  0 0 1 0    intercept tone on
0 0 0 0  0 0 1 1    network congestion tone on
0 0 0 0  0 1 0 0    busy tone on
0 0 0 0  0 1 0 1    confirm tone on
0 0 0 0  0 1 1 0    answer tone on
0 0 0 0  0 1 1 1    call waiting tone on
0 0 0 0  1 0 0 0    off-hook warning tone on
0 0 1 1  1 1 1 1    tones off
0 1 0 0  1 1 1 1    alerting off

All other values are reserved.
```

10.5.4.24 SS Version Indicator

The purpose of the SS version indicator information element is to aid the decoding of the Facility information element as described in GSM 04.10. Within the scope of GSM 04.08 the contents of the SS Version information field is an array of one or more octets. The usage of the SS version information field is defined in GSM 04.80.

The SS version indicator information element is coded as shown in figure 10.91/GSM 04.08

The SS version indicator is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 2 octets. No upper length limit is specified except for that given by the maximum number of octets in a L3 message (see GSM 04.06).

8	7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
	SS version indicator IEI	octet 1
Length of SS version indicator contents		octet 2
SS version information (see GSM 04.80)		octet 3*
		: *
		: *

Figure 10.91/GSM 04.08

NOTE: Usually, this information element has only one octet of content.

10.5.4.25 User-user

The purpose of the user-user information element is to convey information between the MS and the remote ISDN user.

The user-user information element is coded as shown in figure 10.92/GSM 04.08 and table 10.93/ GSM 04.08. There are no restrictions on the content of the user-user information field.

The user-user is a type 4 information element with a minimum length of 3 octets and a maximum length of either 35 or 131 octets. In the SETUP, ALERTING, CONNECT, DISCONNECT, RELEASE and RELEASE COMPLETE messages, the user-user information element has a maximum size of 35 octets in a GSM PLMN. In USER INFORMATION messages the user-user information element has a maximum size of 131 octets in a GSM PLMN.

In other networks than GSM PLMNs the maximum size of the user-user information element is 35 or 131 octets in the messages mentioned above. The evolution to a single maximum value is the long term objective; the exact maximum value is the subject of further study.

NOTE: The user-user information element is transported transparently through a GSM PLMN.

8	7 6 5 4 3 2 1	
	User-user IEI	octet 1
Length of user-user contents		octet 2
User-user protocol discriminator		octet 3
User-user information		octet 4*
:		
		octet N*

FIGURE 10.92/GSM 04.08
User-user information element

TABLE 10.93/GSM 04.08: User-user information element

```
 User-user protocol discriminator (octet 3)
       Bits
 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0    User specific protocol (Note 1)
 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1    OSI high layer protocols
 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0    X.244 (Note 2)
 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1    Reserved for system management
                    convergence function
 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0    IA5 characters (Note 3)
 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1    Rec.V.120 rate adaption
 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0    Q.931 (I.451) user-network call control
                    messages

 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0    Reserved for other network layer or
 through            layer 3 protocols including Rec.X.25
 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1    (Note 4)

 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0
 through            National use
 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1

 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0    Reserved for other network
 through            layer or layer 3 protocols
 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0    including Rec.X.25 (Note 4)

 All other values are reserved

Note 1: The user information is structured according to user
        needs.

Note 2: The  user  information is  structured  according  to
        Rec.X.244 which specifies the structure of X.25 call
        user data.

Note 3: The user information consists of IA5 characters.

Note 4: These  values  are reserved  to  discriminate  these
        protocol  discriminators from the first octet  of  a
        X.25 packet including general format identifier.
```

11 List of system parameters

The description of timers in the following table should be considered a brief summary. The precise details are found in sections 3 to 6, which should be considered the definitive descriptions.

11.1 Timers and counters for radio resource management

11.1.1 Timers on the MS side

T3122: This timer is used during random access, after the receipt of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGN REJECT message.

Its value is given by the network in the IMMEDIATE ASSIGN REJECT message.

T3124: This timer is used in the seizure procedure during a hand-over, when the two cells are not synchronized.

Its purpose is to detect the lack of answer from the network to the special signal.

Its value is set to 675 ms if the channel type of the channel allocated in the HANDOVER COMMAND is an SDCCH (+ SACCH); otherwise its value is set to 320 ms.

T3126: This timer is started either

after sending the maximum allowed number of CHANNEL REQUEST messages during an immediate assignment procedure.

or

on receipt of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT REJECT message,

whichever occurs first.

It is stopped at receipt of an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message, or an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT EXTENDED message.

At its expiry, the immediate assignment procedure is aborted.

The minimum value of this timer is equal to the time taken by T+2S slots of the MS's RACH. S and T are defined in section 3.3.1.2. The maximum value of this timer is 5 seconds.

T3128: This timer is started after the MS has the uplink investigation procedure and the uplink is busy.

It is stopped at receipt of the first *UPLINK FREE* message.

At its expiry, the uplink investigation procedure is aborted.

The value of this timer is set to 1 second.

T3130: This timer is started after sending the first *CHANNEL REQUEST* message during a VGCS uplink access procedure.

It is stopped at receipt of a *VGCS ACCESS GRANT* message.

At its expiry, the uplink access procedure is aborted.

The value of this timer is set to 5 seconds.

T3110: This timer is used to delay the channel deactivation after the receipt of a (full) CHANNEL RELEASE. Its purpose is to let some time for disconnection of the main signalling link.

Its value is set to such that the DISC frame is sent twice in case of no answer from the network. (It should be chosen to obtain a good probability of normal termination (i.e. no time out of T3109) of the channel release procedure.)

11.1.2 Timers on the network side

T3101: This timer is started when a channel is allocated with an IMMEDIATE ASSIGNMENT message. It is stopped when the MS has correctly seized the channels.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: It could be higher than the maximum time for a L2 establishment attempt.

T3103: This timer is started by the sending of a HANDOVER message and is normally stopped when the MS has correctly seized the new channel. Its purpose is to keep the old channels sufficiently long for the MS to be able to return to the old channels, and to release the channels if the MS is lost.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: It could be higher than the maximum transmission time of the HANDOVER COMMAND, plus the value of T3124, plus the maximum duration of an attempt to establish a data link in multiframe mode.)

T3105: This timer is used for the repetition of the PHYSICAL INFORMATION message during the hand-over procedure.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: This timer may be set to such a low value that the message is in fact continuously transmitted.

T3107: This timer is started by the sending of an ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message and is normally stopped when the MS has correctly seized the new channels.

Its purpose is to keep the old channel sufficiently long for the MS to be able to return to the old channels, and to release the channels if the MS is lost.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: It could be higher than the maximum transmission time of the ASSIGNMENT COMMAND message plus twice the maximum duration of an attempt to establish a data link multiframe mode.

T3109: This timer is started when a lower layer failure is detected by the network, when it is not engaged in a RF procedure. It is also used in the channel release procedure.

Its purpose is to release the channels in case of loss of communication.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: Its value should be large enough to ensure that the MS detects a radio link failure.

T3111: This timer is used to delay the channel deactivation after disconnection of the main signalling link. Its purpose is to let some time for possible repetition of the disconnection.

Its value is equal to the value of T3110.

T3113: This timer is started when the network has sent a PAGING REQUEST message and is stopped when the network has received the PAGING RESPONSE message.

Its value is network dependent.

NOTE: The value could allow for repetitions of the Channel Request message and the requirements associated with T3101.

11.1.3 Other parameters

Ny1: The maximum number of repetitions for the PHYSICAL INFORMATION message during a handover (see section 3.4.4.2.2). The value is network dependent.

11.2 Timers of mobility management

Table 11.1/GSM 04.08: Mobility management timers - MS-side

TIMER NUM.	MM STAT	TIME OUT VAL.	CAUSE FOR START	NORMAL STOP	AT THE EXPIRY
T3210	3	20s	-LOC_UPD_REQ sent	- LOC_UPD_ACC - LOC_UPD_REJ - AUTH_REJ - Lower layer failure	Start T3211
T3211	1 2	15s	-LOC_UPD_REJ with cause #17 netw. failure -lower layer failure or RR conn. released after RR conn. abort during loc. updating	- Time out - cell change - request for MM connection establishment - change of LA	Restart the Location update proc.
T3212	1, 2	Note 1	-termination of MM service or MM signalling	-initiation of MM service or MM signalling	initiate periodic updating
T3213	1 2 11	4s	-location updating failure	- expiry - change of BCCH parameter	new random attempt
T3220	7	5s	-IMSI DETACH	- release from RM-sublayer	enter Null or Idle, ATTEMPTING TO UPDATE
T3230	5	15s	-CM SERV REQ CM REEST REQ	- Cipher mode setting - CM SERV REJ - CM SERV ACC	provide release ind.
T3240	9 10	10s	see section 11.2.1	see section 11.2.1	abort the RR connection

NOTE 1: The timeout value is broadcasted in a SYSTEM INFORMATION message

Table 11.2/GSM 04.08: Mobility management timers - network-side

TIMER NUM.	MM STAT	TIME OUT VAL.	CAUSE FOR START	NORMAL STOP	AT THE FIRST EXPIRY	AT THE SECOND EXPIRY
T3250	6	12s	TMSI-REAL-CMD or LOC UPD ACC with new TMSI sent	TMSI-REALL-COM received	Optionally Release RR connec-tion	
T3255		Note	LOC UPD ACC sent with "Follow on Proceed"	CM SERVICE REQUEST	Release RR Connection or use for mobile sta-tion termi-nating call	
T3260	5	12s	AUTHENT-REQUEST sent	AUTHENT-RESPONSE received	Optionally Release RR connec-tion	
T3270	4	12s	IDENTITY REQUEST sent	IDENTITY RESPONSE received	Optionally Release RR connec-tion	

NOTE 2: The value of this timer is not specified by this recommendation.

11.2.1 Timer T3240

Timer T3240 is started in the MS when:

- the MS receives a LOCATION UPDATING ACCEPT message completing a location updating procedure in the cases specified in section 4.4.4.6 and 4.4.4.8;
- the MS receives a LOCATION UPDATING REJECT message in the cases specified in section 4.4.4.7;
- the MS has sent a CM SERVICE ABORT message as specified in section 4.5.1.7;
- the MS has released or aborted all MM connections in the cases specified in 4.3.2.5, 4.3.5.2, 4.5.1.1, and 4.5.3.1.

Timer T3240 is stopped, reset, and started again at receipt of an MM message.

Timer T3240 is stopped and reset (but not started) at receipt of a CM message that initiates establishment of an CM connection (an appropriate SETUP, REGISTER, or CP-DATA message as defined in GSM 04.08, GSM 04.10 or GSM 04.11).

11.3 Timers of circuit-switched call control

Table 11.3/GSM 04.08: Call control timers - MS side

TIM. NUM.	TIM VAL	STATE OF CALL	CAUSE OF START	NORMAL STOP	AT FIRST EXPIRY	AT SECOND EXPIRY
T303	30s	Call initiated	CM SER RQ sent	CALL PROC, or REL COMP received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted
T305	30s	Disconnect Request	DISC sent	REL or DISC received	REL sent.	Timer is not restarted
T308	30s	Release request	REL sent	REL COMP or REL received	Retrans. RELEASE restart T308	Call ref. release
T310 Note 1	30s	Outgoing call Proceeding	CALL PROC received	ALERT,CONN, DISC or PROG rec.	Send DISC	Timer is not restarted
T313	30s	Connect Request	CONN sent	CONNect ACKnowledge received	Send DISC	Timer is not restarted
T323	30s	Modify Request	MOD sent	MOD COMP or MOD REJ received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted

NOTE 1: T310 is not started if progress indicator #1, #2, or #64 has been delivered in the CALL PROCEEDING message or in a previous PROGRESS message.

Table 11.4/GSM 04.08: Call control timers - network side

TIM. NUM.	DFT TIM VAL	STATE OF CALL	CAUSE FOR START	NORMAL STOP	AT FIRST EXPIRY	AT SECON EXPIRY
T301 Note 1	Min 180s	Call received	ALERT received	CONN received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted
T303	Note 2	Call present	SETUP sent	CALL CONF or REL COMP received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted
T305	30s	Disconnect Indication	DISC without progress indic. #8 sent	REL or DISC received	Network sends RELEASE	Timer is not restarted
T306	30s	Disconnect Indication	DISC with progress indic. #8 sent	REL or DISC received	Stop the tone/ announc. Send REL	Timer is not restarted
T308	Note 2	Release request	REL sent	REL COMP or REL received	Retrans. RELEASE restart T308	Release call reference
T310	Note 2	Incoming call pro- ceeding	CALL CONF received	ALERT, CONN or DISC received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted
T313	Note 2	Connect Indication	CON sent	CON ACK received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted
T323	30s	Modify request	MOD sent	MOD COMP or MOD REJ received	Clear the call	Timer is not restarted

NOTE 2: The network may already have applied an internal alerting supervision function; e.g. incorporated within call control. If such a function is known to be operating on the call, then timer T301 is not used.

NOTE 3: These time values are set by the network operator.

Annex A (informative): Example of subaddress information element coding

This annex is informative.

This annex gives an example of how the Called Party Subaddress IE is encoded to carry subaddress digits that use IA5 characters. This example is also applicable to the Calling Party Subaddress IE.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	octet
0	1 called party subaddress IEI	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
0 Length	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	2
1 not ext	0 NSAP (X.213/ISO 8348 AD2)	0	0	X odd/ev note 1	0 note 2	0	0	3
0 AFI (note 3)	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
IA5 Character (note 4)								5
IA5 Character (note 4)								6
:								
IA5 Character (note 4)								9, note 5

NOTE 1: The value of this bit has no significance when the type of subaddress is "NSAP".

NOTE 2: These bits are spare.

NOTE 3: The Authority and Format Identifier code 50 (in BCD) indicates that the subaddress consists of IA5 characters (see ISO standard 8348 AD2).

NOTE 4: IA5 character as defined in CCITT Recommendation T.50/ISO 646 and then encoded into two semi-octets according to the "preferred binary encoding" defined in X.213/ISO 8348 AD2. (Each character is converted into a number in the range 32 to 127 using the ISO 646 encoding with zero parity and the parity bit in the most significant position. This number is then reduced by 32 to give a new number in the range 0 to 95. The new number is then treated as a pair of decimal digits with the value of each digit being encoded in a semi-octet.)

NOTE 5: the number of IA5 characters in the subaddress may vary, subject to an upper limit of 19 IA5 characters.

Annex B (normative): COMPATIBILITY CHECKING

This annex is normative.

B.1 Introduction

This annex describes the various compatibility checks which shall be carried out to ensure that the best matched MS and network capabilities are achieved on a call between a PLMN and the ISDN.

Three different processes of compatibility checking shall be performed:

i) at the user-to-network interface on the calling side (see B.2);
ii) at the network-user interface on the called side (see B.3.2);
iii) user-to-user (see B 3.3).

> NOTE: In this context and throughout this annex the term "called user" is the end point entity which is explicitly addressed.

For details on the coding of the information required for compatibility checking, see annex C.

B.2 Calling side compatibility checking

B.2.1 Compatibility checking of the CM SERVICE REQUEST message

The network shall check if the service requested in the CM SERVICE REQUEST message is permitted for that subscriber.

B.2.2 Compatibility/Subscription checking of the SETUP message

At the calling side the network shall check that the basic service(s) requested by the calling MS in the Bearer Capability information element(s) match(es) with the basic services provided to that subscriber by the PLMN. If for at least one bearer capability information element contained in the SETUP message a mismatch is detected, then the network shall proceed as follows:

- if the SETUP message contained two bearer capability information elements for only one of which a mismatch is detected, the network shall either:
    - under the conditions specified in GSM 07.01 (e.g. TS 61 and TS 62), accept the SETUP message with a CALL PROCEEDING message containing the, possibly negotiated, bearer capability information element for which no mismatch is detected, or
    - reject the call using one of the causes listed in annex H.
- otherwise the network shall reject the call using one of the causes listed in annex H.

Network services are described in GSM 02.02 and GSM 02.03 as bearer services and teleservices, respectively.

B.3 Called side compatibility checking

In this section, the word "check" means that the MS examines the contents of the specified information element.

B.3.1 Compatibility checking with addressing information

If an incoming SETUP message is offered to the MS with addressing information (i.e. sub-address or called party number) the following shall occur:

a) if the MS has a DDI number or a sub-address, then the information in any Called Party BCD Number or any Called Party subaddress information elements of the incoming SETUP message shall be checked by the MS against the corresponding part of the number assigned to the user (e.g. for DDI) or the user's own sub-address.
In the cases of a mismatch, the MS shall release the call. In the case of a match, the compatibility checking described in B.3.2 and B.3.3 shall be performed.

b) if the MS has no DDI number and no sub-address, then the Called Party BCD Number and Called Party Sub-address information element shall be ignored for the purposes of compatibility checking. The compatibility checking described in B.3.2 and B.3.3 shall be performed.

NOTE: According to the user's requirements, compatibility checking can be performed in various ways from the viewpoint of execution order and information to be checked, e.g. first DDI number/sub-address and then bearer capability or vice versa.

B.3.2 Network-to-MS compatibility checking

When the network is providing a basic service at the called side, the MS shall check that the basic service(s) offered by the network in the Bearer Capability information element(s) match(es) the basic services that the MS is able to support. If a mismatch is detected, then the MS shall proceed as follows:

- if the SETUP message contained two bearer capability information elements for only one of which a mismatch is detected, the MS shall either:

  - under the conditions specified in GSM 07.01 (e.g. TS 61 and TS 62), accept the SETUP message with a CALL CONFIRMED message containing the, possibly negotiated, bearer capability information element for which no mismatch is detected, or

  - reject the call using cause No. 88 "incompatible destination".

- otherwise the MS shall reject the offered call using a RELEASE COMPLETE message with cause No. 88 "incompatible destination".

When interworking with existing networks, limitations in network or distant user signalling (e.g. in the case of an incoming call from a PSTN or a call from an analogue terminal) may restrict the information available to the called MS in the incoming SETUP message (e.g. missing Bearer Capability Information Element or missing High Layer Compatibility Information Element). For compatibility checking, and handling of such calls see GSM 07.01.

B.3.3 User-to-User compatibility checking

See GSM 07.01.

B.4 High layer compatibility checking

See GSM 07.01.

Annex C (normative): Low layer information coding principles

This annex is normative.

C.1 Purpose

This annex describes principles that shall be used when the calling MS specifies information during call setup regarding low layer capabilities required in the network and by the destination terminal. Refer also to GSM 07.01.

NOTE: In this context and throughout this annex the term "called user" is the end point entity which is explicitly addressed. This may also be an explicitly addressed interworking unit (IWU) (see CCITT I.500-Series Recommendations and CCITT Recommendation X.31 case a).

C.2 Principles

C.2.1 Definition of types of information

There are three different types of information that the calling PLMN user may specify during call setup to identify low layer capabilities needed in the network and in the destination terminal:

a) type I information is information about the calling terminal which is only used at the destination end to allow a decision regarding terminal compatibility. An example would be the user information layer 3 protocol. Type I information is encoded in octets 5 to 7 of the low layer compatibility information element;

b) type II information is only used by the network (PLMN) to which the calling user is connected for selection of PLMN specific network resources, e.g. channel type or specific functionality within the interworking function (IWF, see TS 09.07). This type of information is always present. An example is the connection element. Type II information is coded in:

   i) octet 3 of the bearer capability information element when the information transfer capability required by the calling user is speech ;

   ii) octets 3, 4, 5, and optionally octet 7 of the bearer capability information element when the information transfer capability required by the calling user is not speech;

c) type III information is required for selection of a basic service from the choice of basic services offered by the network and together with type II information for selection of an appropriate interworking function (IWF, see GSM 09.07), as well as for terminal compatibility checking at the destination terminal . An example is the information transfer capability. Type III information is always present and is encoded in:

   i) octet 3 of the bearer capability information element when the information transfer capability required by the calling user is speech ;

   ii) octets 3, 5, 6, 6a, 6b and 6c of the bearer capability information element when the information transfer capability required by the calling user is not speech;

C.2.2 Examination by network

Type I information is user-to-user (i.e. at the calling side not examined by network) while type II and III information should be available for examination by the destination user and the network.

NOTE: In the case of a mobile terminated call, if the type II and type III information is not sufficient for the selection of an appropriate interworking function, the type I information will also examined by the network.

C.2.3 Location of type I information

Type I information (i.e. terminal information only significant to the called user) shall, when used, be included in the low layer compatibility information element.

C.2.4 Location of types II and III information

Type II information is included in the bearer capability information element. Type III information is also included in the bearer capability information element. The network may use and modify type III information (e.g. to provide interworking).

In any case a modification of the bearer capability information element has to be performed when interworking to the fixed network (e.g. ISDN) is required, where the signalling of the radio interface has to be mapped to fixed network signalling (e.g. mapping of GSM BCIE to ISDN BCIE, see GSM 09.07).

C.2.5 Relationship between bearer capability and low layer compatibility information elements

There shall be no contradiction of information between the low layer compatibility and the bearer capability at the originating side. However, as some bearer capability code points may be modified during the transport of the call (e.g. by the interworking function), this principle implies that there should be minimal duplication of information between the bearer capability information element and the low layer compatibility information element.

NOTE: If as a result of duplication, a contradiction occurs at the terminating side between the bearer capability information element and the low layer compatibility information element at the terminating side, the receiving entity shall ignore the conflicting information in the low layer compatibility information element.

Annex D (informative): Examples of bearer capability information element coding

This annex is informative.

This annex gives examples of the coding of bearer capability information elements for various telecommunication services. This annex is included for information purposes only. In the case of any inconsistency between this annex and GSM 07.01 then GSM 07.01 shall take precedence over this annex.

D.1 Coding for speech for a full rate support only MS

D.1.1 Mobile station to network direction

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 Bearer capability IEI							octet 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 Length of the bearer capability contents								octet 2
1 not ext	0 1 full rate only		0 GSM	0 circ. mode	0 0 0 speech			octet 3

D.1.2 Network to MS direction

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 Bearer capability IEI							octet 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 Length of the bearer capability contents								octet 2
1 not ext	0 spare	1 spare	0 GSM	0 circ. mode	0 0 0 speech			octet 3

D.2 An example of a coding for modem access with V22-bis, 2.4 kbit/s, 8 bit no parity

D.2.1 Mobile station to network direction, data compression allowed

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0 Bearer capability IEI	0	0	0	1	0	0	octet 1
0 Length of the bearer capability contents	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	octet 2
1 not ext	1 dual, half preferred	0	0 GSM	0 circ. mode	0 3.1 kHz audio ex PLMN	1	0	octet 3
1 not ext	1 comp- ress.	0 SDU integrity	0	1 full dupl.	0 pt to pt	0 no NIRR	0 de- mand	octet 4
1 not ext	0 access id.	0	0 no rate adaption	0	0 I.440/450	0	1	octet 5
0 ext	0 layer 1	1	0 default layer 1	0	0	0	1 async	octet 6
0 ext	0 1 bit	0 no neg	1 8 bits	0 2.4 kbit/s	0	1	1	octet 6a
0 ext	1 16 kbit/s inter. rate	1	0 no NICtx	0 no NICrx	0 (parity) none	1	1	octet 6b
1 not ext	0 non trans (RLP)	1	0 V.22 bis	0	0	1	1	octet 6c

D.2.2 Network to MS direction, data compression possible

<table>
<tr><th>8</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th></th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">0 0 0 0 1 0 0
Bearer capability IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1
Length of the bearer capability contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
GSM</td><td>0
circ.
mode</td><td colspan="3">0 1 0
3.1 kHz audio
ex PLMN</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td>1
comp-
ress.</td><td colspan="2">0 0
SDU
integrity</td><td>1
full
dupl.</td><td>0
pt to
pt</td><td>0
no
NIRR</td><td>0
de-
mand</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
access id.</td><td colspan="2">0 0
no rate
adaption</td><td colspan="3">0 0 1
I.440/450</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 1
layer 1</td><td colspan="4">0 0 0 0
default layer 1</td><td>1
async</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td>0
1 bit</td><td>0
no
neg</td><td>1
8
bits</td><td colspan="4">0 0 1 1
2.4 kbit/s</td><td>octet 6a</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td colspan="2">1 1
16 kbit/s
inter. rate</td><td>0
no
NICtx</td><td>0
no
NICrx</td><td colspan="3">0 1 1
(parity) none</td><td>octet 6b</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 1
non trans
(RLP)</td><td colspan="5">0 0 0 1 1
V.22 bis</td><td>octet 6c</td></tr>
</table>

D.3 An example of a coding for group 3 facsimile (9.6 kbit/s, transparent)

D.3.1 Mobile station to network direction

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
0	0 Bearer capability IEI	0	0	0	1	0	0	octet 1
0 Length of the bearer capability contents	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	octet 2
1 not ext	0 full rate only MS	1	0 GSM	0 circ. mode	0 facsimile group 3	1	1	octet 3
1 not ext	0 comp-ress.	1 unstruc-tured	1	1 full dupl.	0 pt to pt	0 no NIRR	0 de-mand	octet 4
1 not ext	0 access id.	0	0 no rate adaption	0	0 I.440/450	0	1	octet 5
0 ext	0 layer 1	1	0 default layer 1	0	0	0	0 sync	octet 6
0 ext	0 (syn)	0 no neg	1 (syn)	0 9.6 kbit/s	1	0	1	octet 6a
0 ext	1 16 kbit/s inter. rate	1	0 no NICtx	0 no NICrx	0 (parity) none	1	1	octet 6b
1 not ext	0 transparent	0	0 none (modem type)	0	0	0	0	octet 6c

D.3.2 Network to MS direction

<table>
<tr><td>8</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="7">0 0 0 0 1 0 0
Bearer capability IEI</td><td>octet 1</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1
Length of the bearer capability contents</td><td>octet 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td>0
spare</td><td>1
spare</td><td>0
GSM</td><td>0
circ.
mode</td><td colspan="3">0 1 0
3.1 kHz audio
ex PLMN</td><td>octet 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td>0
comp-
ress.</td><td colspan="2">1 1
unstruc-
tured</td><td>1
full
dupl.</td><td>0
pt to
pt</td><td>0
no
NIRR</td><td>0
de-
mand</td><td>octet 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
access id.</td><td colspan="2">0 0
no rate
adaption</td><td colspan="3">0 0 1
I.440/450</td><td>octet 5</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 1
layer 1</td><td colspan="4">0 0 0 0
default layer 1</td><td>0
sync</td><td>octet 6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td>0
(syn)</td><td>0
no
neg</td><td>1
(syn)</td><td colspan="4">0 1 0 1
9.6 kbit/s</td><td>octet 6a</td></tr>
<tr><td>0
ext</td><td colspan="2">1 1
16 kbit/s
inter. rate</td><td>0
no
NICtx</td><td>0
no
NICrx</td><td colspan="3">0 1 1
(parity) none</td><td>octet 6b</td></tr>
<tr><td>1
not
ext</td><td colspan="2">0 0
transparent</td><td colspan="5">0 0 0 0 0
none
(modem type)</td><td>octet 6c</td></tr>
</table>

Annex E (informative): Comparison between call control procedures specified in GSM 04.08 and CCITT Recommendation Q.931

This annex is informative.

This annex summarizes a comparison of the procedures for call control as specified in CCITT Recommendation Q.931 (blue book) and GSM 04.08.

If no comment is given, it means that the procedures specified in CCITT Recommendation Q.931 and GSM 04.08 are similar. However, it should be noted that even in such cases the procedures may be described in slightly different ways in the two documents.

TABLE E.1/GSM 04.08: Circuit-switched call control procedures

Procedure	Q.931	GSM 04.08
Call establishment at the originating interface	5.1	5.2.1
- call request	5.1.1	5.2.1.1.1 en-bloc sending only
- B-channel selection originating	5.1.2	not applicable
- overlap sending	5.1.3	not supported
- invalid call information	5.1.4	5.2.1.1.2
- call proceeding, en-bloc sending	5.1.5.1	5.2.1.1.3
- call proceeding, overlap sending	5.1.5.2	not supported
- notification of interworking at the originating interf.	5.1.6	5.2.1.1.4
- call confirmation indication	5.1.7	5.2.1.1.5
- call connected	5.1.8	5.2.1.1.6
- call rejection	5.1.9	5.2.1.1.7
- transit network selection	5.1.10	5.2.1.1.8

TABLE E.1/GSM 04.08: Circuit-switched call control procedures (continued)

Procedure	Q.931	GSM 04.08
Call establishment at the destination interface	5.2	5.2.2
- call indication	5.2.1	5.2.2.1 procedure for multiple terminal configuration not required, i.e. delivery of SETUP messages on broadcast data links is not supported
- compatibility checking	5.2.2	5.2.2.2 equivalent, except that delivery of SETUP mes-sages on broadcast data links is not supported
- B-channel selection destination	5.2.3	not applicable
- overlap receiving	5.2.4	not supported
- call confirmation information	5.2.5	5.2.2.3 equivalent, except that delivery of SETUP mes-sages on broadcast data links is not supported
- notification of interworking at the terminating interf.	5.2.6	5.2.2.4
- call accept indication	5.2.7	5.2.2.5
- active indication	5.2.8	5.2.2.6 equivalent, except that SETUP messages are not sent on broadcast data links
- non-selected user clearing	5.2.9	not applicable

TABLE E.1/GSM 04.08: Circuit-switched call control procedures (continued)

Procedure	Q.931	GSM 04.08
Call clearing	5.3	5.4
- terminology	5.3.1	5.4.1 terminology adapted to GSM applications
- exception conditions	5.3.2	5.4.2 only case a) of section 5.3.2 of Rec. Q.931 applies. All other exceptions apply to functions which are not relevant to GSM
- clearing initiated by the user/MS	5.3.3	5.4.3
- clearing initiated by the network	5.3.4	5.4.4
- clearing when tones/announcements are provided	5.3.4.1	5.4.4.1 exception: if not already connected, the traffic channel is connected in order to provide the tone/announcement
- clearing when tones/announcements are not provided	5.3.4.2	5.4.4.2
- completion of clearing	5.3.4.3	5.4.4.3
Clear collision	5.3.5	5.4.5

TABLE E.1/GSM 04.08: Circuit-switched call control procedures (continued)

Procedure	Q.931	GSM 04.08
In-band tones and announcements	5.4	5.5.1
Restart procedure	5.5	not supported
Call rearrangements	5.6	5.3.4 call suspension/call re-establishment not suppor-ted on the radio path. The functions, if requi-red, are to be supported locally in the MS. On the radio interface, the notification procedure of Rec. Q.931 (section 5.6.7) applies
Call collisions	5.7	5.5.2 call collisions cannot occur
Emergency call esta-blishment at the ori-ginating interface	not specified not supported	5.2.1.2
In-call modification	Annex O Rec. Q.931 is incomplete with regard to in-call modification procedures	5.3.4
DTMF protocol control procedures	not specified not supported	5.3.3
Call re-establishment	not specified not supported	5.5.4

TABLE E.1/GSM 04.08: Circuit-switched call control procedures (continued)

Procedure	Q.931	GSM 04.08
Status enquiry procedure	5.8.10, 5.8.11	5.5.3
User-to-user signalling	7	GSM 04.10
User notification procedure	5.9	5.3.1

Annex F (informative): GSM specific cause values for radio resource management

This annex is informative.

Cause value = 0 Normal event;

indicates that the channel is released because of a normal event or that an assignment or handover is successfully, and normally, completed.

Cause value = 1 Abnormal release, unspecified;

indicates that the channel is released because of an abnormal event without specifying further reasons.

Cause value = 2 Abnormal release, channel unacceptable;

indicates that the channel type or channel characteristics are not acceptable.

Cause value = 3 Abnormal release, timer expired;

indicates that the release is caused by a timer expiry.

Cause value = 4 Abnormal release, no activity on the radio path;

indicates that some supervisory function has detected that the channel is not active.

Cause value = 5 Pre-emptive release;

indicates that the channel is released in order to be allocated to a call with priority (e.g. an emergency call).

Cause value = 8 Handover impossible, timing advance out of range;

indicates that a handover is unsuccessful because the target BTS is beyond the normal range and the target BTS would not accept an out of range timing advance.

Cause value = 9 Channel mode unacceptable

indicates that the MS does not have the capability to handle the requested mode or type of channel.

Cause value = 10 Frequency not implemented

indicates that the MS does not have the capability to operate on (at least one of) the requested frequency(ies).

Cause value = 65 Call already cleared;

indicates that a handover is unsuccessful because the connection has been released by the network or the remote user.

Cause value = 95 Semantically incorrect message;

See annex H, section H5.10.

Cause value = 96 Invalid mandatory information;

See annex H, section H6.1.

Cause value = 97 Message type non-existent or not implemented;

See annex H, section H6.2.

Cause value = 98 Message type not compatible with protocol state;

See annex H, section H6.3

Cause value = 100 Conditional IE error;

See annex H, section H6.5

Cause value = 101 No cell allocation available;

indicates that an assignment or handover is unsuccessful because the MS has no current CA.

Cause value = 111 Protocol error unspecified;

See annex H, section H6.8.

Annex G (informative): GSM specific cause values for mobility management

This annex is informative.

G.1 Causes related to MS identification

Cause value = 2 IMSI unknown in HLR

> This cause is sent to the MS if the MS is not known (registered) in the HLR.

Cause value = 3 Illegal MS

> This cause is sent to the MS when the network refuses service to the MS either because an identity of the MS is not acceptable to the network or because the MS does not pass the authentication check, i.e. the SRES received from the MS is different from that generated by the network.

Cause value = 4 IMSI unknown in VLR

> This cause is sent to the MS when the given IMSI is not known at the VLR.

Cause value = 5 IMEI not accepted

> This cause is sent to the MS if the network does not accept emergency call establishment using an IMEI.

Cause value = 6 Illegal ME

> This cause is sent to the MS if the ME used is not acceptable to the network, e.g. blacklisted.

G.2 Cause related to subscription options

Cause value = 11 PLMN not allowed

> This cause is sent to the MS if it requests location updating in a PLMN where the MS, by subscription or due to operator determined barring is not allowed to operate.

Cause value = 12 Location Area not allowed

> This cause is sent to the MS if it requests location updating in a location area where the MS, by subscription, is not allowed to operate.

Cause value = 13 Roaming not allowed in this location area

> This cause is sent to an MS which requests location updating in a location area of a PLMN which offers roaming to that MS in that Location Area.

G.3 Causes related to PLMN specific network failures and congestion

Cause value = 17 Network failure

> This cause is sent to the MS if the MSC cannot service an MS generated request because of PLMN failures, e.g. problems in MAP.

Cause value = 22 Congestion

> This cause is sent if the service request cannot be actioned because of congestion (e.g. no channel, facility busy/congested etc.)

G.4 Causes related to nature of request

Cause value = 32 Service option not supported

This cause is sent when the MS requests a service/facility in the CM SERVICE REQUEST message which is not supported by the PLMN.

Cause value = 33 Requested service option not subscribed

This cause is sent when the MS requests a service option for which it has no subscription.

Cause value = 34 Service option temporarily out of order

This cause is sent when the MSC cannot service the request because of temporary outage of one or more functions required for supporting the service.

Cause value = 38 Call cannot be identified

This cause is sent when the network cannot identify the call associated with a call re-establishment request.

G.5 Causes related to invalid messages

Cause value = 95 Semantically incorrect message.

See annex H, section H.5.10.

Cause value = 96 Invalid mandatory information.

See annex H, section H.6.1.

Cause value = 97 Message type non-existent or not implemented.

See annex H, section H.6.2.

Cause value = 98 Message not compatible with protocol state.

See annex H, section H.6.3.

Cause value = 99 Information element non-existent or not implemented

See annex H, section H.6.4.

Cause value = 100 Conditional IE error.

See annex H, section H.6.5.

Cause value = 101 Message not compatible with protocol state

See annex H, section H.6.6.

Cause value = 111 Protocol error, unspecified

See annex H, section H.6.8.

Annex H (informative): GSM specific cause values for call control

This annex is informative.

H.1 Normal class

H.1.1 Cause No. 1 "unassigned (unallocated) number"

This cause indicates that the destination requested by the MS cannot be reached because, although the number is in a valid format, it is not currently assigned (allocated).

H.1.2 Cause No. 3 "no route to destination"

This cause indicates that the called user cannot be reached because the network through which the call has been routed does not serve the destination desired.

H.1.3 Cause No. 6 "channel unacceptable"

This cause indicates the channel most recently identified is not acceptable to the sending entity for use in this call.

H.1.4 Cause No. 8 "operator determined barring"

This cause indicates that the MS has tried to access a service that the MS's network operator or service provider is not prepared to allow.

H.1.5 Cause No.16 "normal call clearing"

This cause indicates that the call is being cleared because one of the users involved in the call has requested that the call be cleared.

Under normal situations, the source of this cause is not the network.

H.1.6 Cause No.17 "user busy"

This cause is used when the called user has indicated the inability to accept another call.

It is noted that the user equipment is compatible with the call.

H.1.7 Cause No. 18 "no user responding"

This cause is used when a user does not respond to a call establishment message with either an alerting or connect indication within the prescribed period of time allocated (defined by the expiry of either timer T303 or T310).

H.1.8 Cause No. 19 "user alerting, no answer"

This cause is used when a user has provided an alerting indication but has not provided a connect indication within a prescribed period of time.

H.1.9 Cause No. 21 "call rejected"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not wish to accept this call, although it could have accepted the call because the equipment sending this cause is neither busy nor incompatible.

H.1.10 Cause No. 22 "number changed"

This cause is returned to a calling MS when the called party number indicated by the calling MS is no longer assigned. The new called party number may optionally be included in the diagnostic field. If a network does not support this capability, cause No. 1 "unassigned (unallocated) number" shall be used.

H.1.11 Cause No. 26 "non-selected user clearing"

Not supported. Treated as cause no. 31.

H.1.12 Cause No. 27 "destination out of order"

This cause indicates that the destination indicated by the MS cannot be reached because the interface to the destination is not functioning correctly. The term "not functioning correctly" indicates that a signalling message was unable to be delivered to the remote user; e.g., a physical layer or data link layer failure at the remote user, user equipment off-line, etc.

H.1.13 Cause No. 28 "invalid number format (incomplete number)"

This cause indicates that the called user cannot be reached because the called party number is not a valid format or is not complete.

H.1.14 Cause No. 29 "facility rejected"

This cause is returned when a facility requested by user can not be provided by the network.

H.1.15 Cause No. 30 "response to STATUS ENQUIRY"

This cause is included in STATUS messages if the message is sent in response to a STATUS ENQUIRY message. See also section 5.5.3.

H.1.16 Cause No. 31 "normal, unspecified"

This cause is used to report a normal event only when no other cause in the normal class applies.

H.2 Resource unavailable class

H.2.1 Cause No. 34 "no circuit/channel available"

This cause indicates that there is no appropriate circuit/channel presently available to handle the call.

H.2.2 Cause No. 38 "network out of order"

This cause indicates that the network is not functioning correctly and that the condition is likely to last a relatively long period of time; e.g., immediately re-attempting the call is not likely to be successful.

H.2.3 Cause No. 41 "temporary failure"

This cause indicates that the network is not functioning correctly and that the condition is not likely to last a long period of time; e.g., the MS may wish to try another call attempt almost immediately.

H.2.4 Cause No. 42 "switching equipment congestion"

This cause indicates that the switching equipment generating this cause is experiencing a period of high traffic.

H.2.5 Cause No. 43 "access information discarded"

This cause indicates that the network could not deliver access information to the remote user as requested; i.e., a user-to-user information, low layer compatibility, high layer compatibility, or sub-address as indicated in the diagnostic.

It is noted that the particular type of access information discarded is optionally included in the diagnostic.

H.2.6 Cause No. 44 "requested circuit/channel not available"

This cause is returned when the circuit or channel indicated by the requesting entity cannot be provided by the other side of the interface.

H.2.7 Cause No. 47 "resource unavailable, unspecified"

This cause is used to report a resource unavailable event only when no other cause in the resource unavailable class applies.

H.3 Service or option not available class

H.3.1 Cause No. 49 "quality of service unavailable"

This cause indicates to the MS that the requested quality of service, as defined in CCITT Recommendation X.213, cannot be provided.

H.3.2 Cause No. 50 "Requested facility not subscribed"

This cause indicates that the requested supplementary service could not be provided by the network because the user has no completed the necessary administrative arrangements with its supporting networks.

H.3.3 Cause No. 55 "Incoming calls barred within the CUG"

This cause indicates that although the called party is a member of the CUG for the incoming CUG call, incoming calls are not allowed within this CUG.

H.3.4 Cause No. 57 "bearer capability not authorized"

This cause indicates that the MS has requested a bearer capability which is implemented by the equipment which generated this cause but the MS is not authorized to use.

H.3.5 Cause No. 58 "bearer capability not presently available"

This cause indicates that the MS has requested a bearer capability which is implemented by the equipment which generated this cause but which is not available at this time.

H.3.6 Cause No. 63 "service or option not available, unspecified"

This cause is used to report a service or option not available event only when no other cause in the service or option not available class applies.

H.3.7 Cause No. 68 "ACM equal to or greater than ACMmax"

This cause is used by the mobile to indicate that call clearing is due to ACM being greater than or equal to ACMmax.

H.4 Service or option not implemented class

H.4.1 Cause No. 65 "bearer service not implemented"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not support the bearer capability requested.

H.4.2 Cause No. 69 "Requested facility not implemented"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause does not support the requested supplementary service.

H.4.3 Cause No. 70 "only restricted digital information bearer capability is available"

This cause indicates that one equipment has requested an unrestricted bearer service, but that the equipment sending this cause only supports the restricted version of the requested bearer capability.

H.4.4 Cause No. 79 "service or option not implemented, unspecified"

This cause is used to report a service or option not implemented event only when no other cause in the service or option not implemented class applies.

H.5 Invalid message (e.g., parameter out of range) class

H.5.1 Cause No. 81 "invalid transaction identifier value"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with a transaction identifier which is not currently in use on the MS-network interface.

H.5.2 Cause No. 87 "user not member of CUG"

This cause indicates that the called user for the incoming CUG call is not a member of the specified CUG.

H.5.3 Cause No. 88 "incompatible destination"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a request to establish a call which has low layer compatibility, high layer compatibility, or other compatibility attributes (e.g., data rate) which cannot be accommodated.

H.5.4 Cause No. 91 "invalid transit network selection"

For further study. Treated as cause no. 95.

H.5.5 Cause No. 95 "semantically incorrect message"

This cause is used to report receipt of a message with semantically incorrect contents (see section 8.8).

H.6 Protocol error (e.g., unknown message) class

H.6.1 Cause No. 96 "invalid mandatory information"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with a non-semantical mandatory IE error (see section 8.5).

H.6.2 Cause No. 97 "message type non-existent or not implemented"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with a message type it does not recognize either because this is a message not defined, or defined but not implemented by the equipment sending this cause.

H.6.3 Cause No. 98 "message type not compatible with protocol state"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message not compatible with the protocol state (section 8.4).

H.6.4 Cause No. 99 "information element non-existent or not implemented"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message which includes information elements not recognized because the information element identifier is not defined or it is defined but not implemented by the equipment sending the cause. However, the information element is not required to be present in the message in order for the equipment sending the cause to process the message.

H.6.5 Cause No. 100 "conditional IE error"

This cause indicates that the equipment sending this cause has received a message with conditional IE errors (see section 8.7.2).

H.6.6 Cause No. 101 "message not compatible with protocol state"

This cause indicates that a message has been received which is incompatible with the protocol state or that a STATUS message has been received indicating an incompatible call state.

H.6.7 Cause No. 102 "recovery on timer expiry"

This cause indicates that a procedure has been initiated by the expiry of a timer in association with TS 04.08 error handling procedures.

H.6.8 Cause No. 111 "protocol error, unspecified"

This cause is used to report a protocol error event only when no other cause in the protocol error class applies.

H.7 Interworking class

H.7.1 Cause No. 127 "interworking, unspecified"

This cause indicates that there has been interworking with a network which does not provide causes for actions it takes; thus, the precise cause for a message which is being sent cannot be ascertained.

Annex J (informative): Algorithm to encode frequency list information elements

This annex is informative.

J.1 Introduction

Some information elements encode frequency lists with a special method. The main specification specifies the meaning of the fields and hence the way to decode them, but the corresponding encoding algorithm is difficult to infer from the decoding algorithm. This annex is intended as an aid for implementers of the encoding algorithm.

It could be shown that any set of frequency with less or the same number of frequencies as the number of words can be encoded with a careful choice of F1, F2, and so on, i.e. that a set of Wi can be found so that the decoding algorithm given in the main section will give back the frequency set. The right order is not the order of the frequency values.

J.2 General principle

The encoding algorithm is based on a recursive dichotomy of both the range (i.e. the set of values that are possible) and the subset (the values to encode).

The dichotomy is best understood if the range is seen as a circle. For instance, for the 1023 range:

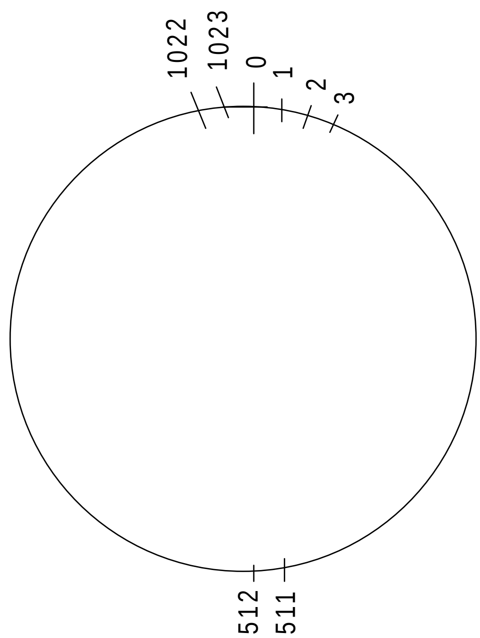


Figure J.1: Circular arrangement of 0..1023

The dichotomy consists in finding a value in the subset such that the diameter determined by this value splits the subset in two equal or nearly equal sub-subsets. In the following case, we see that value 290 is acceptable (the two sub-subsets have 3 elements), when value 250 is not acceptable (the two sub-subsets have 4 and 2 elements):

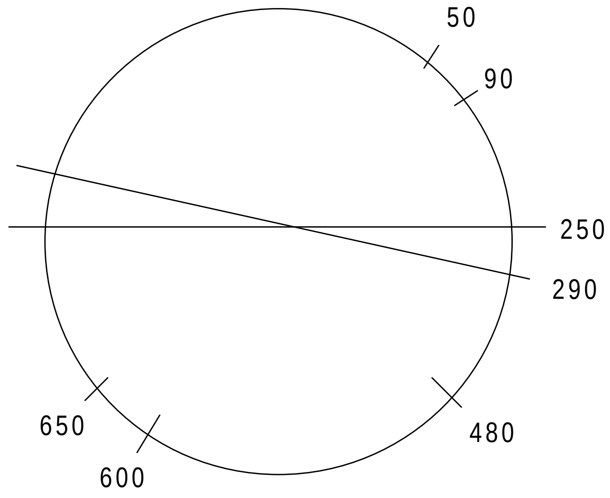


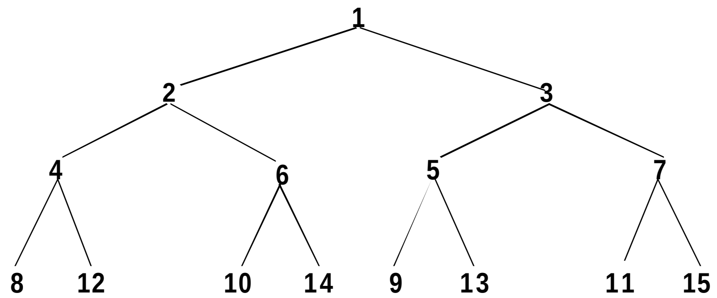
Figure J.2: Example of dichotomy

The pivot value is part of the information field, then the two sub-subsets are renumbered and the same algorithm is applied again on each of them. Because the range is halved at each step, the number of bits needed to encode a pivot value is 1 bit less than the number of bits needed to encode the parent pivot value.

The convention is that if the number of values is even, the left sub-subset (that is to say the values that can be expressed as the pivot value minus some integer between 1 and half the range) will have 1 element more than the right subset.

At each step the subset is numbered from 0 to the range minus 1. The coding in the information field of the pivot value is its value as renumbered, plus 1. Value 0 is reserved to indicate no element.

The order of appearance in the information field of the successive pivot values is particular. If we present the values as organized as a tree, with the left child being the pivot of the left sub-subset and the right child the pivot of the right sub-subset, the order of appearance is given by the following tree:



(and so on)

This order has been chosen so that

a) whatever the number N of elements in the set, the meaningful nodes are the first N and the value for all nodes from N+1 on are null (if sent),

b) the tree and all subtrees are balanced.

Important properties of these trees are used in the algorithms (with generation 1 corresponding to the root):

Generation g contains 2^{g-1} nodes, and their indices are 2^{g-1} to 2^{g}-1;

For generation g, nodes 2^{g-1} to $2^{g-1}+2^{g-2}-1$ are left children, the others are right children;

If node k belongs to generation g, its left child is node k + 2^{g-1} , and its right child is k + 2^{g};

Reciprocally, if k is a left child from generation g, its parent node is node k - 2^{g-2}, and if k is a right child of generation g, its parent is node k - 2^{g-1}.

J.3 Performances

The number of bits needed to encode a given set of values depends on the number of values and on the range they can span.

For the application on the BCCH and the SACCH (CA and BA information) 16 octets are available, and the number of frequencies that can be encoded in one information element is the following:

Range	Number of frequencies
513 to 1024	2 to 16 (17 if frequency 0 is in)
257 to 512	2 to 18
129 to 256	2 to 22
113 to 128	2 to 29
up to 112	any

With two messages (for the BA) the number of frequencies that can be encoded is the following:

Range	Number of frequencies
513 to 1024	2 to 36 (note 1)
257 to 512	2 to 40 (note 2)
225 to 256	2 to 51 (note 3)
up to 224	any

NOTE 1: A 1024 range can be split cyclically in to two 512 ranges each with less than 18 frequencies; each subset is coded in one message with 512 range format.

NOTE 2: A 512 range can be split in to two consecutive 256 ranges. If both sub-ranges contain 22 frequencies or less, it is possible to code each of these in a messages using the 256 range format. Otherwise one of the two ranges contains 23 frequencies or more: 22 of them can be coded in one message using the 256 range format and the remaining frequencies (numbering less than or equal to 18) can be coded in the other message using the 512 range format.

NOTE 3: The principles described in notes 1 and 2, above apply in this case.

The frequency short list information element allows the following:

Range	Number of frequencies
513 to 1024	2 to 7 (8 if frequency 0 is in)
257 to 512	2 to 8
129 to 256	2 to 9
57 to 128	2 to 12
up to 56	any

The number of frequencies as a function of the range and the length in octets of the variable length frequency list information element (including the message type and length fields) is given by the following table:

Table 04.08/J.1: Performance of the variable length frequency list information element

Range octets	513 to 1024	257 to 512	129 to 256	up to 128	variable bit map
5	1	1	1	1	8
6	2	2	3	3	16
7	3	3	4	4	24
8	4	4	5	6	32
9	5	6	6	8	40
10	6	7	8	10	48
11	7	8	9	12	56
12	9	9	11	14	64
13	10	11	13	16	72
14	11	12	14	18	80
15	12	13	16	21	88
16	13	15	18	24	96
17	14	16	20	26	104
18	16	18	22	29	112
19	17	19	24	32	120
20	18	21	26	--	128
21	20	22	28		136
22	21	24	30		144
23	22	26	32		152
24	24	27	34		160
25	25	29	37		168
26	26	30	40		176
27	28	32	42		184
28	29	34	45		192
29	30	36	48		200
30	32	38	50		208
31	33	40	53		216
32	35	42	56		224

J.4 Encoding algorithm

The choice is done recursively as given by the following programs, written in ADA:

Let us define the recursive procedure:

```
    procedure ENCODE_SUBTREE(in INDEX : INTEGER;
                  in SET : SET_OF_VALUE;
                  in RANGE : INTEGER);
```

This procedure is given a set of integer values and an index. It chooses one of those values and computes the corresponding W(INDEX) (considered as a global variable), it splits the set less the value in two equal or nearly equal subsets, and calls itself recursively for each of those subsets, with suitable INDEX.

Assumption: all values in SET lie (inclusively) between 0 and RANGE-1, and they are all distinct.

As written, the program does not assume special values for the range. With a range such as 2^k-1, some expressions can be simplified.

Declarative part:

```
   INDEX_IN_SET : INTEGER;

  begin
```

First the program tests the leaf conditions :

```
   if SET'SIZE=0 then
     W(INDEX) := 0;
     return;
   elsif SET'SIZE=1 then
     W(INDEX) := 1 + SET(1);
     return;
   end if;
```

The following program finds a value in the set such that exactly (SET'SIZE-1)/2 values from the set are between this value plus 1 and this value plus half the range :

```
  declare
   N : INTEGER;
   J : INTEGER;
  begin
   for I in 1..SET'SIZE loop
     N:=0;
     for J in 1..SET'SIZE loop
       if (SET(J)-SET(I)) mod RANGE <= (RANGE-1)/2 then
         N := N+1;
       end if;
     end loop;
```

The test compares N-1 because the possible pivot value is counted.

```
     if N-1 = (SET'SIZE-1)/2 then
       INDEX_IN_SET := I;
       exit;
     end if;
   end loop;
  end;
```

INDEX_IN_SET is then the index in the list of the pivot value.

The following sets W(INDEX)

```
    W(INDEX) := SET(INDEX_IN_SET) + 1;
```

Then the program does the same thing for the two halves of the range delimited by W(INDEX) and W(INDEX)+RANGE/2. First the left subset:

```
   declare
    SUBSET : SET_OF_VALUE(1..SET'SIZE/2);
    SUBSET_INDEX : INTEGER;
    ORIGIN_VALUE : INTEGER;
   begin
    ORIGIN_VALUE := (SET(INDEX_IN_SET] + (RANGE-1)/2
             + 1) mod RANGE;
    SUBSET_INDEX:=1;
    for I in 1..SET'SIZE loop
     if (SET(I)-ORIGIN_VALUE) mod RANGE) < RANGE/2 then
      SUBSET(SUBSET_INDEX) :=
       (SET(I) - ORIGIN_VALUE) mod RANGE;
      SUBSET_INDEX := SUBSET_INDEX + 1;
     end if;
    end loop;

    ENCODE_SUBTREE(
      INDEX := INDEX +
       GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX),
      SET := SUBSET,
      RANGE := RANGE/2);
   end;
```

Then the right subset:

```
   declare
    SUBSET : SET_OF_VALUE(1..(SET'SIZE-1)/2);
    SUBSET_INDEX : INTEGER;
    ORIGIN_VALUE : INTEGER;
   begin
    ORIGIN_VALUE := (SET(INDEX_IN_SET] + 1) mod RANGE;
    SUBSET_INDEX:=1;
    for I in 1..SET'SIZE loop
     if (SET(I)-ORIGIN_VALUE) mod RANGE) < RANGE/2 then
      SUBSET(SUBSET_INDEX) :=
       (SET(I) - ORIGIN_VALUE) mod RANGE;
      SUBSET_INDEX := SUBSET_INDEX + 1;
     end if;
    end loop;
    ENCODE_SUBTREE(
     INDEX := INDEX +
      2*GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX),
     SET := SUBSET,
     RANGE := (RANGE-1)/2);
  end;

   end ENCODE_SUBTREE;
```

The initial call of the procedure depends on the format. Given some set to encode, the first problem is to verify that it can be encoded, and by so doing to choose the format.

First the encoding process must find the minimum range of the set, that is to say the minimum value R such that there exists one frequency F_0 in the set such that all frequencies in the set can be written (F_0 + N) mod 1024, with some N, $0 \leq N \leq R-1$. The choice of the format depends on R and the number of frequencies : the 512 range format can be chosen only if Rµ512, the 256 range format can be chosen only if R≤256, the 128 range format can be chosen only if Rµ128.

If the chosen format is "1024 range", then the program must first check if frequency 0 is in the set. If so the F0 subfield is set to 1, and frequency 0 is removed from the set. Otherwise, the F0 subfield is set to 0. Then ENCODE_SUBTREE is called with INDEX := 1, SET set to the set of values equal to the ARFCN of all frequencies minus 1, and RANGE := 1023.

If the chosen format is "512 range", "256 range" or "128 range", F_0 is chosen as ORIG-ARFCN and ENCODE_SUBTREE is called with INDEX := 1, SET set to the set of values equal to the ARFCN of all frequencies except F_0, minus F_0+1, and RANGE set respectively to 511, 255 or 127.

J.5 Decoding

The decoding algorithm, as given below, is the inverse transform of the program given in the previous section, for the specific case where the original range is a power of 2 minus 1. It is given a set of integer values W(i), and an original range R, and it builds a set of values from 0..R-1.

The program is here written so that the fact that it is the inverse of the encoding program needs no more proof.

```
procedure DECODE(in W : array <> of INTEGER;
                 out SET : SET_OF_VALUE;
                 in ORIGINAL_RANGE : INTEGER);

   -- local variables
    INDEX : 1..W'SIZE;     RANGE : INTEGER;
     N : INTEGER;

  begin
    for K in 1..W'SIZE loop
```

The next loop follows the tree from child to parent, from the node of index K to the root (index 1). For each iteration the node of index INDEX is tackled. The corresponding range is RANGE, and N is the value of the element in the range defined by the node.

The data are set to their initial values :

```
     INDEX := K;
     RANGE := ORIGINAL_RANGE / GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
     N := W(INDEX) - 1;

  while INDEX>1 loop
```

Due to the assumption that the original range is a power of two minus one, the range for the parent node can be easily computed, and does not depend upon whether the current node is a left or right child :

```
       RANGE := 2*RANGE + 1;
```

Let us note J := 2^{g-1}, g being the generation of node INDEX. We have J = GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX). The numbering used in the tree is such that the nodes of index J to J + J/2 - 1 are left children, and the nodes of index J/2 to J+J-1 are right children. Hence an easy test to distinguish left and right children:

```
    if 2*INDEX <
        3*GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX)
     then        -- left child
```

The next computation gives the index of the parent node of the node of index INDEX, for a left child :

```
    INDEX := INDEX -
      GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX)/2;
```

The next formula is the inverse of the renumbering appearing in the encoding for a left child. It gives the value of the parent node in the range defined by the grand-parent node:

```
   N := (N + W(INDEX) - 1 + (RANGE-1)/2 + 1)
               mod RANGE;
 else                    -- right child
```

The next computation gives the index of the parent node of the node of index INDEX, for a right child :

```
   INDEX := INDEX - GREATEST_POWER_OF_2_LESSER_OR_EQUAL_TO(INDEX);
```

The next formula is the inverse of the renumbering appearing in the encoding for a right child:

```
          N := (N + W(INDEX) - 1 + 1) mod RANGE;
        end if;
      end loop;
      F(K) := N;
    end loop;
  end;
```

A careful study will show that the programs given in the main part of the Technical Specification are equivalent to the one presented here. The main difference is the use of different remanent variables to remove most of the calls to the function giving the greatest power of 2 less than or equal to some integer.

The decoding must be terminated by the correction specific to the format.

J.6 A detailed example

Let us take the following subset of 16 elements of the set [0..1023] : [13, 71, 122, 191, 251, 321, 402, 476, 521, 575, 635, 701, 765, 831, 906, 981]

Range 1024 format will be used. Frequency 0 is not in the set, thus field F0 is set to 0. The set is renumbered, so as to give a subset of 0..1022 : [12, 70, 121, 190, 250, 320, 401, 475, 520, 574, 634, 700, 764, 830, 905, 980].

For the first node (corresponding to W(1)), the value 121 satisfies the requirements. The opposite value is 121 + 511 = 632. There are 8 values between 633 and 120 (namely the left-hand subset 634, 700, 764, 830, 905, 980, 12 and 70), and 7 values between 122 and 632 (namely the right-hand subset 190, 250, 320, 401, 475, 520 and 574).

The encoded value W(1) is 121 + 1, i.e. 122.

The second node (corresponding to W(2)) is the left-hand child of the first node. The corresponding subtree has to encode for the left-hand subset, renumbered beginning at 633. This gives the following 8 element subset of 0..510, ordered as resulting from the example of algorithm : [402, 460, 1, 67, 131, 197, 272, 347]. Out of these values, 1 splits the set in 4 and 3, and the encoded value W(2) is 2.

Similarly, the third node (W(3)) is the right-hand child of the first node and then the corresponding subtree encodes for the right-hand subset, renumbered starting at 122. This gives the following set of 0..510 : [68, 128, 198, 279, 353, 398, 452]. Out of these values, 68 splits the set into 3 and 3, and the encoded value W(3) is 69.

The same method is applied for all nodes, giving the following encoded values per node:

node	value	node	value
1	122	9	83
2	2	10	3
3	69	11	24
4	204	12	67
5	75	13	54
6	66	14	64
7	60	15	70
8	70	16	9

The encoding then consists in formatting, in that order :

> 122 on 10 bits, then 2 and 69 on 9 bits each, then 204, 75, 66 and 60 on 8 bits each, then 70, 83, 3, 24, 67, 54, 64 and 70 on 7 bits each, and finally 9 on 6 bits.

Conversely the decoding can be done easily. For instance for node 2, the original value is:

> (122 - 512 + 2) smod 1023 = 635

For node 14, we have as original value:

> (122 - 512 + (2 + (66 + 64)smod 255)smod 511)smod 1023 = 765

Annex K (informative): Default Codings of Information Elements

This annex is informative.

The information in this annex does NOT define the value of any IEI for any particular message. This annex exists to aid the design of new messages, in particular with regard to backward compatibility with phase 1 MSs.

K.1 Common information elements.

For the common information elements types listed below, the default coding of information element identifier bits is summarized in table K.1/GSM 04.08.

TABLE K.1/GSM 04.08: Default information element identifier coding for common information elements

8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1		Reference section
1 : : : - - - -	Type 1 info elements	
1 1 1 1 - - - -	Note	
0 : : : : : : :	Type 3 & 4 info elements	
0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	Note	
0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1	Location Area Identification	10.5.1.3
0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1	Mobile Identity	10.5.1.4
0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0	Note	
0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1	Note	
0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0	Mobile Station classmark 3	10.5.1.7
	Spare Half Octet	10.5.1.8
All other values are reserved		

NOTE: These values were allocated but never used in earlier phases of the protocol.

K.2 Radio Resource management information elements.

For the Radio Resource management information elements listed below, the default coding of the information element identifier bits is summarized in table K.2/GSM 04.08.

TABLE K.2/GSM 04.08 (page 1 of 2): Default information element identifier coding for Radio Resource management information elements

8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1		Reference section
1 : : : - - - -	Type 1 info elements	
1 0 0 1 - - - -	Cipher Mode Setting	10.5.2.9
1 0 1 0 - - - -	Cipher Response	10.5.2.10
1 0 1 1 - - - -	Note	
1 1 0 1 - - - -	Synchronization Indication	10.5.2.39
1 1 1 0 - - - -	Channel Needed	10.5.2.8
0 : : : : : : :	Type 3 & 4 info elements	
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	Frequency Short List	10.5.2.14
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1	Frequency List	10.5.2.13
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	Note	
0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0	Cell Channel Description	10.5.2.1b
0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1	Channel Mode	10.5.2.6
0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0	Channel Descrip-tion	10.5.2.5
0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0	Channel Mode 2	10.5.2.7
0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0	Note	
0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1	Frequency Chan-nel Sequence	10.5.2.12
0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0	Note	
0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1	Note	
0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0	Note	

TABLE K.2/GSM 04.08 (page 2 of 2): Default information element identifier coding for Radio Resource management information elements

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1		Reference section
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	Note	
0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	Mobile Allocation	10.5.2.21
0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	BA range	10.5.2.1
0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	Note	
0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	Note	
0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	Note	
0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	Mobile Time difference	10.5.2.21a
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	Note	
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	Note	
0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	Note	
0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	Time Difference	10.5.2.41
0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	Starting Time	10.5.2.38
0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	Timing Advance	10.5.2.40
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	TMSI	10.5.2.42
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Note	

NOTE: These values were allocated but never used in earlier phases of the protocol.

K.3 Mobility management information elements.

For the mobility management information elements listed below, the default coding of the information element identifier bits is summarized in table K.3/GSM 04.08.

TABLE K.3/GSM 04.08: Default information element identifier coding for mobility management information elements

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1		Reference Section
								Type 1 info elements	
1	0	0	1	-	-	-	-	Note	
1	1	0	0	-	-	-	-	Note	
1	1	1	0	-	-	-	-	Note	
1	0	1	0	-	-	-	-	Type 2 info elements	
				0	0	0	1	Follow-on Proceed	10.5.3.7
								Type 3 & 4 info elements	
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	Note	
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	Note	
0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	Note	
All other values are reserved									

NOTE: These values were allocated but never used in earlier versions of the protocol

K.4 Call control information elements.

For the call control information elements listed below, the default coding of the information element identifiers is defined in table K.4/GSM 04.08.

TABLE K.4/GSM 04.08: Default information element identifier coding for call control information elements

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1		Reference section
1	:	:	:	-	-	-	-	Type 1 info elements	
	0	0	1	-	-	-	-	shift	10.5.4.2 and .3
	0	1	1	-	-	-	-	Note	
	1	0	1	-	-	-	-	Repeat indicator	10.5.4.22
1	0	1	0	:	:	:	:	Type 2 information elements	
				0	0	0	0	More data	10.5.4.19
				0	0	0	1	CLIR Suppression	10.5.4.11a
				0	0	1	0	CLIR Invocation	10.5.4.11b
				0	0	1	1	Reverse call setup direction	10.5.4.22a
0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	Type 3 & 4 info elements	
	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Bearer capability	10.5.4.5
	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Cause	10.5.4.11
	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	Note	
	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	Call Control Capabilities	10.5.4.5a
	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	Facility	10.5.4.15
	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	Progress indicator	10.5.4.21
	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	Auxiliary states	10.5.4.4
	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Note	
	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	Keypad facility	10.5.4.17
	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	Signal	10.5.4.23
	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	Connected number	10.5.4.13
	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	Connected subaddress	10.5.4.14
	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	Calling party BCD number	10.5.4.9
	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	Calling party subad	10.5.4.10
	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	Called party BCD number	10.5.4.7
	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	Called party subad	10.5.4.8
	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	Low layer compatib.	10.5.4.18
	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	High layer compatib.	10.5.4.16
	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	User-user	10.5.4.25
	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	SS version indicator	10.5.4.24

NOTE: These values were allocated but never used in earlier phases of the protocol.

History

Document history			
December 1995	Publication of GTS 04.08 version 5.0.0		
March 1996	Publication of GTS 04.08 version 5.1.0		
May 1996	Publication of GTS 04.08 version 5.2.0		
July 1996	Publication of GTS 04.08 version 5.3.0		
November 1996	Unified Approval procedure	UAP 59:	1996-11-25 to 1997-03-21